

This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations
and is not a part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

**As rescanning documents *will not* correct images,
please do not report the images to the
Image Problem Mailbox.**

PCTWORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁷ : C12Q 1/68, C12P 19/34, C07H 19/00, 21/00, 21/02, 21/04		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 00/18967
			(43) International Publication Date: 6 April 2000 (06.04.00)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US99/22988		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
(22) International Filing Date: 30 September 1999 (30.09.99)		Published <i>With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>	
(30) Priority Data: 60/102,724 1 October 1998 (01.10.98) US 60/149,533 17 August 1999 (17.08.99) US 09/394,387 10 September 1999 (10.09.99) US 09/394,457 10 September 1999 (10.09.99) US 09/394,467 10 September 1999 (10.09.99) US 09/394,774 10 September 1999 (10.09.99) US			
(71) Applicant: VARIAGENICS, INC. [US/US]; 60 Hampshire Street, Cambridge, MA 02139-1562 (US).			
(72) Inventors: STANTON, Vincent, P., Jr.; 32 Royal Road, Belmont, MA 02178 (US). WOLFE, Jia, Liu; 28 Hollywood Road, Winchester, MA 01890 (US). KAWATE, Tomohiko; 31 Portsmouth Street, #1R, Cambridge, MA 02141 (US). VERDINE, Gregory; 7 Bennington Road, Lexington, MA 02421 (US).			
(74) Agents: ROSE, Bernard, F. et al.; Lyon & Lyon LLP, Suite 4700, 633 West Fifth Street, Los Angeles, CA 90071-2066 (US).			
(54) Title: A METHOD FOR ANALYZING POLYNUCLEOTIDES			
(57) Abstract <p>The present invention relates to methods for the analysis of polynucleotides including detection of variance in nucleotide sequence without the need for full sequence determination, full sequence determination of a polynucleotide, genotyping of DNA and labeling a polynucleotide fragment during the process of cleaving it into fragments.</p>			

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

DESCRIPTION

A METHOD FOR ANALYZING POLYNUCLEOTIDES

5

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates generally to organic chemistry, analytical chemistry, biochemistry, molecular biology, genetics, diagnostics and medicine. In particular, it relates to a method for analyzing polynucleotides; i.e., for determining the complete nucleotide sequence of a polynucleotide, for detecting variance in the nucleotide sequence between related polynucleotides and for genotyping DNA.

10

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The following is offered as background information only and is not intended nor admitted to be prior art to the present invention.

15

DNA is the carrier of the genetic information of all living cells. An organism's genetic and physical characteristics, its genotype and phenotype, respectively, are controlled by precise nucleic acid sequences in the organism's DNA. The sum total of all of the sequence information present in an organism's DNA is termed the organism's "genome." The nucleic acid sequence of a DNA molecule consists of a linear polymer of four "nucleotides." The four nucleotides are tripartite molecules, each consisting of (1) one of the four heterocyclic bases, adenine (abbreviated "A"), cytosine ("C"), guanine ("G") and thymine ("T"); (2) the pentose sugar derivative 2-deoxyribose which is bonded by its 1-carbon atom to a ring nitrogen atom of the heterocyclic bases; and (3) a monophosphate monoester formed between a phosphoric acid molecule and the 5'-hydroxy group of the sugar moiety. The nucleotides polymerize by the formation of diesters between the 5'-phosphate of one nucleotide and the 3'-hydroxy group of another nucleotide to give a single strand of DNA. In nature, two of these single strands interact by hydrogen bonding between complementary nucleotides, A being complementary with T and C being complementary with G, to form "base-pairs" which results in the formation of the well-known DNA "double helix" of Watson and Crick. RNA is similar to DNA except that the base thymine is replaced with uracil ("U") and the pentose sugar is ribose itself rather than deoxyribose. In addition, RNA exists in nature predominantly as a

20
25
30

single strand; i.e., two strands do not normally combine to form a double helix.

When referring to sequences of nucleotides in a polynucleotide, it is customary to use the abbreviation for the base; i.e., A, C, G, and T (or U) to represent the entire nucleotide containing that base. For example, a polynucleotide sequence denoted as

5 "ACG" means that an adenine nucleotide is bonded through a phosphate ester linkage to a cytosine nucleotide which is bonded through another phosphate ester linkage to a guanine nucleotide. If the polynucleotide being described is DNA, then it is understood that "A" refers to an adenine nucleotide which contains a deoxyribose sugar. If there is any possibility of ambiguity, the "A" of a DNA molecule can be designated "deoxyA" or

10 simply "dA." The same is true for C and G. Since T occurs only in DNA and not RNA, there can be no ambiguity so there is no need to refer to deoxyT or dT.

As a rough approximation, it can be said that the number of genes an organism has is proportional to the organism's phenotypic complexity; i.e., the number of genome products necessary to replicate the organism and allow it to function. The human

15 genome, presently considered one of the most complex, consists of approximately 60,000 - 100,000 genes and about three billion three hundred million base pairs. Each of these genes codes for an RNA, most of which in turn encodes a particular protein which performs a specific biochemical or structural function. A variance, also known as a polymorphism or mutation, in the genetic code of any one of these genes may result in

20 the production of a gene product, usually a protein or an RNA, with altered biochemical activity or with no activity at all. This can result from as little change as an addition, deletion or substitution (transition or transversion) of a single nucleotide in the DNA comprising a particular gene which is sometimes referred to as a "single nucleotide polymorphism" or "SNP. The consequence of such a mutation in the genetic code

25 ranges from harmless to debilitating to fatal. There are presently over 6700 human disorders believed to have a genetic component. For example, hemophilia, Alzheimer's disease, Huntington's disease, Duchenne muscular dystrophy and cystic fibrosis are known to be related to variances in the nucleotide sequence of the DNA comprising certain genes. In addition, evidence is being amassed suggesting that changes in

30 certain DNA sequences may predispose an individual to a variety of abnormal conditions such as obesity, diabetes, cardiovascular disease, central nervous system disorders, auto-immune disorders and cancer. Variations in DNA sequence of specific genes have

also been implicated in the differences observed among patients in their responses to, for example, drugs, radiation therapy, nutritional status and other medical interventions. Thus, the ability to detect DNA sequence variances in an organism's genome is an important aspect of the inquiry into relationships between such variances and medical disorders and responses to medical interventions. Once an association has been established, the ability to detect the variance(s) in the genome of a patient can be an extremely useful diagnostic tool. It may even be possible, using early variance detection, to diagnose and potentially treat, or even prevent, a disorder before the disorder has physically manifested itself. Furthermore, variance detection can be a valuable research tool in that it may lead to the discovery of genetic bases for disorders the cause of which were hitherto unknown or thought to be other than genetic. Variance detection may also be useful for guiding the selection of an optimal therapy where there is a difference in response among patients to one or more proposed therapies.

While the benefits of being able to detect variances in the genetic code are clear, the practical aspects of doing so are daunting: it is estimated that sequence variations in human DNA occur with a frequency of about 1 in 100 nucleotides when 50 to 100 individuals are compared. Nickerson, D.A., Nature Genetics, 1998, 223-240. This translates to as many as thirty million variances in the human genome. Not all, in fact very few, of these variances have any measurable effect on the physical well-being of humans. Detecting these 30 million variances and then determining which of them are relevant to human health is clearly a formidable task.

In addition to variance detection, knowledge of the complete nucleotide sequence of an organism's genome would contribute immeasurably to the understanding of the organism's overall biology, i.e., it would lead to the identification of every gene product, its organization and arrangement in the organism's genome, the sequences required for controlling gene expression (i.e., production of each gene product) and replication. In fact, the quest for such knowledge and understanding is the raison d'être for the Human Genome Project, an international effort aimed at sequencing the entire human genome. Once the sequence of a single genome is available, whatever the organism, it then becomes useful to obtain the partial or complete sequence of other organisms of that species, particularly those organisms within the species that exhibit different characteristics, in order to identify DNA sequence differences that correlate with the

different characteristics. Such different characteristics may include, for microbial organisms, pathogenicity on the negative side or the ability to produce a particular polymer or to remediate pollution on the positive side. A difference in growth rate, nutrient content or pest resistance are potential differences which might be observed among plants. Even among human beings, a difference in disease susceptibility or response to a particular therapy might relate to a genetic, i.e., DNA sequence, variation. As a result of the enormous potential utility to be realized from DNA sequence information, in particular, identification of DNA sequence variances between individuals of the same species, the demand for rapid, inexpensive, automated DNA sequencing and variance detection procedures can be expected to increase dramatically in the future.

Once the DNA sequence of a DNA segment; e.g., a gene, a cDNA or, on a larger scale, a chromosome or an entire genome, has been determined, the existence of sequence variances in that DNA segment among members of the same species can be explored. Complete DNA sequencing is the definitive procedure for accomplishing this task. Thus, it is possible to determine the complete sequence of a copy of a DNA segment obtained from a different member of the specie and simply compare that complete sequence to the one previously obtained. However, current DNA sequencing technology is costly, time consuming and, in order to achieve high levels of accuracy, must be highly redundant. Most major sequencing projects require a 5- to 10-fold coverage of each nucleotide to reach an acceptable error rate of 1 in 2,000 to 1 in 10,000 bases. In addition, DNA sequencing is an inefficient way to detect variances. For example, a variance between any two copies of a gene, for example when two chromosomes are being compared, may occur as infrequently as once in 1,000 or more bases. Thus, only a small portion of the sequence is of interest, that in which the variance exists. However, if full sequencing is employed, a tremendous number of nucleotides have to be sequenced to arrive at the desired information involving the aforesaid small portion. For example, consider a comparison of ten versions of a 3,000 nucleotide DNA sequence for the purpose of detecting, say, four variances among them. Even if only a 2-fold redundancy is employed (each strand of the double-stranded 3,000 nucleotide DNA segment from each individual is sequenced once), 60,000 nucleotides would have to be sequenced ($10 \times 3,000 \times 2$). In addition, it is more than

likely that problem areas will be encountered in the sequencing requiring additional runs with new primers; thus, the project could engender the sequencing of as many as 100,000 nucleotides to determine four variances. A variety of procedures have been developed over the past 15 years to identify sequence differences and to provide some information about the location of the variant sites (Table 1). Using such a procedure, it would only be necessary to sequence four relatively short portions of the 3000 nt (nucleotide) sequence. Furthermore, only a few samples would have to be sequenced in each region because each variance produces a characteristic change (Table 1) so, if, for example, 22 of 50 samples exhibit a such a characteristic change with a variation detection procedure, then sequencing as few as four samples of the 22 would provide information on the other 18. The length of the segments that require sequencing could, depending on the variance detection procedure employed, be as short as 50 – 100 nt. Thus, the scale of the sequencing project could be reduced to: 4 (sites) X 50 (nt per site) X 2 (strands from each individual) X 2 (individuals per site) or only about 800 nucleotides. This amounts to about 1% of the sequencing required in the absence of a preceding variance detection step.

As presently practiced, the technique for determining the full nucleotide sequence of a polynucleotide and that for detecting previously unknown variances or mutations in related polynucleotides ends up being the same; that is, even when the issue is the presence or absence of a single nucleotide variance between related polynucleotides, the complete sequences of at least a segment of the related polynucleotides is determined and then compared. The only difference is that a variance detection procedure such as those described in Table 1 may be employed as a first step to reduce the amount of complete sequencing necessary in the detection of unknown variances.

TABLE 1

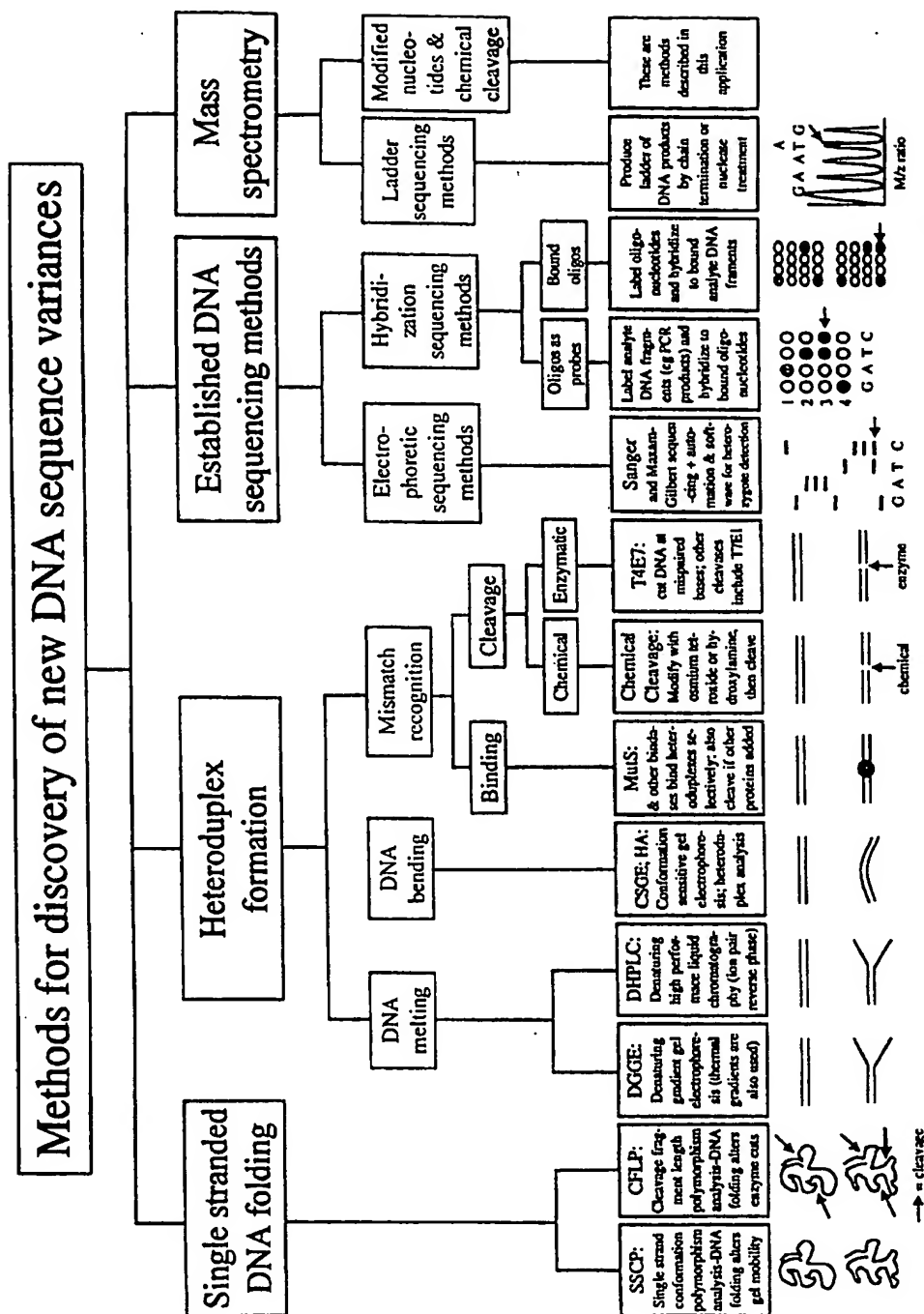


Table 1. Summary of commonly used methods for discovery of DNA sequence variation. At the bottom the physical basis or output of each method is represented diagrammatically. The electrophoretic sequencing methods include a variety of enzymatic procedures for generating partial sequence ladders (for example, use of UTP and uracil glycosylase, or exonuclease degradation in the presence of boronated nucleotides. Methods for genotyping (i.e. testing specifically for the presence of a previously identified polymorphism) include many of those listed above plus others.

The two classical methods for carrying out complete nucleotide sequencing are the Maxam and Gilbert chemical procedure (Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA, 74, 560-564 (1977)) and the Sanger, et al., chain-terminating procedure (Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA, 74, 5463-5467 (1977)).

- 5 The Maxam-Gilbert method of complete nucleotide sequencing involves end-labeling a DNA molecule with, for example, ^{32}P , followed by one of two discrete reaction sequences involving two reactions each; i.e., four reactions overall. One of these reaction sequences involves the selective methylation of the purine nucleotides guanine (G) and adenine (A) in the polynucleotide being investigated
- 10 which, in most instances, is an isolated naturally-occurring polynucleotide such as DNA. The N7 position of guanine methylates approximately five times as rapidly as the N3 position of adenine. When heated in the presence of aqueous base, the methylated bases are lost and a break in the polynucleotide chain occurs. The reaction is more effective with methylated guanine than with methylated adenine so,
- 15 when the reaction product is subjected to electrophoresis on polyacrylamide gel plates, G cleavage ladders are predominant. Under acidic conditions, on the other hand, both methylated bases are removed effectively. Treatment by piperidine cleaves DNA at these abasic sites, generating sequencing ladders that correspond to A + G.
- 20 Thus, four chemical reactions followed by electrophoretic analysis of the resulting end-labeled ladder of cleavage products will reveal the exact nucleotide sequence of a DNA molecule. It is key to the Maxam-Gilbert sequencing method that only partial cleavage, on the order of 1-2 % at each susceptible position, occurs. This is because electrophoresis separates fragments by size. To be meaningful, the
- 25 fragments produced should represent, on the average, a single modification and cleavage per molecule. Then, when the fragments of all four reactions are aligned according to size, the exact sequence of the target DNA can be determined.

- 30 The Sanger method for determining complete nucleotide sequences consists of preparing four series of base-specifically chain-terminated labeled DNA fragments by enzymatic polymerization. As in the Maxam-Gilbert procedure, four separate reactions can be performed. In the Sanger method each of the four reaction mixtures contains the same oligonucleotide template (either a single- or a double-

stranded DNA), the four nucleotides, A, G, C and T (one of which may be labeled), a polymerase and a primer, the polymerase and primer being present to effect the polymerization of the nucleotides into a complement of the template oligonucleotide. To one of the four reaction mixtures is added an empirically determined amount of

5 the dideoxy derivative of one of the nucleotides. A small amount of the dideoxy derivative of one of the remaining three nucleotides is added to a second reaction mixture, and so on, resulting in four reaction mixtures each containing a different dideoxy nucleotide. The dideoxy derivatives, by virtue of their missing 3'-hydroxyl groups, terminates the enzymatic polymerization reaction upon incorporation into the

10 nascent oligonucleotide chain. Thus, in one reaction mixture, containing, say, dideoxyadenosine triphosphate (ddATP), a series of oligonucleotide fragments are produced all ending in ddA which when resolved by electrophoresis produce a series of bands corresponding to the size of the fragment created up to the point that the chain-terminating ddA became incorporated into the polymerization reaction.

15 Corresponding ladders of fragments can be obtained from each of the other reaction mixtures in which the oligonucleotide fragments end in C, G and T. The four sets of fragments create a "sequence ladder," each rung of which represents the next nucleotide in the sequence of bases comprising the subject DNA. Thus, the exact nucleotide sequence of the DNA can simply be read off the electrophoresis gel plate

20 after autoradiography or computer analysis of chromatograms in the case of an automated DNA sequencing instrument. As mentioned above, dye-labelled chain terminating dideoxynucleotides and modified polymerases that efficiently incorporate modified nucleotides are an improved method for chain-terminating sequencing.

Both the Maxam-Gilbert and Sanger procedures have their shortcomings.

25 They are both time-consuming, labor-intensive (particularly with regard to the Maxam-Gilbert procedure which has not been automated like the Sanger procedure), expensive (e.g., the most optimized versions of the Sanger procedure require very expensive reagents) and require a fair degree of technical expertise to assure proper operation and reliable results. Furthermore, the Maxam-Gilbert

30 procedure suffers from a lack of specificity of the modification chemistry which can result in artifactual fragments resulting in false ladder readings from the gel plate. The Sanger method, on the other hand, is susceptible to template secondary

structure formation which can cause interference in the polymerization reaction. This causes terminations of the polymerization at sights of secondary struction (called "stops") which can result in erroneous fragments appearing in the sequence ladder rendering parts of the sequence unreadable, although this problem is

5 ameliorated by the use of dye labelled dideoxy terminator. Furthermore, both sequencing methods are is susceptible to "compressions," another result of DNA secondary structure which can affect fragment mobility during electrophoresis thereby rendering the sequence ladder unreadable or subject to erroneous interpretation in the vicinity of the secondary structure. In addition, both methods

10 are plagued by uneven intensity of the ladder and by non-specific background interference. These concerns are magnified when the issue is variance detection. In order to discern a single nucleotide variance, the procedure employed must be extremely accurate, a "mistake" in reading one nucleotide can result in a false positive; i.e., an indication of a variance where none exists. Neither the Maxam-

15 Gilbert nor the Sanger procedures are capable of such accuracy in a single run. In fact, the frequency of errors in a "one pass" sequencing experiment is equal to or greater than 1%, which is on the order of ten times the frequency of actual DNA variances when any two versions of a sequence are compared. The situation can be ameliorated somewhat by performing multiple runs (usually in the context of a

20 "shotgun" sequencing procedure) for each polynucleotide being compared, but this simply increases cost in terms of equipment, reagents, manpower and time. The high cost of sequencing becomes even less acceptable when one considers that it is often not necessary when looking for nucleotide sequence variances among related polynucleotides to determine the complete sequence of the subject polynucleotides

25 or even the exact nature of the variance (although, as will be seen, in some instances even this is discernable using the method of this invention); detection of the variance alone may be sufficient.

While not avoiding all of the problems associated with the Maxam-Gilbert and Sanger procedures, several techniques have been devised to at least make one or

30 the other of the procedures more efficient. One such approach has been to develop ways to circumvent slab gel electrophoresis, one of the most time-consuming steps in the procedures. For instance, in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,003,059 and 5,174,962, the

Sanger method is employed; however, the dideoxy derivative of each of the nucleotides used to terminate the polymerization reaction is uniquely tagged with an isotope of sulfur, ^{32}S , ^{33}S , ^{34}S or ^{36}S . Once the polymerization reactions are complete, the chain terminated sequences are separated by capillary zone
5 electrophoresis, which, compared to slab gel electrophoresis, increases resolution, reduces run time and allows analysis of very small samples. The separated chain terminated sequences are then combusted to convert the incorporated isotopic sulfur to isotopic sulfur dioxides ($^{32}\text{SO}_2$, $^{33}\text{SO}_2$, $^{34}\text{SO}_2$ and $^{36}\text{SO}_2$). The isotopic sulfur dioxides are then subjected to mass spectrometry. Since each isotope of sulfur is
10 uniquely related to one of the four sets of base-specific chain terminated fragments, the nucleotide sequence of the subject DNA can be determined from the mass spectrogram.

Another method, disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,580,733, also incorporates the Sanger technique but eliminates gel electrophoresis altogether. The method
15 involves taking each of the four populations of base-specific chain-terminated oligonucleotides from the Sanger reactions and forming a mixture with a visible laser light absorbing matrix such as 3-hydroxypicolinic acid. The mixtures are then illuminated with visible laser light and vaporized, which occurs without further fragmentation of the chain-terminated nucleic acid fragments. The vaporized
20 molecules which are charged are then accelerated in an electric field and the mass to charge (m/z) ratio of the ionized molecules determined by time-of-flight mass spectrometry (TOF-MS). The molecular weights are then aligned to determine the exact sequence of the subject DNA. By measuring the mass difference between successive fragments in each of the mixtures, the lengths of fragments terminating
25 in A, G, C or T can then be inferred. A significant limitation of current MS instruments is that polynucleotide fragments greater than 100 nucleotides in length (with many instruments, 50 nucleotides) cannot be efficiently detected in routine use, especially if the fragments are part of a complex mixture. This severe limitation on the size of fragments that can be analyzed has
30 limited the development of polynucleotide analysis by MS. Thus, there is a need for a procedure that adapts large polynucleotides, such as DNA, to the capabilities of current MS instruments. The present invention provides such a procedure.

A further approach to nucleotide sequencing is disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,547,835. Again, the starting point is the Sanger sequencing strategy. The four base specific chain- terminated series of fragments are "conditioned" by, for example, purification, cation exchange and/or mass modification. The molecular
5 weights of the conditioned fragments are then determined by mass spectrometry and the sequence of the starting nucleic acid is determined by aligning the base-specifically terminated fragments according to molecular weight.

Each of the above methods involves complete Sanger sequencing of a polynucleotide prior to analysis by mass spectrometry. To detect genetic mutations;
10 i.e., variances, the complete sequence can be compared to a known nucleotide sequence. Where the sequence is not known, comparison with the nucleotide sequence of the same DNA isolated from another of the same organisms which does not exhibit the abnormalities seen in the subject organism will likewise reveal mutations. This approach, of course, requires running the Sanger procedure twice;
15 i.e., eight separate reactions. In addition, if a potential variance is detected, the entire procedure would in most instances be run again, sequencing the opposite strand using a different primer to make sure that a false positive had not been obtained. When the specific nucleotide variance or mutation related to a particular disorder is known, there are a wide variety of known methods for detecting a
20 variance without complete sequencing. For instance, U. S. Patent No. 5,605,798 describes such a method. The method involves obtaining a nucleic acid molecule containing the target sequence of interest from a biological sample, optionally amplifying the target sequence, and then hybridizing the target sequence to a detector oligonucleotide which is specifically designed to be complementary to the
25 target sequence. Either the detector oligonucleotide or the target sequence is "conditioned" by mass modification prior to hybridization. Unhybridized detector oligonucleotide is removed and the remaining reaction product is volatilized and ionized. Detection of the detector oligonucleotide by mass spectrometry indicates the presence of the target nucleic acid sequence in the biological sample and thus
30 confirms the diagnosis of the variance related disorder.

Variance detection procedures can be divided into two general categories although there is a considerable degree of overlap. One category, the variance

discovery procedures, is useful for examining DNA segments for the existence, location and characteristics of new variances. To accomplish this, variance discovery procedures may be combined with DNA sequencing.

5 The second group of procedures, variance typing (sometimes referred to as genotyping) procedures, are useful for repetitive determination of one or more nucleotides at a particular site in a DNA segment when the location of a variance or variances has previously been identified and characterized. In this type of analysis, it is often possible to design a very sensitive test of the status of a particular nucleotide or nucleotides. This technique, of course, is not well suited to the
10 discovery of new variances.

As note above, Table 1 is a list of a number of existing techniques for nucleotide examination. The majority of these are used primarily in new variance determination. There are a variety of other methods, not shown, for gene typing. Like the Maxam-Gilbert and Sanger sequencing procedures, these techniques are
15 generally time-consuming, tedious and require a relatively high skill level to achieve the maximum degree of accuracy possible from each procedure. Even then, some of the techniques listed are, even at their best, inherently less accurate than would be desirable.

The methods of Table 1, though primarily devised for variance discovery, can
20 also be used when a variant nucleotide has already been identified and the goal is to determine its status in one or more unknown DNA samples (variance typing or genotyping). Some of the methods that have been developed specifically for genotyping include (1) primer extension methods in which dideoxynucleotide termination of the primer extension reaction occurs at the variant site generating
25 extension products of different length or with different terminal nucleotides, which can then be determined by electrophoresis, mass spectrometry or fluorescence in a plate reader; (2) hybridization methods in which oligonucleotides corresponding to the two possible sequences at a variant site are attached to a solid surface and hybridized with probes from the unknown sample; (3) restriction fragment length
30 polymorphism analysis, wherein a restriction endonuclease recognition site includes the polymorphic nucleotide in such a manner that the site is cleavable with one variant nucleotide but not another; (4) methods such as "TaqMan" involving

- differential hybridization and consequent differential 5' endonuclease digestion of labelled oligonucleotide probes in which there is fluorescent resonance energy transfer (FRET) between two fluors on the probe that is abrogated by nuclease digestion of the probe; (5) other FRET based methods involving labelled
- 5 oligonucleotide probes called molecular beacons which exploit allele specific hybridization; (6) ligation dependent methods that require enzymatic ligation of two oligonucleotides across a polymorphic site that is perfectly matched to only one of them; and, (7) allele specific oligonucleotide priming in a polymerase chain reaction (PCR). U. Landegren, et al., 1998, Reading Bits of Genetic Information: Methods for
- 10 Single-nucleotide Polymorphism Analysis, *Genome Research* 8(8):769-76.

- When complete sequencing of large templates such as the entire genome of a virus, a bacterium or a eukaryote (e.g., higher organisms including man) or the repeated sequencing of a large DNA region or regions from different strains or individuals of a given species for purposes of comparison is desired, it becomes
- 15 necessary to implement strategies for making libraries of templates for DNA sequencing. This is because conventional chain terminating sequencing (i.e., the Sanger procedure) is limited by the resolving power of the analytical procedure used to create the nucleotide ladder of the subject polynucleotide. For gels, this resolving power is approximately 500 – 800 nt at a time. For mass spectrometry, the limitation
- 20 is the length of a polynucleotide which can be efficiently vaporized prior to detection in the instrument. Although larger fragments have been analyzed by highly specialized procedures and instrumentation, presently this limit is approximately 50 – 60 nt. However, in large scale sequencing projects such as the Human Genome Project, "markers" (DNA segments of known chromosomal location whose presence
- 25 can be relatively easily ascertained by the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) technique and which, therefore, can be used as a point of reference for mapping new areas of the genome) are currently about 100 kilobases (Kb) apart. The markers at 100 Kb intervals must be connected by efficient sequencing strategies. If the analytical method used is gel electrophoresis, then to sequence a 100 kb stretch
- 30 of DNA would require hundreds of sequencing reactions. A fundamental question which must be addressed is how to divide up the 100 kb segment (or whatever size is being dealt with) to optimize the process; i.e., to minimize the number of

sequencing reactions and sequence assembly work necessary to generate a complete sequence with the desired level of accuracy. A key issue in this regard is how to initially fragment the DNA in such a manner that the fragments, once sequenced, can be correctly reassembled to recreate the full length target DNA.

- 5 Presently, two general approaches provide both sequence-ready fragments and the information necessary to recombine the sequences into the full-length target DNA: "shotgun sequencing" (see, e.g., Venter, J. C., et al., Science, 1998, 280:1540-1542; Weber, J. L. and Myers, E. W., Genome Research, 1997, 7:401-409; Andersson, B. et al., DNA Sequence, 1997, 7:63-70) and "directed DNA sequencing" (see, e.g.,
10 Voss, H., et al., Biotechniques, 1993, 15:714-721; Kaczorowski, T., et al., Anal. Biochem., 1994, 221:127-135; Lodhi, M. A., et al., Genome Research, 1996, 6:10-18).

Shotgun sequencing involves the creation of a large library of random fragments or "clones" in a sequence-ready vector such as a plasmid or phagemid.

- 15 To arrive at a library in which all portions of the original sequence are relatively equally represented, DNA which is to be shotgun sequenced is often fragmented by physical procedures such as sonication which has been shown to produce nearly random fragmentation. Clones are then selected at random from the shotgun library for sequencing. The complete sequence of the DNA is then assembled by
20 identifying overlapping sequences in the short (approx. 500 nt) shotgun sequences. In order to assure that the entire target region of the DNA is represented among the randomly selected clones and to reduce the frequency of errors (incorrectly assigned overlaps), a high degree of sequencing redundancy is necessary; for example, 7 to 10-fold. Even with such high redundancy, additional sequencing is often required to
25 fill gaps in the coverage. Even then, the presence of repeat sequences such as Alu (a 300 base-pair sequence which occurs in 500,000 – 1,000,000 copies per haploid genome) and LINES ("Long INterspersed DNA sequence Elements" which can be 7,000 bases long and may be present in as many as 100,000 copies per haploid genome), either of which may occur in different locations of multiple clones, can
30 render DNA sequence re-assembly problematic. For instance, different members of these sequence families can be over 90% identical which can sometimes make it very difficult to determine sequence relationships on opposite sides of such repeats.

Figure X illustrates the difficulties of the shotgun sequencing approach in a hypothetical 10 kb sequence modeled after the sequence reported in Martin-Gallardo, et al., *Nature Genetics*, (1992) 1:34-39.

Directed DNA sequencing, the second general approach, also entails making
5 a library of clones, often with large inserts (e.g., cosmid, P1, PAC or BAC libraries).
In this procedure, the location of the clones in the region to be sequenced is then
mapped to obtain a set of clones that constitutes a minimum-overlap tiling path
spanning the region to be sequenced. Clones from this minimal set are then
sequenced by procedures such as "primer walking" (see, e.g., Voss, *supra*). In this
10 procedure, the end of one sequence is used to select a new sequencing primer with
which to begin the next sequencing reaction, the end of the second sequence is
used to select the next primer and so on. The assembly of a complete DNA is
easier by direct sequencing and less sequencing redundancy is required since both
the order of clones and the completeness of coverage is known from the clone map.
15 On the other hand, assembling the map itself requires significant effort.
Furthermore, the speed with which new sequencing primers can be synthesized and
the cost of doing so is often a limiting factor with regard to primer walking. While a
variety of methods for simplifying new primer construction have aided in this
process (see, e.g. Kaczorowski, et al. and Lodhi, et al. , *supra*), directed DNA
20 sequencing remains a valuable but often expensive and slow procedure.

Most large-scale sequencing projects employ aspects of both shotgun
sequencing and directed sequencing. For example, a detailed map might be made
of a large insert library (e.g., BACs) to identify a minimal set of clones which gives
complete coverage of the target region but then sequencing of each of the large
25 inserts is carried out by a shotgun approach; e.g., fragmenting the large insert and
re-cloning the fragments in a more optimal sequencing vector (see, e.g., Chen, C.
N., *Nucleic Acids Research*, 1996, 24:4034-4041). The shotgun and directed
procedures are also used in a complementary manner in which specific regions not
covered by an initial shotgun experiment are subsequently determined by directed
30 sequencing.

Thus, there are significant limitations to both the shotgun and directed
sequencing approaches to complete sequencing of large molecules such as that

required in genomic DNA sequencing projects. However, both procedures would benefit if the usable read length of contiguous DNA was expanded from the current 500 – 800 nt which can be effectively sequenced by the Sanger method. For example, directed sequencing could be significantly improved by reducing the need
5 for high resolution maps which could be achieved by longer read lengths which in turn would permit greater distances between landmarks.

A major limitation of current sequencing procedures is the high error rate (Kristensen, T., et al, DNA Sequencing, 2:243-346, 1992; Kurshid, F. and Beck, S., Analytical Biochemistry, 208:138-143, 1993; Fichant, G. A. and Quentin, Y., Nucleic
10 Acid Research, 23:2900-2908, 1995). It is well-known that many of the errors associated with the Maxam-Gilbert and Sanger procedures are systematic; i.e., the errors are not random; rather, they occur repeatedly. To avoid this, two mechanistically different sequencing methods may be used so that the systematic errors in one may be detected and thus corrected by the second and visa versa.
15 Since a significant fraction of the cost of current sequencing methods is associated with the need for high redundancy to reduce sequencing errors, the use of two procedures can reduce the overall cost of obtaining highly accurate DNA sequence.

The production and/or chemical cleavage of polynucleotides composed of ribonucleotides and deoxyribonucleotides has been previously described. In
20 particular, mutant polymerases that incorporate both ribonucleotides and deoxyribonucleotides into a polynucleotide have been described; production of mixed ribo- and deoxyribo- containing polynucleotides by polymerization has been described; and generation of sequence ladders from such mixed polynucleotides, exploiting the well known lability of the ribo sugar to chemical base, has been
25 described.

The use of such procedures, however, have been limited to: (i) polynucleotides where one ribonucleotide and three deoxyribonucleotides are incorporated; (ii) cleavage at ribonucleotides is effected using chemical base, (iii) only partial cleavage of the ribonucleotide containing polynucleotides is pursued,
30 and (iv) the utility of the procedure is confined to production of sequence ladders, which are resolved electrophoretically.

In addition, the chemical synthesis of polynucleotide primers containing a single ribonucleotide, which at a subsequent step is substantially completely cleaved by chemical base, has been reported. The size of a primer extension product is then determined by mass spectrometry or other methods.

5

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

It is clear from the foregoing that there exists a need for a simple, low cost, rapid, yet sensitive and accurate, method for analyzing polynucleotides such as, without limitation, DNA, to determine both complete nucleotide sequences and the presence of variance(s). Further, there is a need for methods to enable assembly of
10 very long DNA sequences across repeat dense regions. The methods of the present invention fulfill each of these needs. In general, the present invention supplies new methods for genotyping, DNA sequencing and variance detection based on specific cleavage of DNA and other polynucleotides modified by enzymatic incorporation of chemically modified nucleotides.

15

Thus, in one aspect, this invention relates to a method for cleaving a polynucleotide, comprising:

- a. replacing a natural nucleotide at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide to form a modified polynucleotide wherein said modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide;
- 20 b. contacting said modified polynucleotide with a reagent or reagents which cleave(s) the modified polynucleotide at substantially each said point of occurrence.

25

In another aspect, this invention relates to the above-described method for use in detection of variance in nucleotide sequence in related polynucleotides by the additional steps of:

- c. determining the masses of said fragments obtained from step b; and,
- d. comparing the masses of said fragments with the masses of fragments expected from cleavage of a related polynucleotide of known sequence, or
- e. repeating steps a – c with one or more related polynucleotides of
30 unknown sequence and comparing the masses of said fragments of said polynucleotide with the masses of fragments obtained from the related polynucleotides.

A further aspect of this invention is the use of the first method above whereby the nucleotide sequence of a polynucleotide is determined, by the additional steps of:

- c. determining the masses of said fragments obtained from step 1b;
- 5 d. repeating steps 1a, 1b and 1c, each time replacing a different natural nucleotide in said polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide until each natural nucleotide in said polynucleotide has been replaced with a modified polynucleotide, each modified polynucleotide has been cleaved and the masses of the cleavage fragments have been determined; and,
- 10 e. constructing said nucleotide sequence of said polynucleotide from said masses of said first fragments.

Another aspect of this invention is the use of the first mentioned method above whereby a nucleotide known to contain a polymorphism or mutation is genotyped, by:

- 15 using as the natural nucleotide to be replaced, a nucleotide known to be involved in said polymorphism or mutation;
- replacing the natural nucleotide by amplifying the portion of the polynucleotide using a modified nucleotide to form a modified polynucleotide;
- cleaving the modified polynucleotide into fragments at each point of
- 20 occurrence of the modified nucleotide;
- analyzing the fragments to determine genotype.

In the method immediately above, analysis of the fragments by electrophoresis, mass spectrometry or FRET detection, is an aspect of this invention.

- 25 Another aspect of this invention is a method for cleaving a polynucleotide, comprising:

- a. replacing a first natural nucleotide at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide to form a once modified polynucleotide;
- 30 b. replacing a second natural nucleotide at substantially each point of occurrence in the once modified nucleotide with a second modified nucleotide to form a twice modified nucleotide; and,

- c. contacting said twice modified polynucleotide with a reagent or reagents which cleave the twice modified polynucleotide at each point in said twice modified polynucleotide where said first modified nucleotide is followed immediately by, and linked by a phosphodiester or modified phosphodiester linkage to, said
- 5 second modified nucleotide.

An aspect of this invention is, in the method immediately above, variance in nucleotide sequence of related polynucleotides is detected by the additional steps of:

- d. determining the masses of said fragments obtained from step c;
- 10 e. comparing the masses of said fragments with the masses of fragments expected from cleavage of a related polynucleotide of known sequence, or
- f. repeating steps a – d with one or more related polynucleotides of unknown sequence and comparing the masses of said fragments with masses of fragments obtained from cleavage of the related polynucleotides.

- 15 An aspect of this invention is a method for detecting variance in nucleotide sequence in related polynucleotides, comprising:

- a. replacing three of four natural nucleotides at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with three stabilizing modified nucleotides to form a modified polynucleotide having one remaining natural nucleotide;
- 20 b. cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments at substantially each point of occurrence of said one remaining natural nucleotide;
- c. determining the masses of said fragments; and,
- d. comparing the masses of said fragments with the masses of fragments expected from cleavage of a related polynucleotide of known sequence, or
- 25 e. repeating steps a – c with one or more related polynucleotides of unknown sequence and comparing the masses of said fragments with masses obtained from cleavage of the related polynucleotides.

Another aspect of this invention is, in the method immediately above, replacing the remaining natural nucleotide with a destabilizing modified nucleotide.

- 30 A further aspect of this invention is a method for detecting variance in nucleotide sequence in related polynucleotides, comprising:

- a. replacing two or more natural nucleotides at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with two or more modified nucleotides wherein each said modified nucleotide has a different cleaving characteristic from each other of said modified nucleotides, to form a modified polynucleotide;
- 5 b. cleaving said modified polynucleotide into first fragments at substantially each point of occurrence of a first of said two or more modified nucleotides;
- c. cleaving said first fragments into second fragments at each point of occurrence of a second of said two or more modified nucleotides in said first
- 10 fragments;
- d. determining the masses of said first fragments and said second fragments; and,
- e. comparing the masses of said first fragments and said second fragments with the masses of first fragments and second fragments expected from
- 15 the cleavage of a related polynucleotide of known sequence, or
- f. repeating steps a - d with one or more related polynucleotides of unknown sequence and comparing the masses of said first and second fragments with masses obtained from the cleavage of the related polynucleotides.

It is an aspect of this invention that, in the above method, the steps are

20 repeated using a modified nucleotide obtained by replacing different pairs of natural nucleotides with modified nucleotides; that is, given four natural nucleotides, 1, 2, 3, and 4, replacing 1 and 3 in one experiment, 2 and 4 in another, 1 and 4 in yet another, 2 and 3 in another or 3 and 4 in a final experiment with modified nucleotides.

25 It is an aspect of this invention that the modified polynucleotides obtained by the methods just above can be cleaved in a mass spectrometer, in particular, a tandem mass spectrometer.

A further aspect of this invention is a method for determining nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, comprising:

- 30 a. replacing a natural nucleotide at a percentage of points of occurrence in a polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide to form a modified polynucleotide wherein said modified polynucleotide is not a ribonucleotide;

- b. cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments at substantially each point of occurrence of said modified nucleotide;
- c. repeating steps a and b, each time replacing a different natural nucleotide in said polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide; and,
- 5 d. determining the masses of said fragments obtained from each cleavage; and,
- e. constructing said sequence of said polynucleotide from said masses,
- or
- f. analyzing a sequence ladder obtained from the fragments in step c.
- 10 Another aspect of this invention is a method for determining nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, comprising:
- a. replacing a natural nucleotide at a first percentage of points of occurrence in a polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide to form a modified polynucleotide wherein said modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide;
- 15 b. cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments at a second percentage of said points of occurrence of said modified nucleotide such that the combination of said first percentage and said second percentage results in partial cleavage of said modified polynucleotide;
- c. repeating steps a and b, each time replacing a different natural
- 20 nucleotide in said polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide;
- d. determining the masses of said fragments obtained from each cleavage reaction; and,
- e. constructing said sequence of said polynucleotide from said masses or,
- f. analyzing a sequence ladder obtained from said fragments from steps
- 25 a and b.
- An aspect of this invention is a method for determining nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, comprising:
- a. replacing two or more natural nucleotides at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with two or more modified nucleotides to form a
- 30 modified polynucleotide;

b. separating said modified polynucleotide into two or more aliquots, the number of said aliquots being the same as the number of natural nucleotides replaced in step a; and,

5 c. cleaving said modified polynucleotide in each said aliquot into fragments at substantially each point of occurrence of a different one of said modified nucleotides such that each of said aliquots contains fragments from cleavage at a different modified nucleotide than each other said aliquot;

d. determining masses of said fragments; and,

e. constructing said nucleotide sequence from said masses; or,

10 f. cleaving said modified polynucleotide in each said aliquot into fragments at a percentage of points of occurrence of a different modified nucleotide such that each of said aliquots contains fragments from cleavage at a different modified nucleotide than each other said aliquot; and,

g. analyzing a sequence ladder obtained from said fragments in step f.

15 Furthermore, an aspect of this invention is a method for determining nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, comprising:

a. replacing a first natural nucleotide at a percentage of points of incorporation in a polynucleotide with a first modified nucleotide to form a first partially modified polynucleotide wherein said first modified nucleotide is not an
20 ribonucleotide;

b. cleaving said first partially modified nucleotide into fragments using said cleaving procedure of known cleavage efficiency to form a first set of nucleotide specific cleavage products;

c. repeating steps a and b replacing a second, a third and a fourth
25 natural nucleotide with a second, third and fourth modified nucleotide to form a second, third and fourth partially modified polynucleotide which, upon cleavage, afford a second, third and fourth set of nucleotide specific cleavage products;

d. performing gel electrophoresis on said first, second, third and fourth set of nucleotide specific cleavage products to form a sequence ladder; and,

30 e. reading said sequence of said polynucleotide from said sequence ladder.

As aspect of this invention is a method for cleaving a polynucleotide during polymerization, comprising:

mixing together four different nucleotides, one or two of which are modified nucleotides; and,

- 5 two or more polymerases, at least one of which produces or enhances cleavage at points where said modified nucleotide is being incorporated or, if two modified nucleotides are used, at points wherein said adjacent pair of modified nucleotides are being incorporated and are a proper spatial relationship; provided that, when only one modified nucleotide is used, it does not contain ribose as its only
10 modifying characteristic.

In the method just above, when two modified nucleotides are used, it is an aspect of this invention that one of them is a ribonucleotide and one of them is a 5'-amino-2',5'-dideoxynucleotide.

- Furthermore, in the method just above using the specific modified
15 nucleotides, it is an aspect of this invention to use two polymerases, one being Klenow (exo-) polymerase and one being mutant E710A Klenow (exo-) polymerase.

In any of the above methods, it is an aspect of this invention that all natural nucleotides not being replaced with modified nucleotides can be replaced with mass-modified nucleotides.

- 20 It is also an aspect of all methods of this invention that the polynucleotide being modified is selected from the group consisting of DNA and RNA.

- Another aspect of all of the above methods is detection of said masses of said fragments by mass spectrometry. Presently preferred types of mass spectrometry are electrospray ionization mass spectrometry and matrix assisted
25 desorption/ionization mass spectrometry (MALDI).

In the above methods requiring the generation of a sequence ladder, such generation can be accomplished using gel electrophoresis.

- Furthermore, in the above method relating to determining a polynucleotide sequence by partially replacing a natural nucleotide with a modified nucleotide,
30 cleaving said first, second, third and fourth partially modified polynucleotide obtained in step "a" with one or more restriction enzymes, labeling the ends of the restriction

fragments obtained, and purifying the restriction fragments, prior to performing step "b" is another aspect of this invention.

An aspect of this invention is a method for cleaving a polynucleotide such that substantially all fragments obtained from the cleavage carry a label, comprising:

- 5 a. replacing a natural nucleotide partially or at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide to form a modified polynucleotide;
- b. contacting, in the presence of a phosphine covalently bonded to a label, said modified polynucleotide with a reagent or reagents which cleave(s) the modified
- 10 polynucleotide partially or at substantially each said point of occurrence.

In a presently preferred embodiment of this invention, the phosphine in the above method is tris(carboxyethyl) phosphine (TCEP).

Also in the method just above, the label is a fluorescent tag or a radioactive tag in another aspect of this invention.

- 15 It is an aspect of this invention that the above methods can be used for diagnosing a genetically-related disease. The methods can also be used as a means for obtaining a prognosis of a genetically-related disease or disorder. They can also be used to determine if a particular patient is eligible for medical treatment by procedures applicable to genetically-related diseases or disorders.

- 20 An aspect of this invention is a method for detecting a variance in nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, for sequencing a polynucleotide or for genotyping a polynucleotide known to contain a polymorphism or mutation:

- a. replacing one or more natural nucleotides in said polynucleotide with one or more modified nucleotides, one or more of which comprises a modified base;
- 25 b. contacting said modified polynucleotide with a reagent or reagents which cleave the modified polynucleotide into fragments at site(s) of incorporation of said modified nucleotide;
- c. analyzing said fragments to detect said variance, to construct said sequence or to genotype said polynucleotide.

- 30 The modified base in the above method can be adenine in another aspect of this invention. It can also be 7-deaza-7-nitroadenine.

A polynucleotide modified as above can be cleaved into fragments by contact with chemical base in another aspect of this invention.

In the above method, cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with a phosphine in yet another
5 aspect of this invention.

Using TCEP as the phosphine in the above method is another aspect of this invention.

The modified base in the above method can also be modified cytosine such as, without limitation, azacytosine or cytosine substituted at the 5-position with an
10 electron withdrawing group wherein the electron withdrawing group is, also without limitation, nitro or halo.

Once again, polynucleotides modified as noted just above can be cleaved with chemical base.

Inclusion of TCEP in the cleaving reaction immediately above is another
15 aspect of this invention.

The modified base in the above method can also be modified guanine such as, without limitation, 7-methyl- guanine and cleavage can be carried out with chemical base.

The modified guanine is N²-allylguanine in a further aspect of this invention.
20 Cleaving this modified guanine by contacting said modified polynucleotide with an electrophile, such as, without limitation, iodine, is another aspect of this invention.

In another aspect of this invention, the modified base in the above method can also be modified thymine and modified uracil. A presently preferred embodiment of this invention is the use of 5-hydroxyuracil in place of either thymine
25 or uracil. When 5-hydroxyuracil is used, cleavage is accomplished by:

- a. contacting said polynucleotide with a chemical oxidant; and, then
- b. contacting said polynucleotide with chemical base.

Another aspect of this invention is a method for detecting a variance in nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, sequencing a polynucleotide or genotyping
30 a polynucleotide comprising replacing one or more natural nucleotides in said polynucleotide with one or more modified nucleotides, one or more of which

comprises a modified sugar with the proviso that, when only one nucleotide is being replaced, said modified sugar is not ribose.

The modified sugar is a 2-ketosugar in a further aspect of this invention. The keto sugar can be cleaved with chemical base.

- 5 The modified sugar can also be arabinose which is also susceptible to chemical base.

The modified sugar can also be a sugar substituted with a 4-hydroxymethyl group which, likewise, renders a polynucleotide susceptible to cleavage with chemical base.

- 10 On the other hand, the modified sugar can be hydroxycyclopentane, in particular 1-hydroxy- or 2-hydroxycyclopentane. The hydroxycyclopentanes can also be cleaved with chemical base.

- The modified sugar can be azidosugar, for example, without limitation, 2'-azido, 4'-azido or 4'-azidomethyl sugar. Cleaving an azido sugar can be
15 accomplished in the presence of TCEP.

The sugar can also be substituted with a group capable of photolyzing to form a free radical such as, without limitation, a phenylselenyl or a t-butylcarboxy group. Such groups render the polynucleotide susceptible to cleavage with ultraviolet light.

- The sugar can also be a cyanosugar. In a presently preferred embodiment,
20 the cyanosugar is 2'-cyanosugar or 2''-cyanosugar. The cyanosugar modified polynucleotides can be cleaved with chemical base.

- A sugar substituted with an electron withdrawing group, such as, without limitation, fluorine, azido, methoxy or nitro in the 2', 2'' or 4' position of the modified sugar is another aspect of this invention. These modified sugars render the modified
25 polynucleotide susceptible to cleavage with chemical base.

On the other hand, a sugar can be modified by inclusion of an electron-withdrawing element in the sugar ring. Nitrogen is an example of such a group. The nitrogen can replace the ring oxygen of the sugar or a ring carbon and the resultant modified sugar is cleavable with chemical base.

- 30 In yet another aspect of this invention, the modified sugar can be a sugar containing a mercapto group. The 2' position of the sugar is a presently preferred embodiment, such a sugar being cleavable by chemical base.

In particular, the modified sugar can be a 5'-methylenyl-sugar, a 5'-keto-sugar or a 5',5'-difluoro-sugar, all of which are cleavable with chemical base.

Another aspect of this invention is a method for detecting a variance in nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, sequencing a polynucleotide or genotyping
5 a polynucleotide known to contain a polymorphism or mutation comprising replacing one or more natural nucleotides in said polynucleotide with one or more modified nucleotides, one or more of which comprises a modified phosphate ester.

The modified phosphate ester can be a phosphorothioate.

In one embodiment, the sulfur of the phosphorothioate is not covalently
10 bonded to the sugar ring. In this case, cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises:

a. contacting said sulfur of said phosphorothiolate with an alkylating agent; and,

b. then contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

15 In a presently preferred embodiment of this invention, the alkylating agent is methyl iodide.

In another aspect of this invention the phosphorothioate containing modified polynucleotide can be cleaved into fragments by contacting said sulfur of said phosphorothioate with β -mercaptoethanol in a chemical base such as, without
20 limitation, sodium methoxide in methanol.

On the other hand, the sulfur atom of said phosphorothiolate can be covalently bonded to a sugar ring in another embodiment of this invention. Cleavage of a polynucleotide so modified can be carried out with chemical base.

The modified phosphate ester can also be a phosphoramidate. Cleavage of a
25 phosphoramidate-containing polynucleotide can be performed using acid.

It is an aspect of this invention that the modified phosphate ester comprises a group selected from the group consisting of alkyl phosphonate and alkyl phosphorotriester wherein the alkyl group is preferably methyl. Such a modified polynucleotide can also be cleaved with acid.

30 Another aspect of this invention is a method for detecting a variance in nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, sequencing a polynucleotide or genotyping a polynucleotide known to contain a polymorphism or mutation, comprising replacing

a first and a second natural nucleotide in said polynucleotide with a first and a second modified nucleotides such that said polynucleotide can be specifically cleaved at sites where the first modified nucleotide is followed immediately in the modified polynucleotide sequence by said second modified nucleotide.

5 In the above method, the first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to a sulfur atom of a phosphorothioate group and said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'-hydroxy group, is contiguous to, and 5' of, said first modified nucleotide. This dinucleotide pair is cleavable with chemical base.

10 Also in the above method the first modified nucleotide can be covalently bonded at its 3' position to a sulfur atom of a phosphorothioate group where said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'-hydroxy group, is contiguous to and 3' of said first modified nucleotide. This modified nucleotide pair can also be cleaved with chemical base.

15 It is also an aspect of this invention that, in the above method, said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to a first oxygen atom of a phosphorothioate group, said second modified nucleotide is substituted at its 2' position with a leaving group and said second modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 3' position to a second oxygen of said phosphorothioate group. Any leaving group can be used, fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine are examples.
20 The polynucleotide so modified can be cleaved with chemical base. Sodium methoxide is an example, without limitation, of a useful chemical base.

 In another embodiment of this invention, said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to a first oxygen atom of a phosphorothioate group, said second modified nucleotide is substituted at its 4' position with a leaving
25 group and said second modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 3' position to a second oxygen of said phosphorothioate group. Here, again, any good leaving group can be used of which fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine are non-limiting examples. These groups likewise render the modified polynucleotide susceptible to cleavage by chemical base such as, without limitation, sodium methoxide.

30 In a further embodiment of this invention, said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to a first oxygen atom of a phosphorothioate group, said second modified nucleotide is substituted at its 2' position with one or

two fluorine atoms and said second modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 3' position to a second oxygen of said phosphorothioate group. Such a modified polynucleotide can be cleaved by

- a. contacting said modified polynucleotide with ethylene sulfide or β -mercaptoethanol; and then,
- b. contacting said modified polynucleotide with a chemical base such as, without limitation, sodium methoxide.

Another embodiment of this invention has said first modified nucleotide covalently bonded at its 5' position to a first oxygen atom of a phosphorothioate group, said second modified nucleotide substituted at its 2' position with a hydroxy group and said second modified nucleotide covalently bonded at its 3' position to a second oxygen of said phosphorothioate group. Here, cleavage can be accomplished by:

- a. contacting said modified polynucleotide with a metal oxidant; and then,
- b. contacting said modified polynucleotide with a chemical base.

Non-limiting examples of metal oxidants are Cu^{II} and Fe^{III} and equally non-limiting examples of useful bases are dilute hydroxide, piperidine and dilute ammonium hydroxide.

It is also an embodiment of this invention that said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to a nitrogen atom of a phosphoramidate group and said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'-hydroxy group, is contiguous to and 5' of said first modified nucleotide. This type of modification renders the modified polynucleotide susceptible to acid cleavage.

A still further embodiment of this invention is one in which said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 3' position to a nitrogen atom of a phosphoramidate group and said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'-hydroxy group, is contiguous to and 3' of said first modified nucleotide. Again, such a substitution pattern is cleavable with acid.

It also may be that said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to an oxygen atom of an alkylphosphonate or an alkylphosphotriester group and said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'-hydroxy

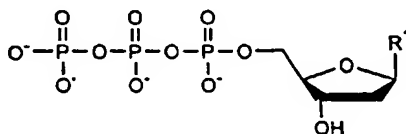
group, is contiguous to said first modified nucleotide. This alternative dinucleotide grouping is also cleavable with acid.

Another cleavable dinucleotide grouping is one in which said first modified nucleotide has an electron-withdrawing group at its 4' position and said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'-hydroxy group, is contiguous to and 5' of said first modified nucleotide. Again, cleavage can be accomplished by contact with acid.

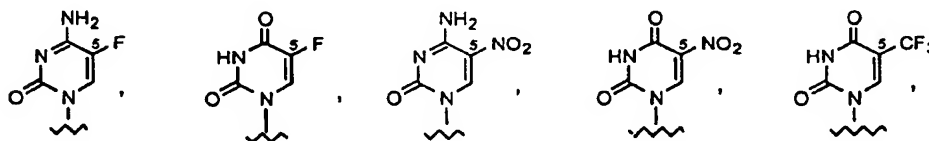
Another aspect of this invention is a method for detecting a variance in nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, for sequencing a polynucleotide or for genotyping a polynucleotide known to contain a polymorphism or mutation comprising:

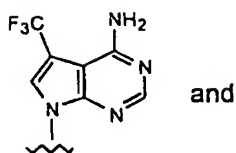
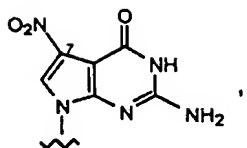
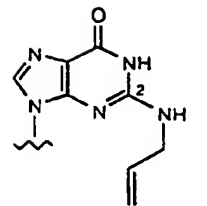
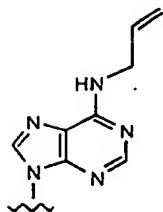
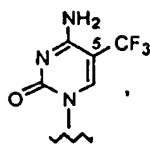
- a. replacing one or more natural nucleotides in said polynucleotide with one or more modified nucleotides wherein each modified nucleotide is modified with one or more modifications selected from the group consisting of a modified base, a modified sugar and a modified phosphate ester, provided that, if only one modified nucleotide is used, said modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide;
- b. contacting said modified polynucleotide with a reagent or reagents which cleave the modified polynucleotide into fragments at site(s) of incorporation of said modified nucleotide;
- c. analyzing said fragments to detect said variance, to construct said sequence or to genotype said polynucleotide.

An aspect of this invention is compound having the chemical structure:

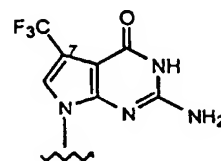


wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:



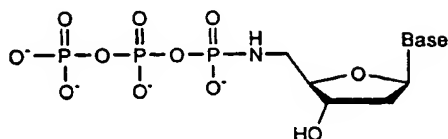


and



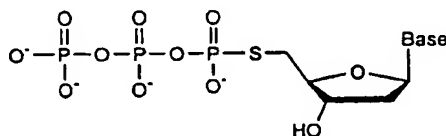
5

A compound having the chemical structure:



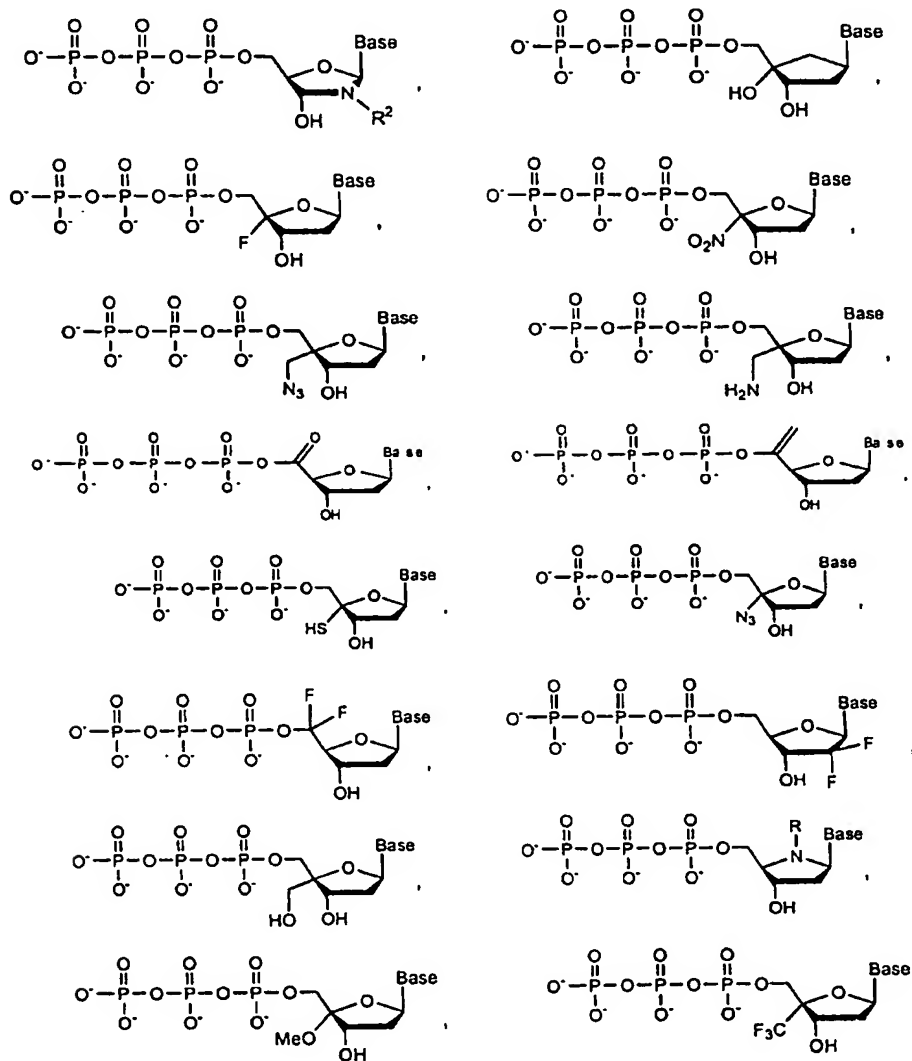
- 10 wherein said "Base" is selected from the group consisting of cytosine, guanine, inosine and uracil is another aspect of this invention.

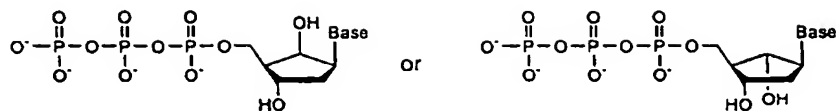
Another aspect of this invention is a compound having the chemical structure:



wherein said "Base" is selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine, guanine, inosine and uracil.

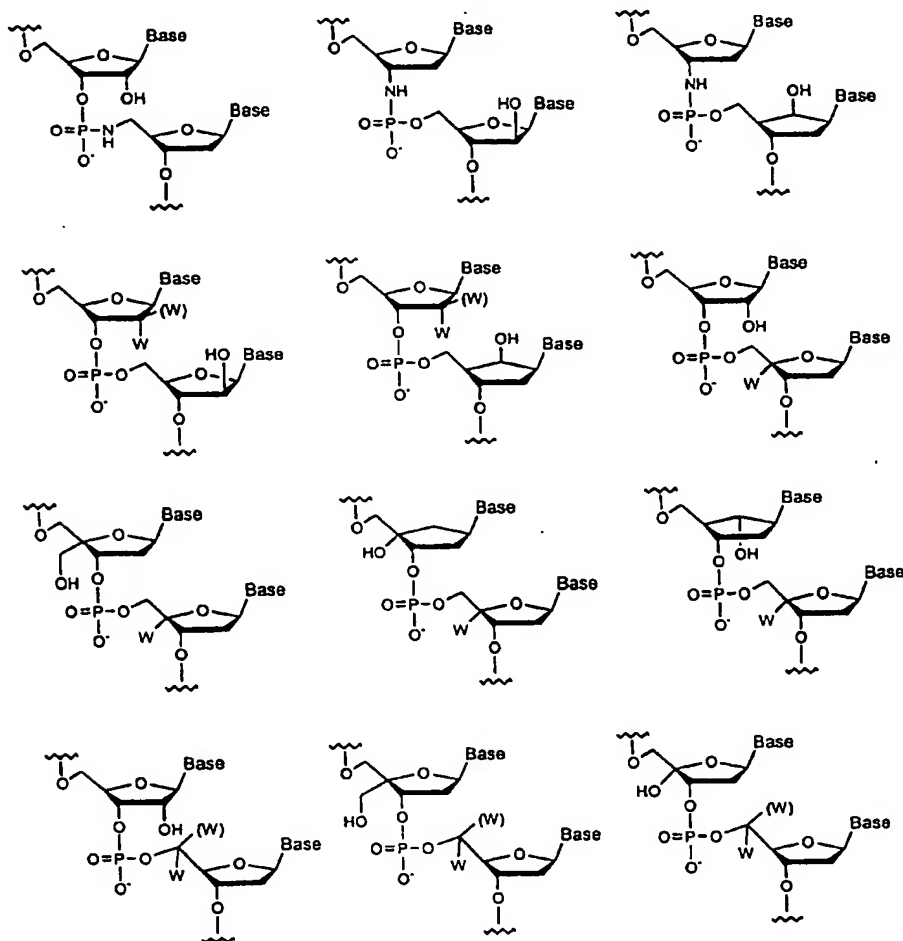
A still further aspect of this invention is a compound having the chemical structure:

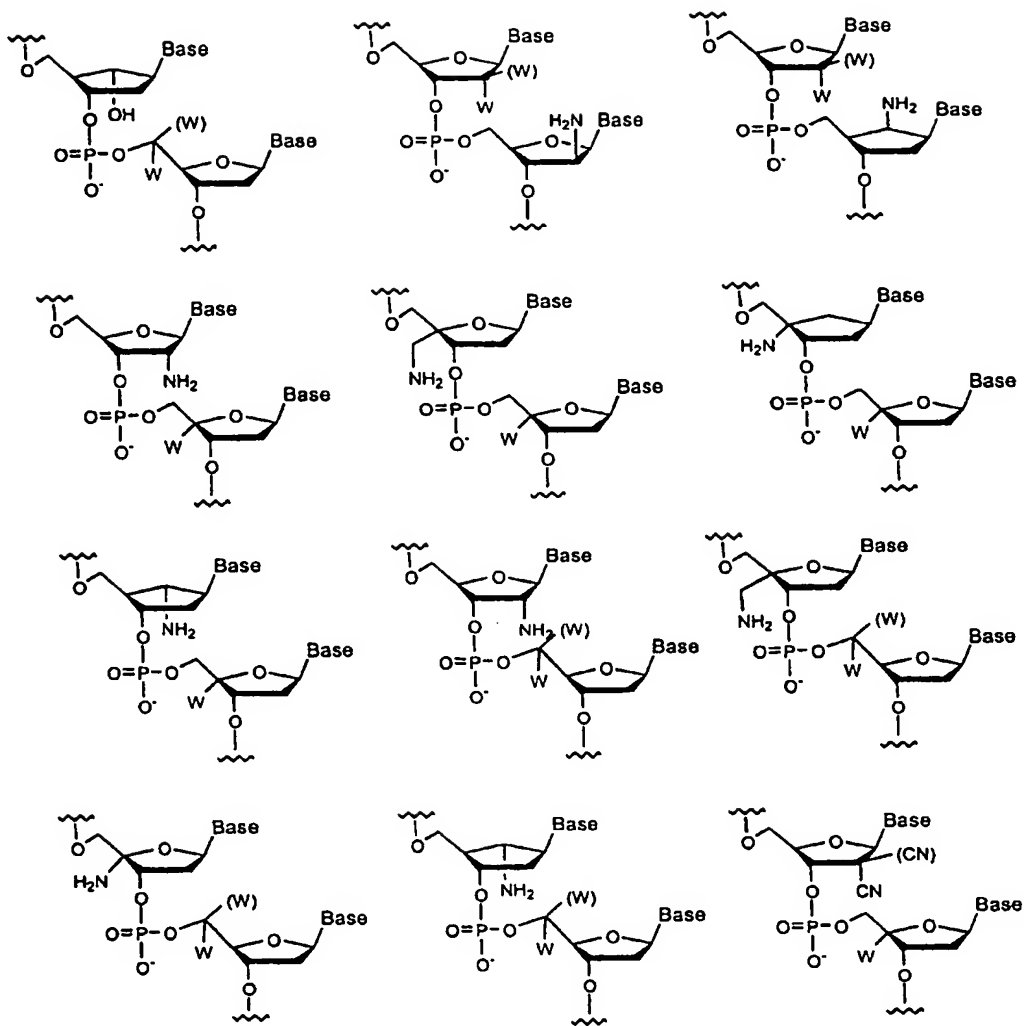


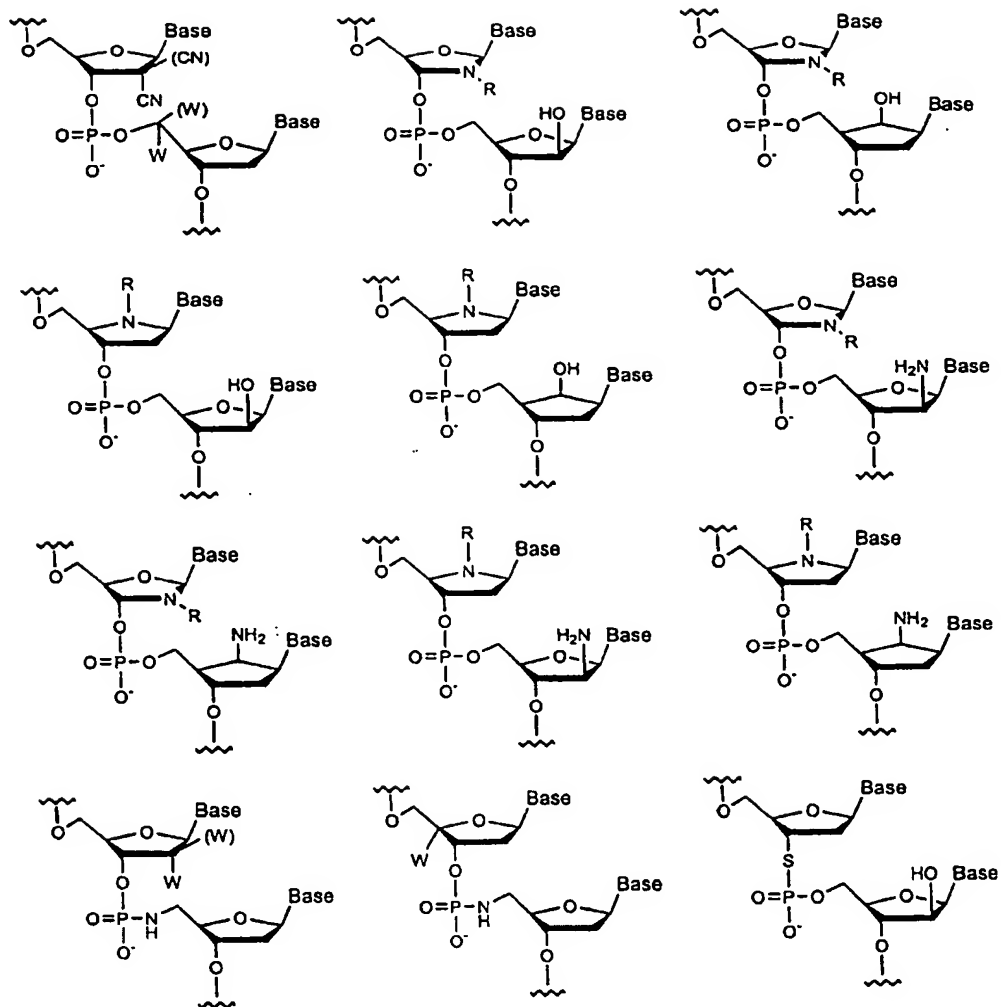


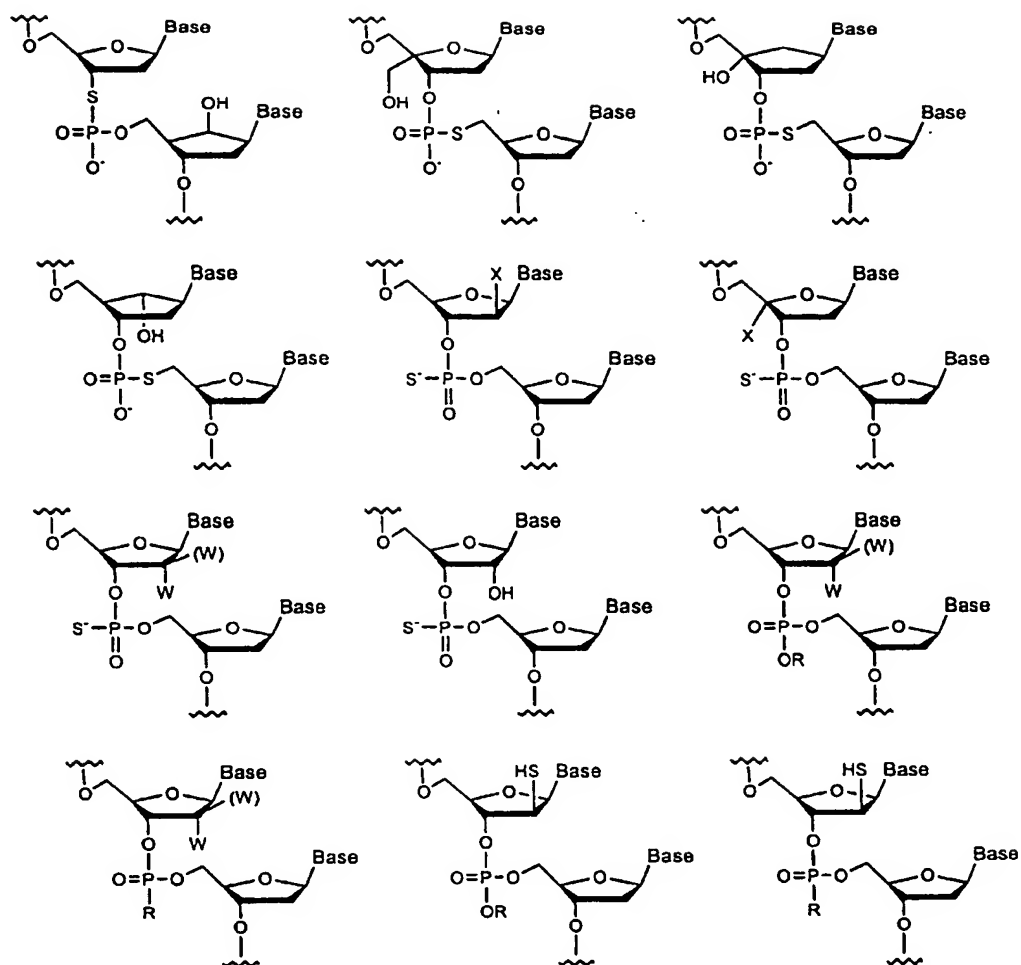
wherein said "Base" is selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine, guanine, inosine, thymine and uracil.

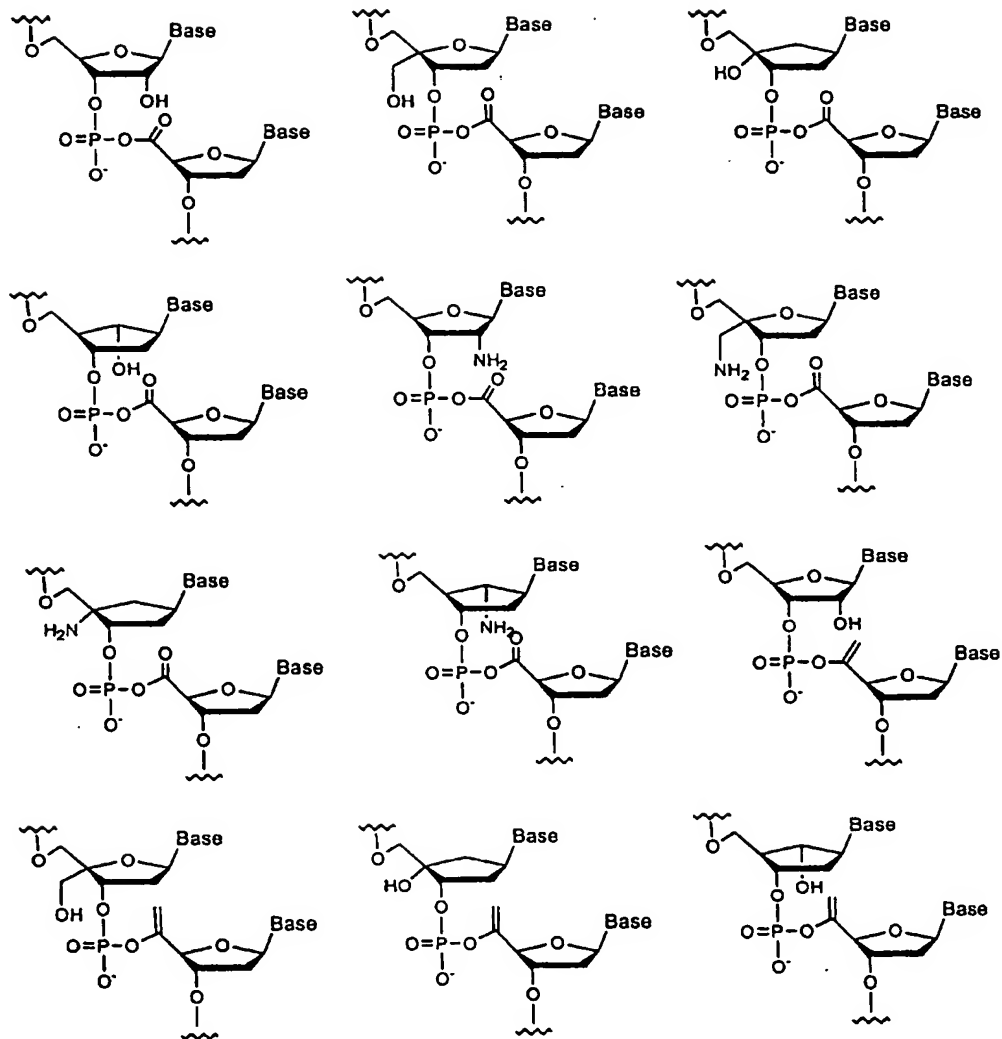
A polynucleotide comprising a dinucleotide sequence selected from the group
5 consisting of:

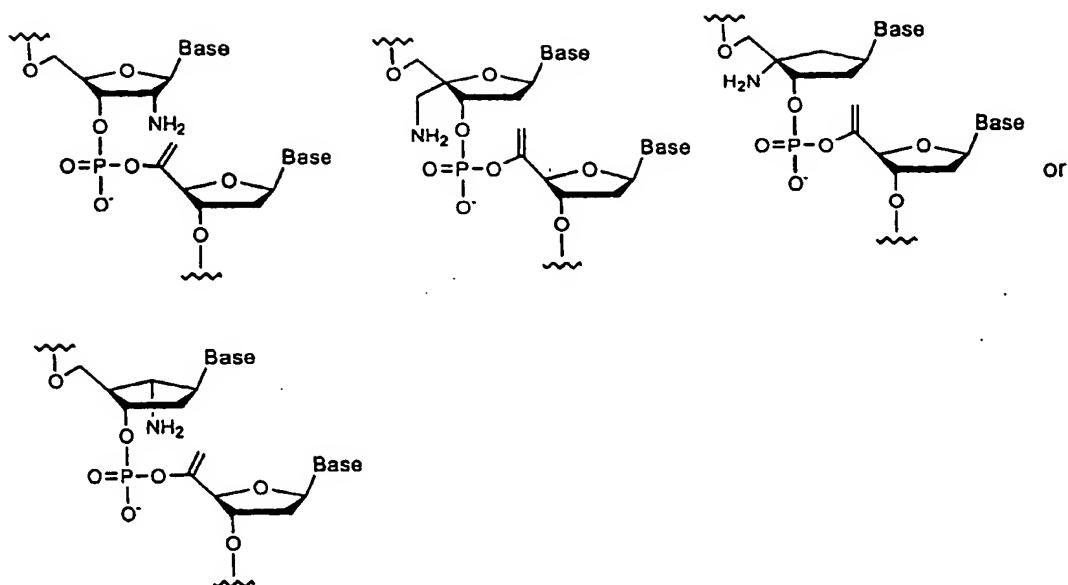






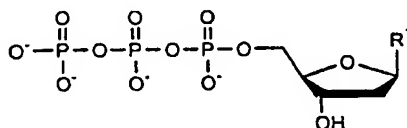




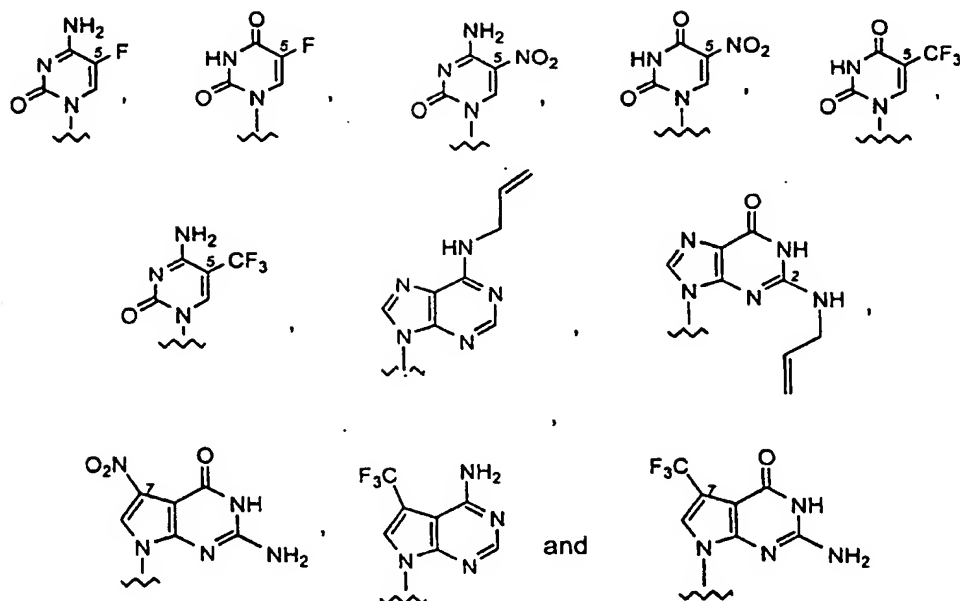


wherein each "Base" is independently selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine, guanine and thymine; W is an electron withdrawing group; X is a leaving group and R is an alkyl, preferably a lower alkyl, group is also an aspect of this invention. The electron withdrawing group is selected from the group consisting of F, Cl, Br, I, NO₂, C≡N, -C(O)OH and OH in another aspect of this invention and, in a still further aspect, the leaving group is selected from the group consisting of Cl, Br, I and OTs.

An aspect of this invention is a method for synthesizing a polynucleotide comprising mixing a compound having the chemical structure:



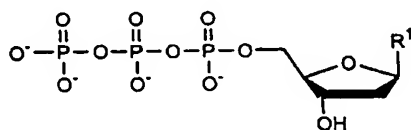
wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:



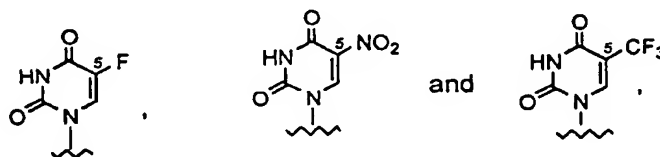
with adenosine triphosphate, guanosine triphosphate, and thymidine or uridine triphosphate in the presence of one or more polymerases.

A method for synthesizing a polynucleotide comprising mixing a compound

- 5 having the chemical structure:

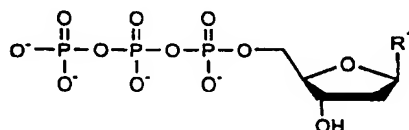


wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:



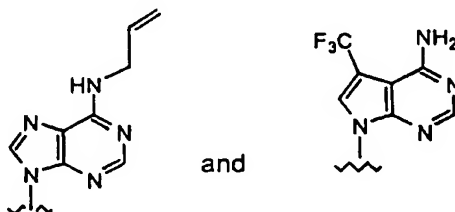
with adenosine triphosphate, cytidine triphosphate and guanosine triphosphate in the presence of one or more polymerases is also an aspect of this invention.

A method for synthesizing a polynucleotide, comprising mixing a compound having the chemical structure:



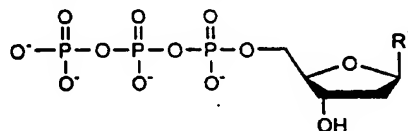
5

wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:



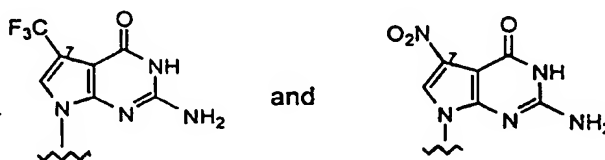
10 with cytidine triphosphate, guanosine triphosphate, and thymidine triphosphate in the presence of one or more polymerases is a further aspect of this invention.

An aspect of this invention is a method for synthesizing a polynucleotide, comprising mixing a compound having the chemical structure:



wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:

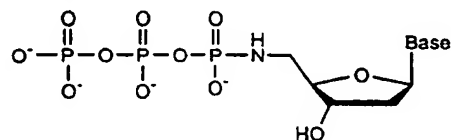
15



with adenosine triphosphate, cytidine triphosphate and thymidine triphosphate in the presence of one or more polymerases.

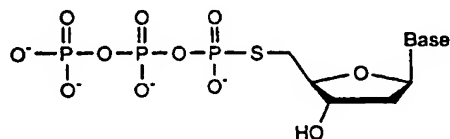
Another aspect of this invention is a method for synthesizing a polynucleotide, comprising mixing a compound selected from the group consisting of:

- 5 a compound having the chemical structure:



- 10 wherein said "Base" is selected from the group consisting of cytosine, guanine, inosine and uracil;

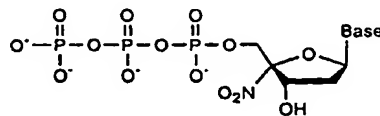
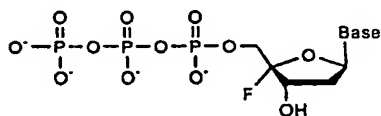
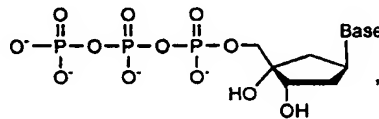
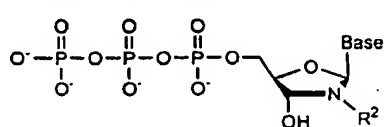
a compound having the chemical structure:

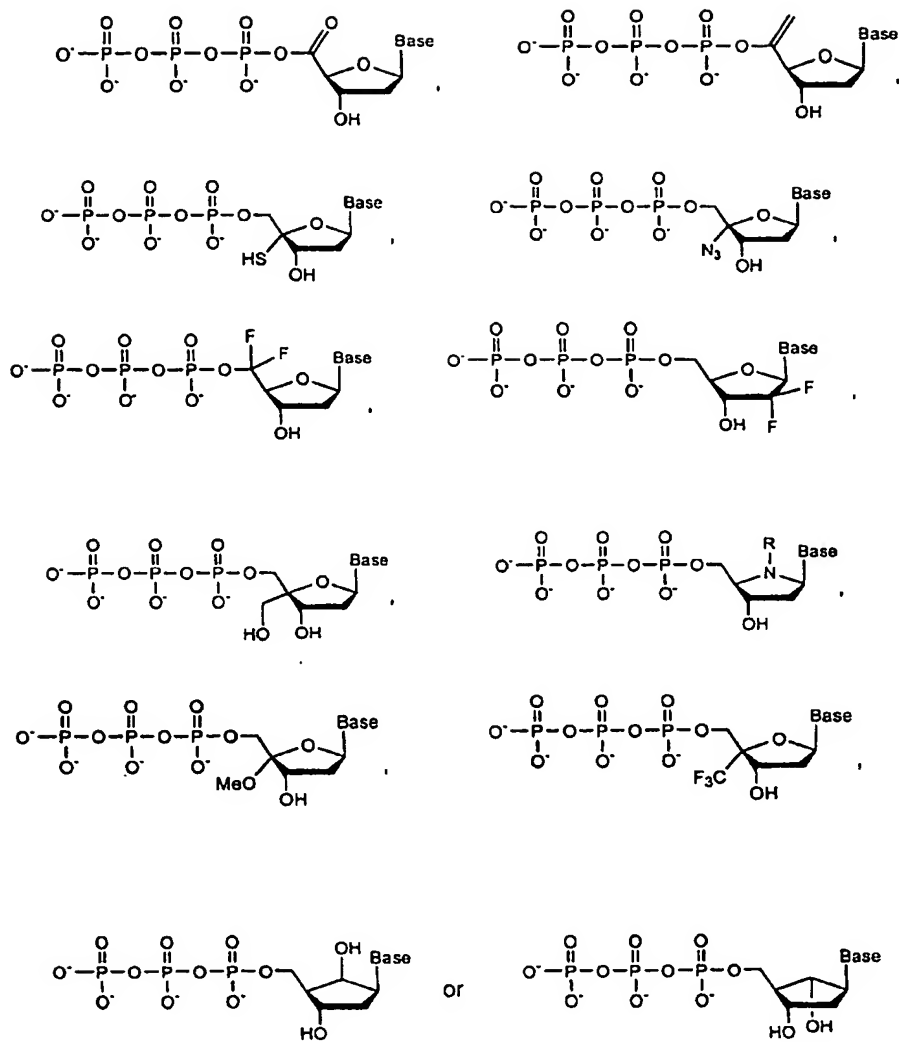


wherein said "Base" is selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine,

- 15 guanine, inosine and uracil; and

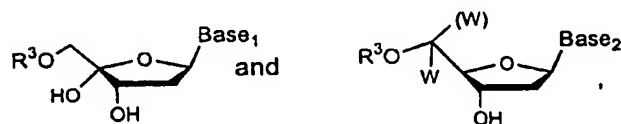
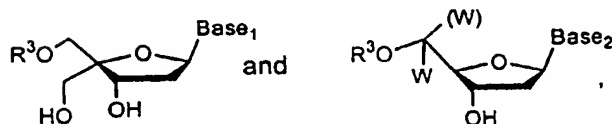
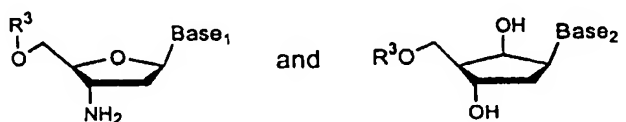
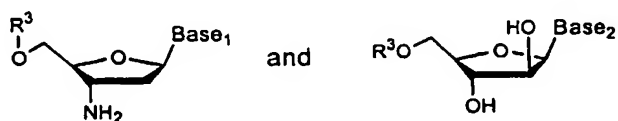
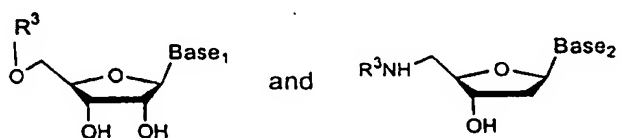
a compound having the chemical structure:

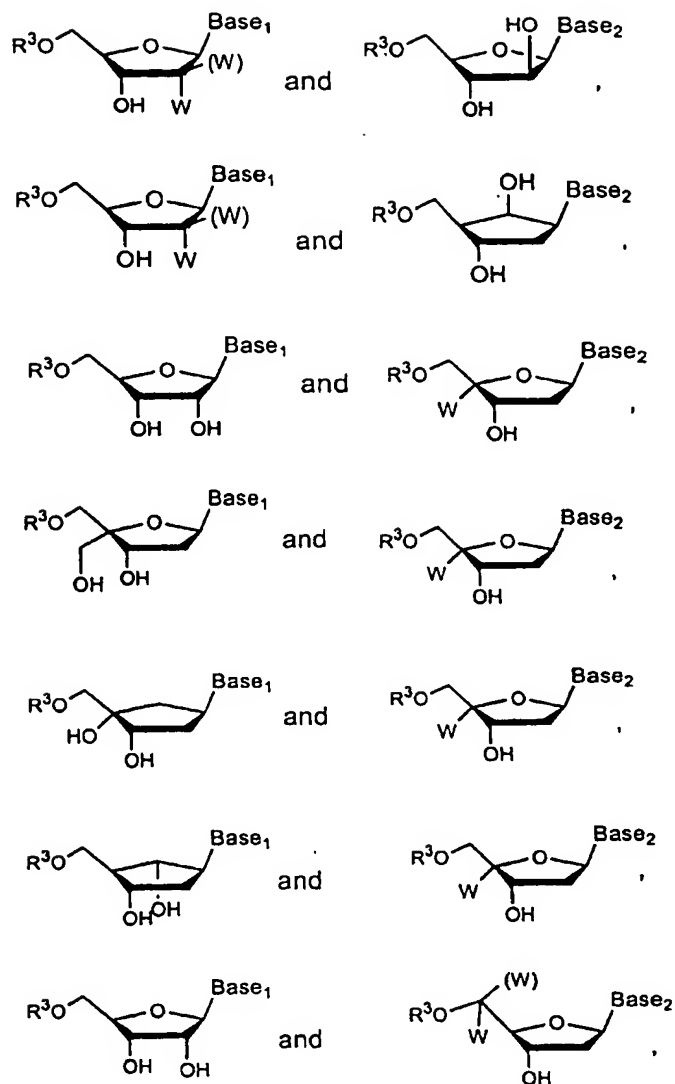


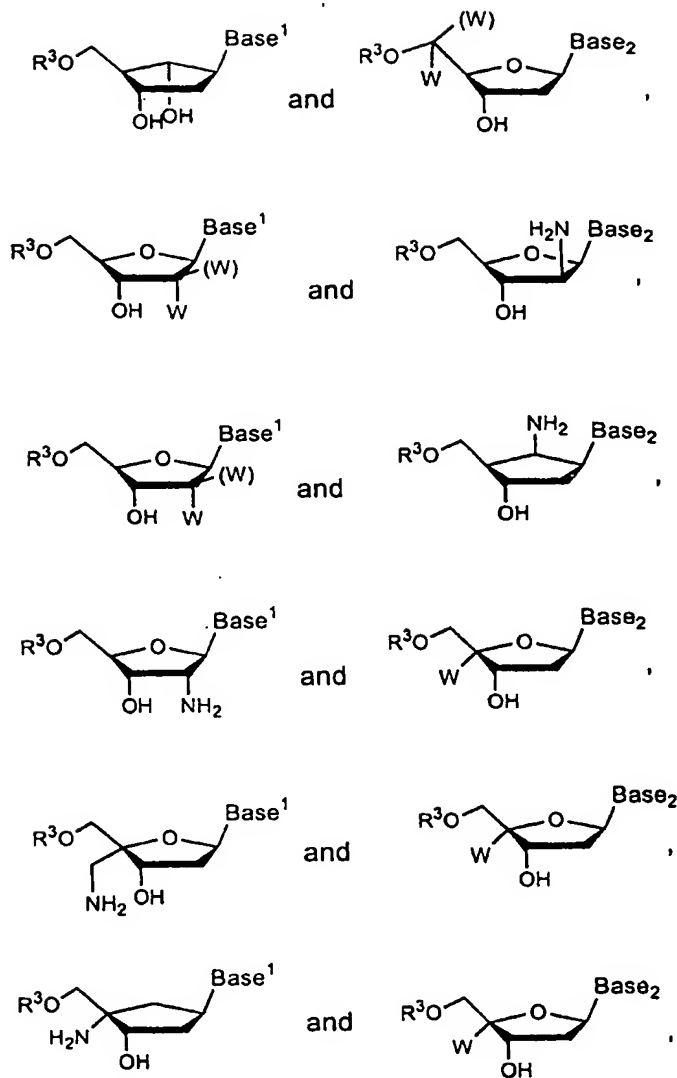


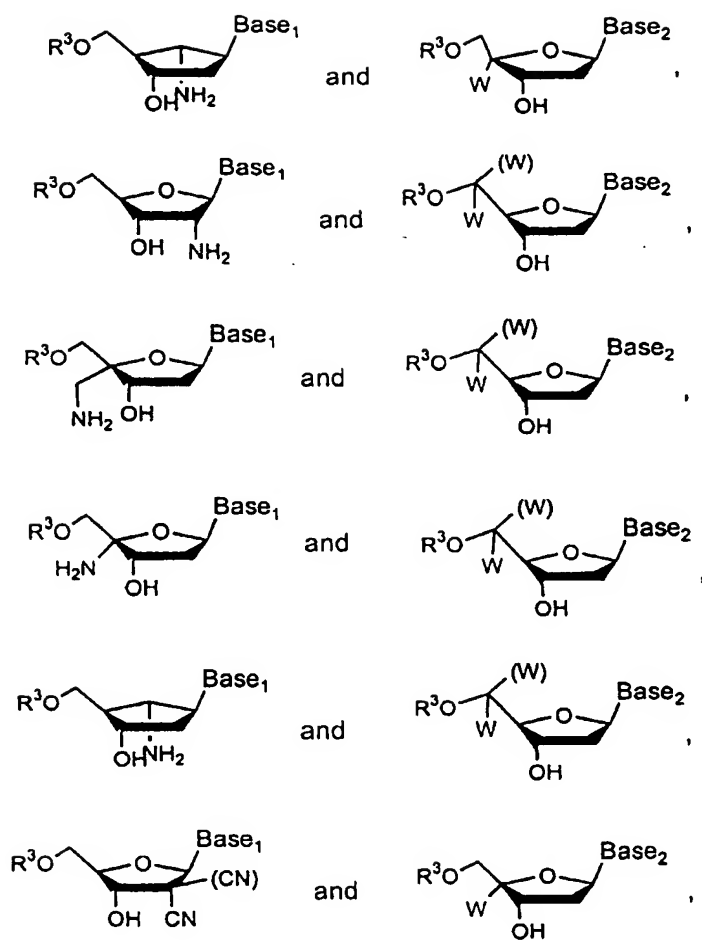
- wherein the "Base" is selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine, guanine or inosine, and thymine or uracil, with whichever three of the four nucleosides triphosphates, adenosine triphosphate, cytidine triphosphate, guanosine triphosphate and thymidine triphosphate, do not contain said base (or its substitute), in the presence of one or more polymerases.

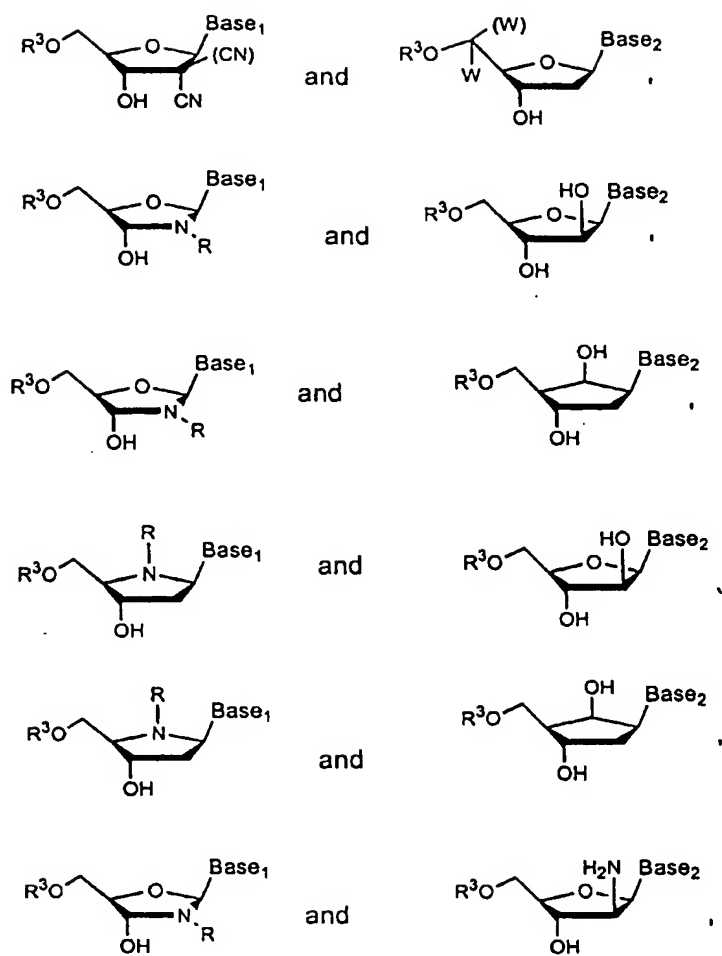
- Another aspect of this invention is a method for synthesizing a polynucleotide, comprising mixing one of the following pairs of compounds:

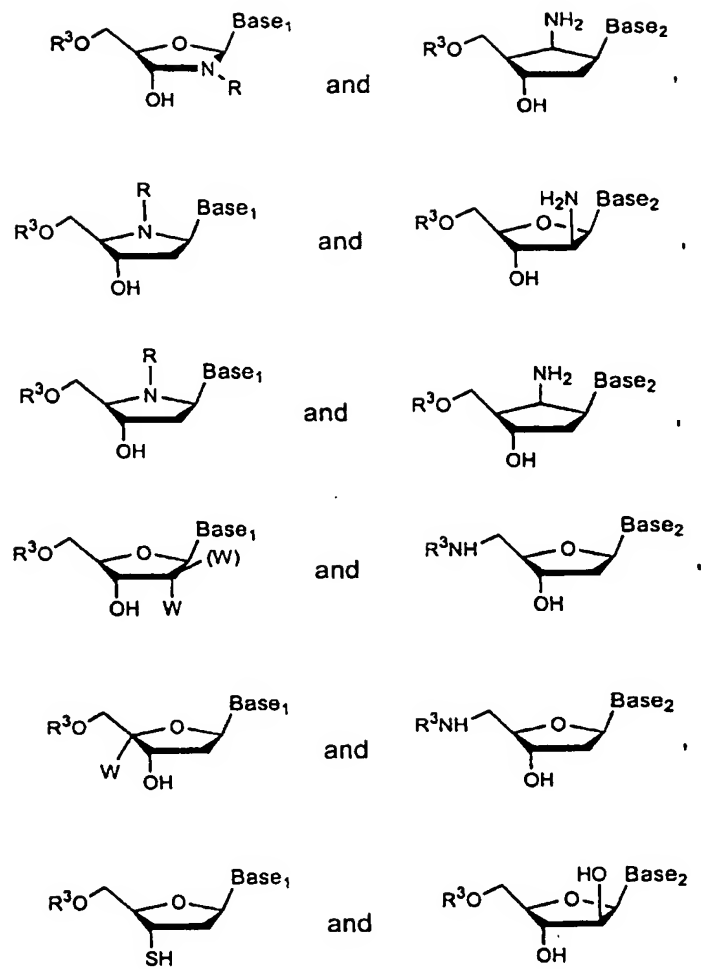


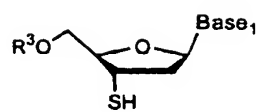




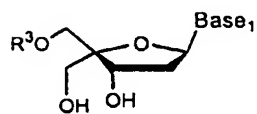
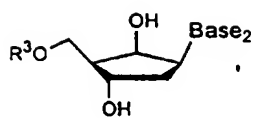




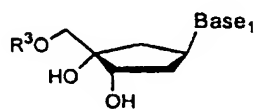
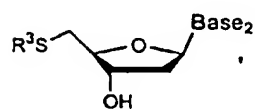




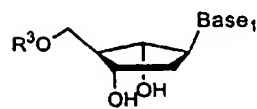
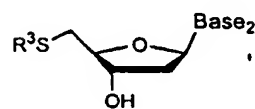
and



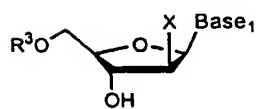
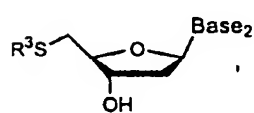
and



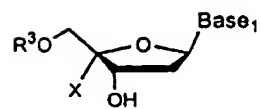
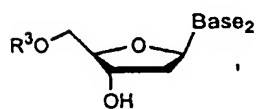
and



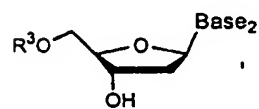
and

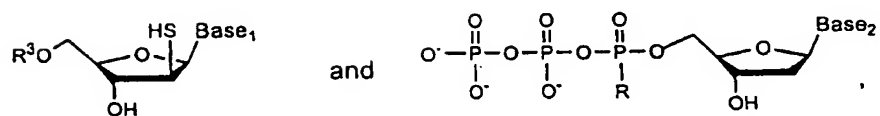
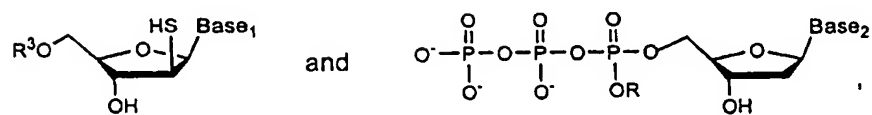
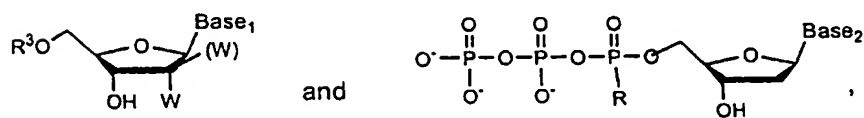
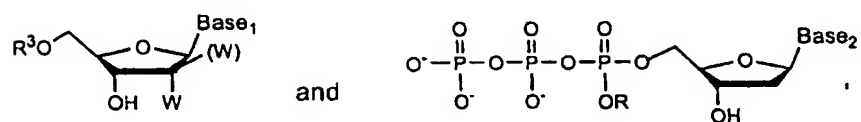
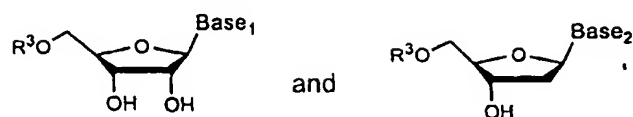
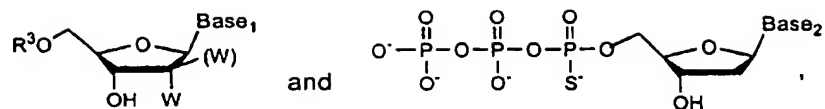


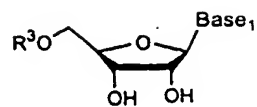
and



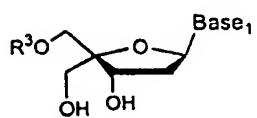
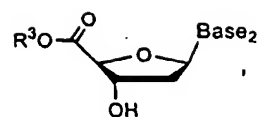
and



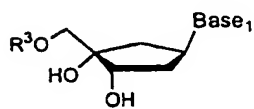
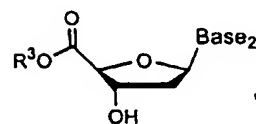




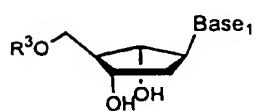
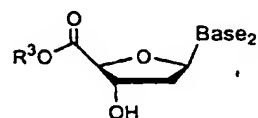
and



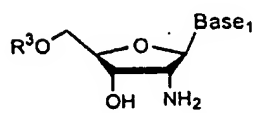
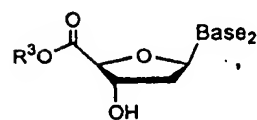
and



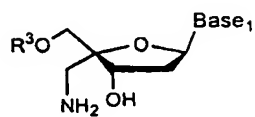
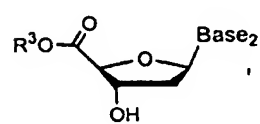
and



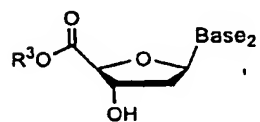
and

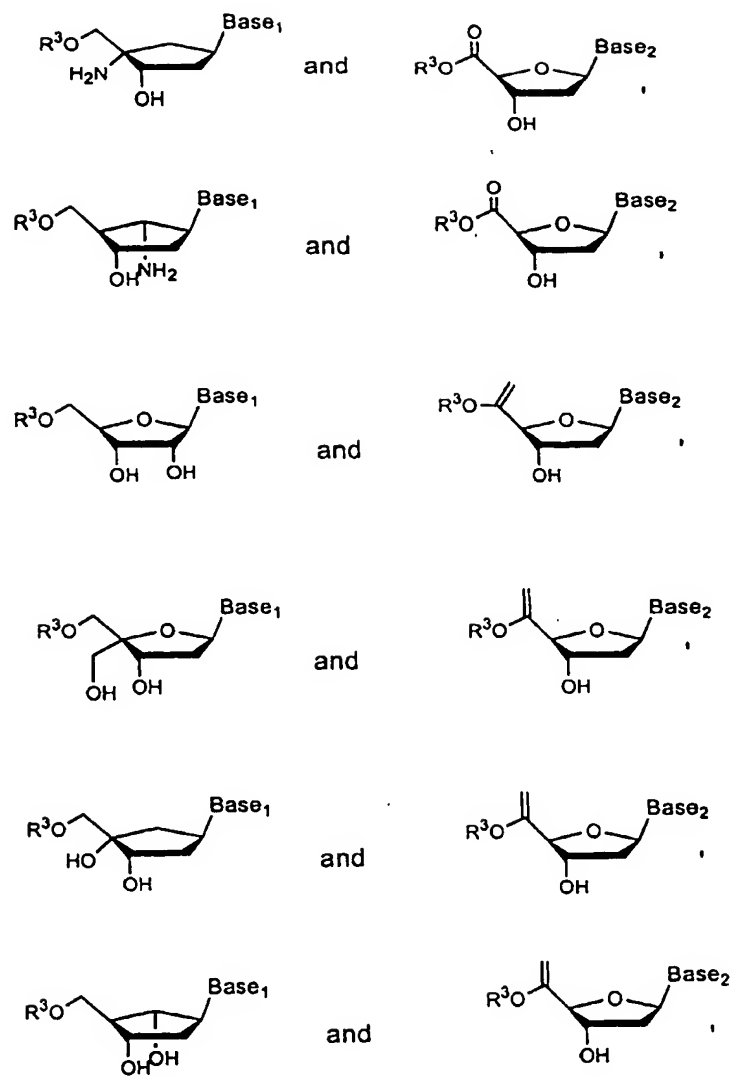


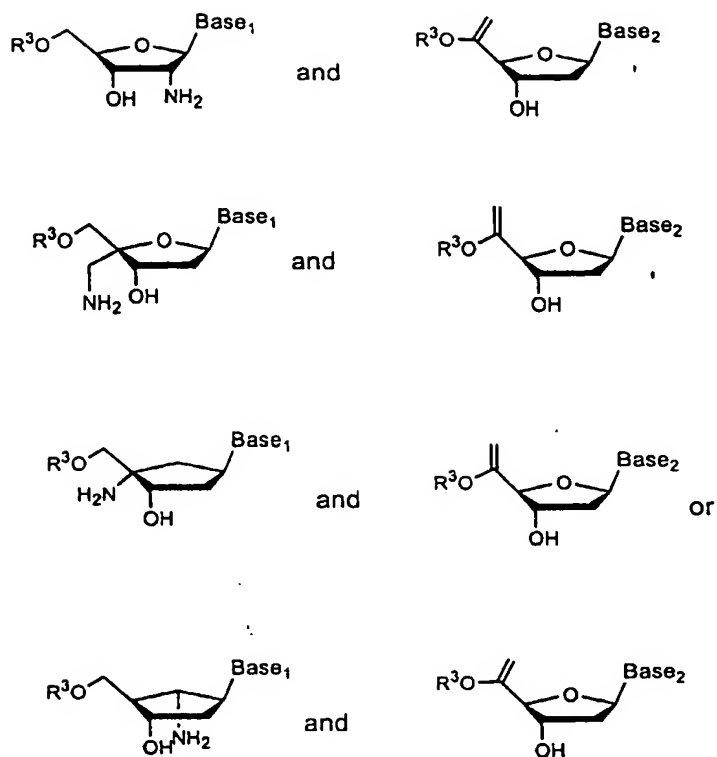
and



and







5

wherein:

Base_1 is selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine, guanine or inosine, and thymine or uracil;

10 Base_2 is selected from the group consisting of the remaining three bases which are not Base_1 ;

R^3 is $\text{O}^- \text{--} \text{P}(=\text{O})(\text{O}^-) \text{--} \text{O} \text{--} \text{P}(=\text{O})(\text{O}^-) \text{--} \text{O} \text{--} \text{P}(=\text{O})(\text{O}^-) \text{--} \text{O}^-$; and,

W is an electron withdrawing group;

X is leaving group;

a second W or X shown in parentheses on the same carbon atom means that a single W or X group can be in either position on the sugar or both W or both X groups can be present at the same time; and,

R is a lower alkyl group;

- 5 with whichever two of the four nucleoside triphosphates, adenosine triphosphate, cytidine triphosphate, guanosine triphosphate and thymidine triphosphate, do not contain base-1 or base-2 (or their substitutes), in the presence of one or more polymerases.

- 10 An aspect of this invention is a mutant polymerase which is capable of catalyzing the incorporation of a modified nucleotide into a polynucleotide wherein said modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide, said polymerase being obtained by a process comprising DNA shuffling in another aspect of this invention.

The DNA shuffling including process can comprise the following steps:

- 15 a. selecting one or more known polymerase(s);
b. performing DNA shuffling;
c. transforming shuffled DNA into a host cell;
d. growing host cell colonies;
e. forming a lysate from said host cell colony;
f. adding a DNA template containing a detectable reporter sequence, the
20 modified nucleotide or nucleotides whose incorporation into a polynucleotide is desired and the natural nucleotides not being replaced by said modified nucleotide(s); and,

- g. examining the lysate for the presence of the detectable reporter.

The DNA-shuffling including process can also comprise:

- 25 a. selecting a known polymerase or two or more known polymerases having different sequences or different biochemical properties or both;
b. performing DNA shuffling;
c. transforming said shuffled DNA into a host to form a library of transformants in host cell colonies;
30 d. preparing first separate pools of said transformants by plating said host cell colonies;
e. forming a lysate from each said first separate pool host cell colonies;

- f. removing all natural nucleotides from each said lysate;
 - g. combining each said lysate with:
 - i. a single-stranded DNA template comprising a sequence corresponding to an RNA polymerase promoter followed by a reporter sequence;
 - ii. a single-stranded DNA primer complementary to one end of said template;
 - iii. the modified nucleotide or nucleotides whose incorporation into said polynucleotide is desired;
 - iv. each natural nucleotide not being replaced by said modified nucleotide or nucleotides;
 - h. adding RNA polymerase to each said combined lysate;
 - i. examining each said combined lysate for the presence of said reporter sequence;
 - j. creating second separate pools of transformants in host cell colonies from each said first separate pool of host cell colonies in which the presence of said reporter is detected;
 - k. forming a lysate from each said second separate pool of host cell colonies;
 - l. repeating steps g, h, i, j, k and l to form separate pools of transformants in host cell colonies until only one host cell colony remains which contains said polymerase; and,
 - m. recloning said polymerase from said one host cell colony into a protein expression vector.
- A polymerase which is capable of catalyzing the incorporation of a modified nucleotide into a polynucleotide, wherein said modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide obtained by a process comprising cell senescence selection is another aspect of this invention.
- The cell senescence selection process can comprise the following steps:
- a. mutagenizing a known polymerase to form a library of mutant polymerases;
 - b. cloning said library into a vector;

c. transforming said vector into host cells selected so as to be susceptible to being killed by a selected chemical only when said cell is actively growing;

- d. adding a modified nucleotide;
- 5 e. growing said host cells;
- f. treating said host cells with said selected chemical;
- g. separating living cells from dead cells; and,
- h. isolating said polymerase or polymerases from said living cells.

Steps d to h of the above method can be repeated one or more times to
10 refine the selection of the polymerase in another aspect of this invention.

The cell senescence procedure for obtaining a polymerase can also comprise the steps of:

- a. mutagenizing a known polymerase to form a library of mutant polymerases;
- 15 b. cloning said library of mutant polymerases into a plasmid vector;
- c. transforming with said plasmid vector bacterial cells that, when growing, are susceptible to an antibiotic,
- d. selecting transfectants using said antibiotic;
- e. introducing a modified nucleotide, as the corresponding nucleoside
20 triphosphate, into the bacterial cells;
- f. growing the cells;
- g. adding an antibiotic which will kill bacterial cells that are actively growing;
- h. isolating said bacterial cells;
- 25 i. growing said bacterial cells in fresh medium containing no antibiotic;
- j. selecting live cells from growing colonies;
- k. isolating said plasmid vector from said live cells;
- l. isolating said polymerase; and,
- m. assaying said polymerase.

30 Repeating steps c to k of the above process one or more additional times before proceeding to step l is another aspect of this invention.

A polymerase may also be obtained by a process comprising phage display.

The phage display process may comprise the steps of:

- a. selecting a DNA polymerase;
- b. expressing said polymerase in a bacteriophage vector as a fusion to a bacteriophage coat protein;
- 5 c. attaching an oligonucleotide to the surface of the phage;
- d. forming a primer template complex either by addition of a second oligonucleotide complementary to the oligonucleotide of c or by formation of a self priming complex using intramolecular complementarity of the oligonucleotide of c;
- e. performing a primer extension in the presence of the modified
- 10 nucleotide or nucleotides whose incorporation into a polynucleotide is desired, and the natural nucleotides not being replaced by said modified nucleotide(s) where successful primer extension results in the presence of a detectable reporter sequence;
- f. sorting the phage with the detectable reporter from those without the
- 15 detectable reporter;

The detectable reporter sequence is formed by incorporation of one or more dye-labeled natural or modified nucleotides in the primer extension reaction in another aspect of this invention.

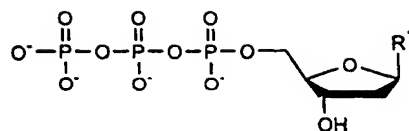
- 20 The indicated sorting procedure may comprise use of a fluorescence activated cell sorter in yet another aspect of this invention.

An aspect of this invention is that the detectable reporter in the above method is a restriction endonuclease cleavage site and the sorting procedure entails restriction endonuclease digestion.

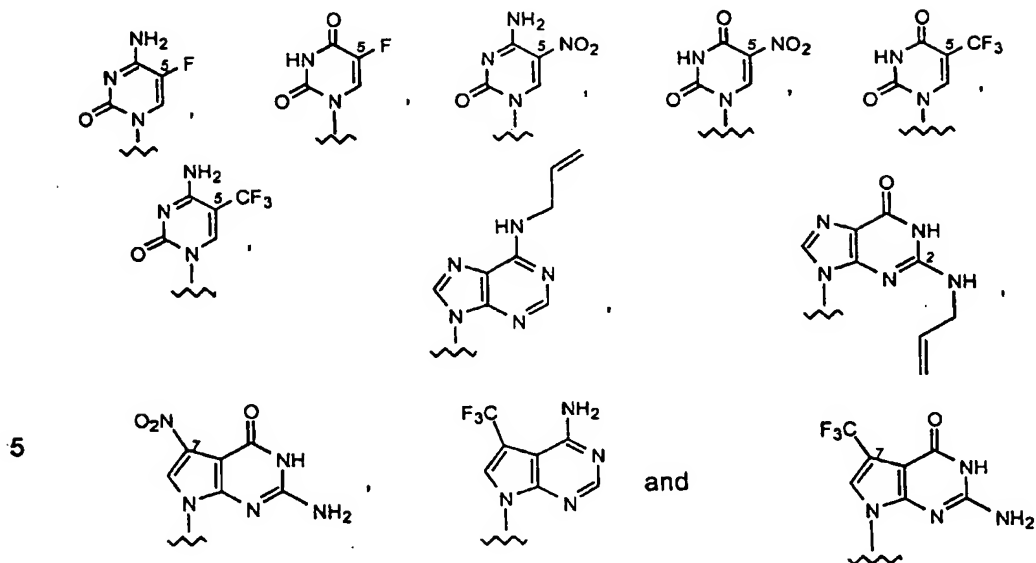
- 25 That the polymerase obtained in the above methods be a thermostable polymerase is another aspect of this invention.

The polymerase obtained by any of the above methods wherein the modified nucleotide being incorporated is selected from the group consisting of:

a compound having the chemical structure:

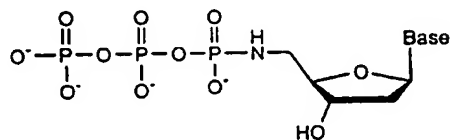


wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:



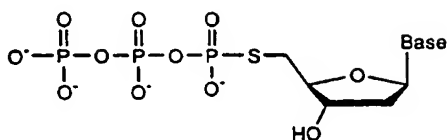
a compound having the chemical structure:

10



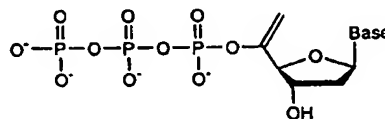
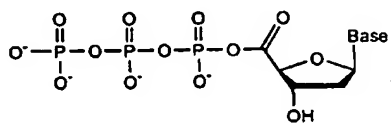
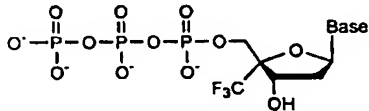
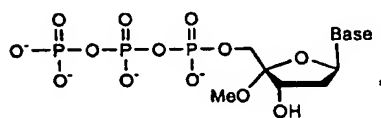
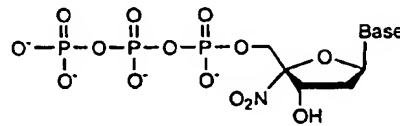
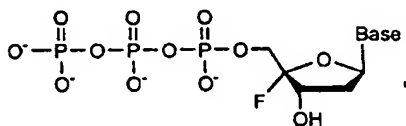
wherein said "Base" is selected from the group consisting of cytosine, guanine, inosine and uracil,

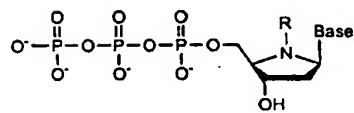
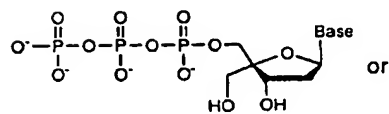
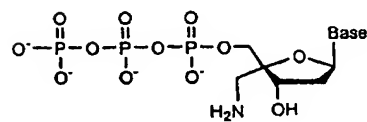
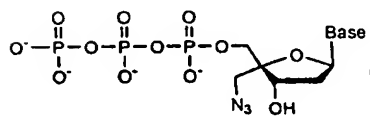
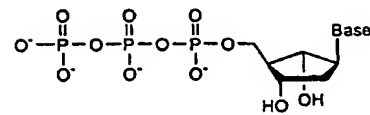
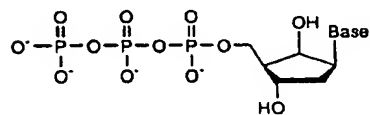
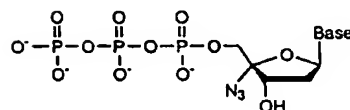
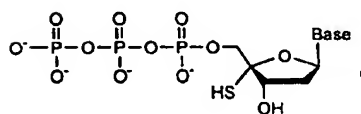
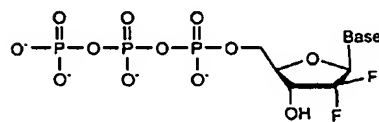
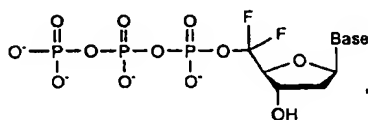
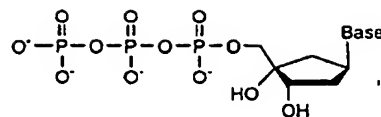
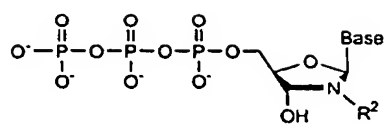
a compound having the chemical structure:



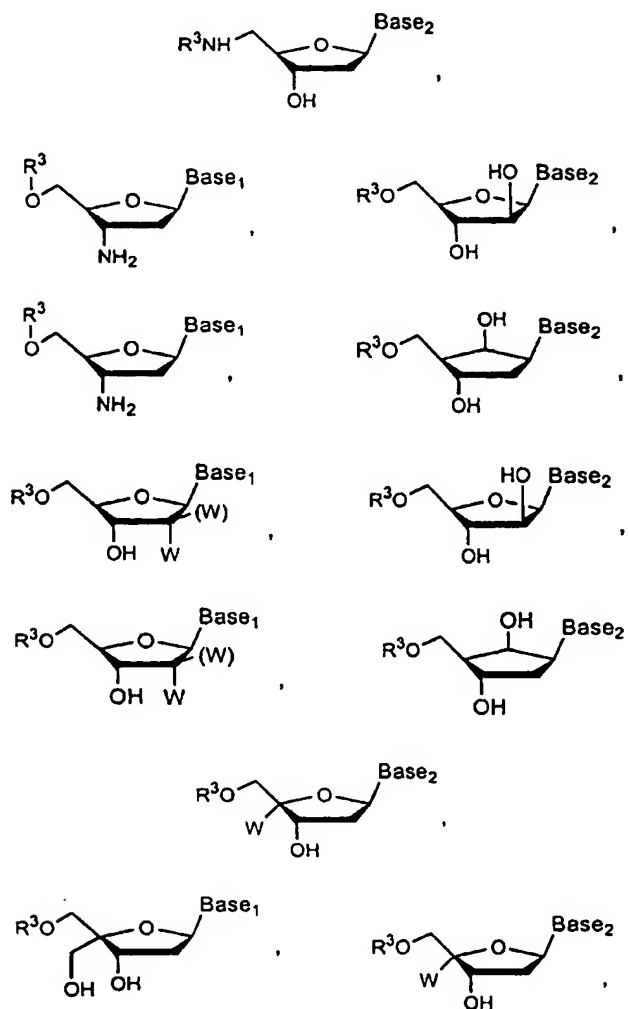
- 5 wherein said "Base" is selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine, guanine, inosine and uracil;

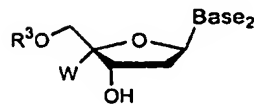
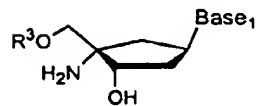
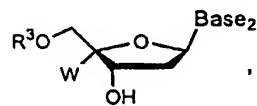
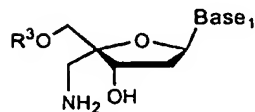
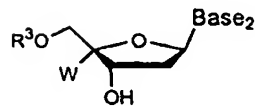
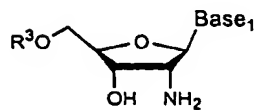
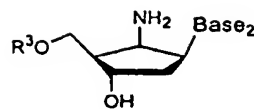
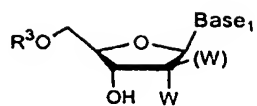
a compound having the chemical structure:

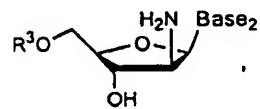
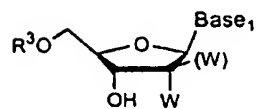
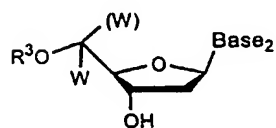
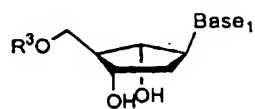
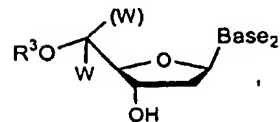
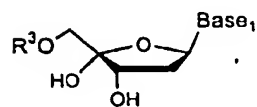
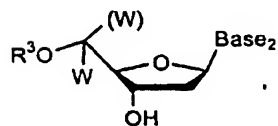
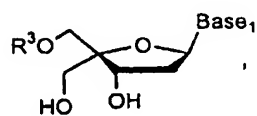
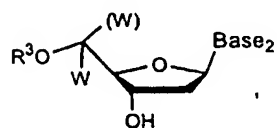
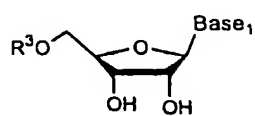
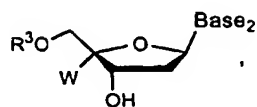
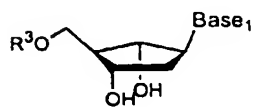
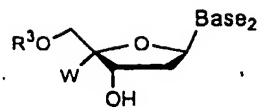
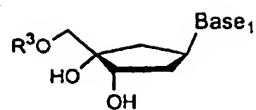


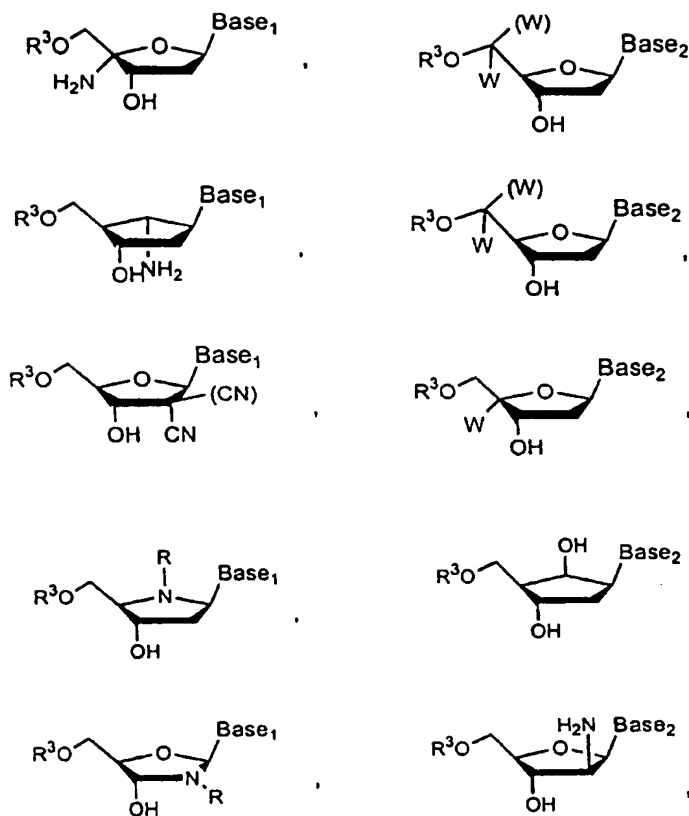


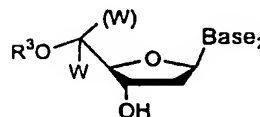
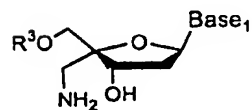
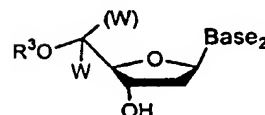
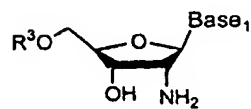
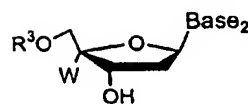
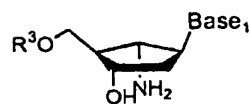
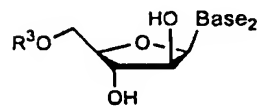
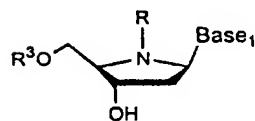
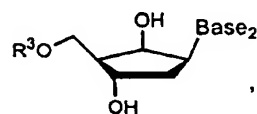
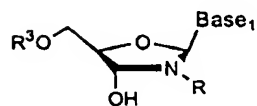
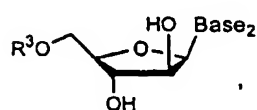
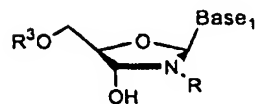
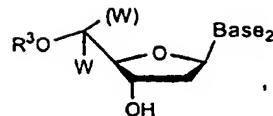
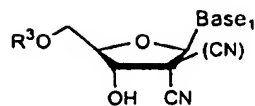
wherein said "Base" is selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine, guanine, inosine, thymine and uracil; and,
a compound selected from the group consisting of:

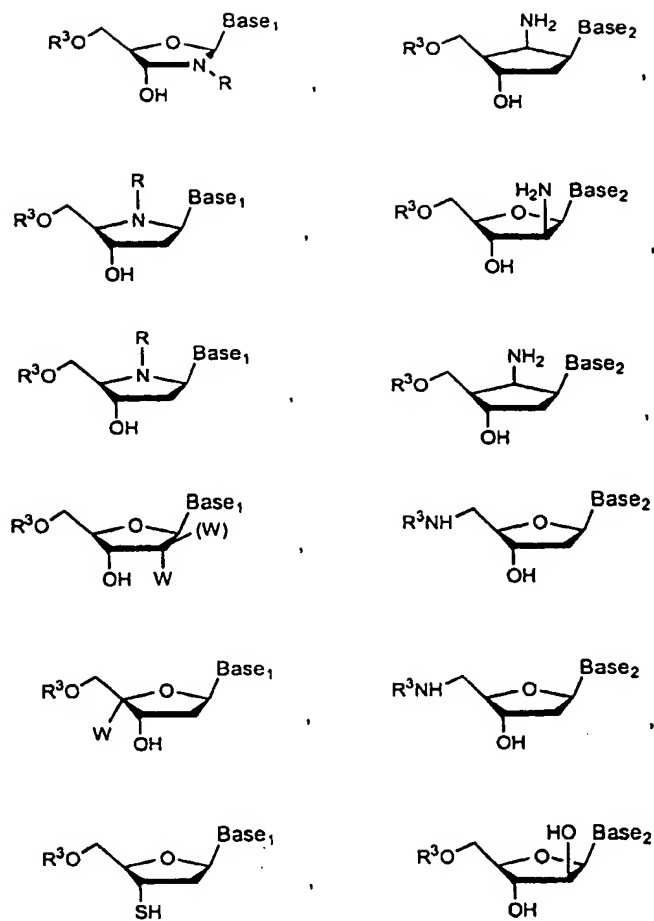


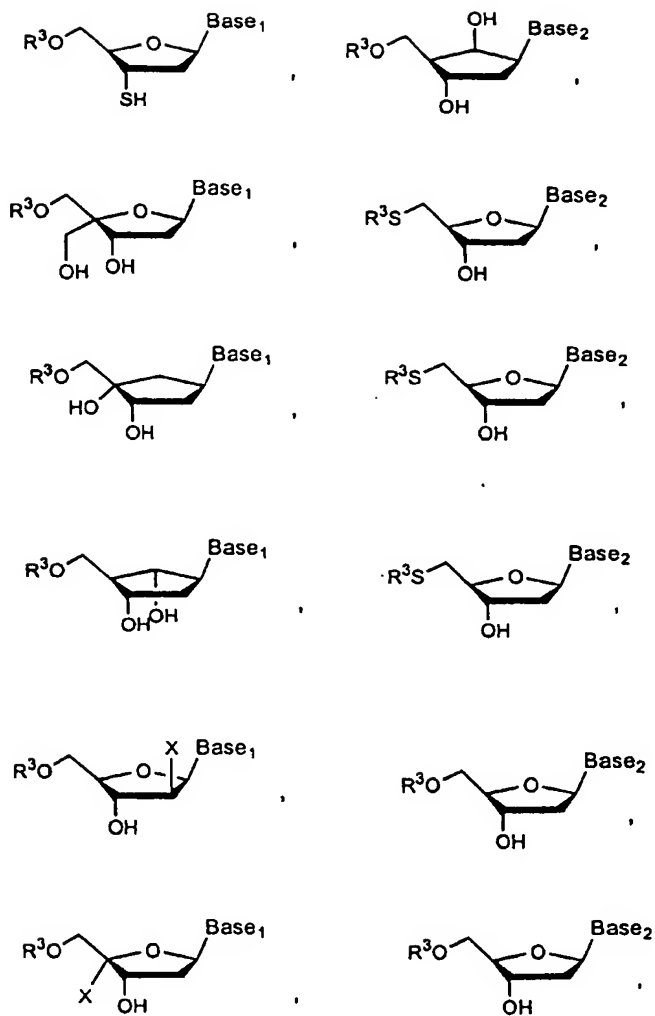


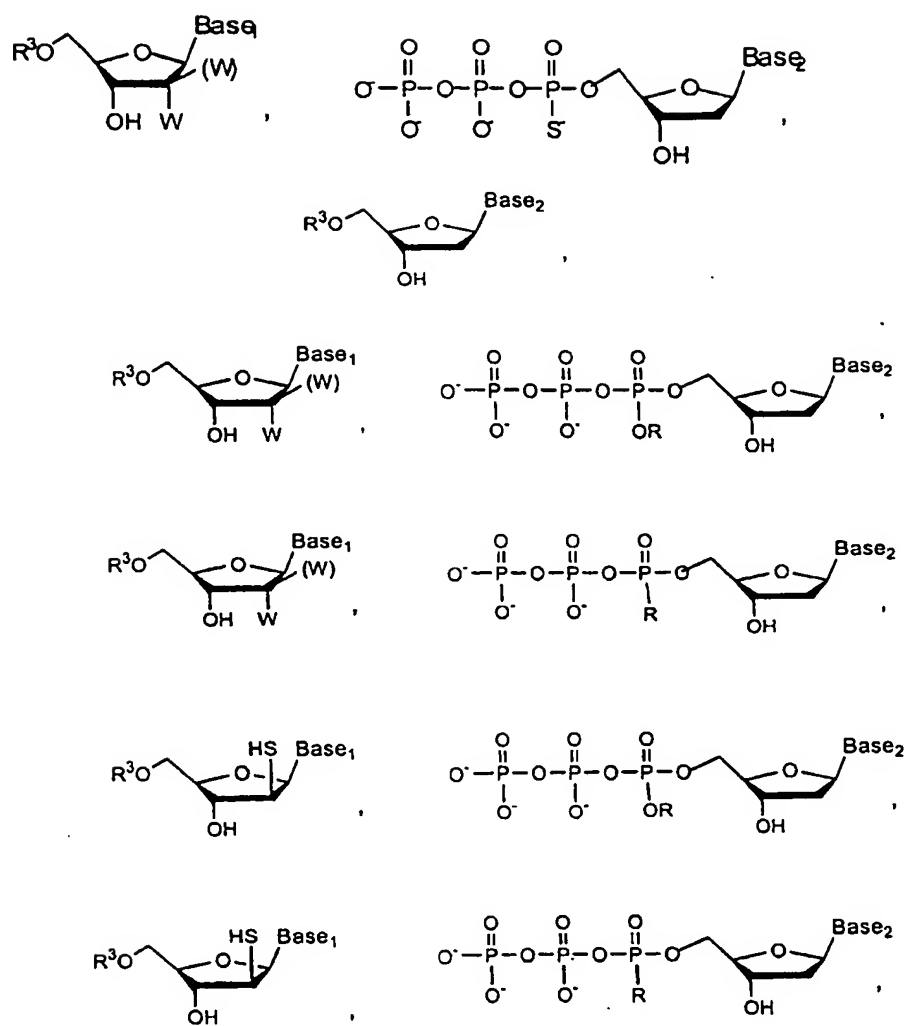


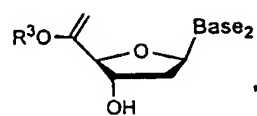
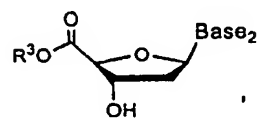
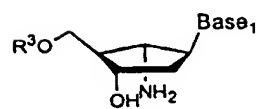
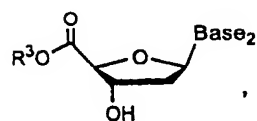
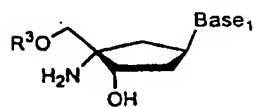
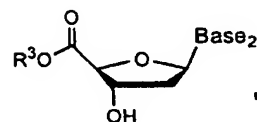
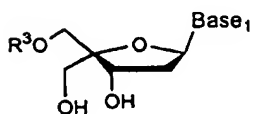
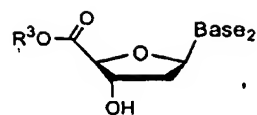
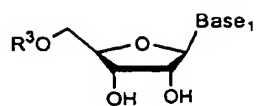


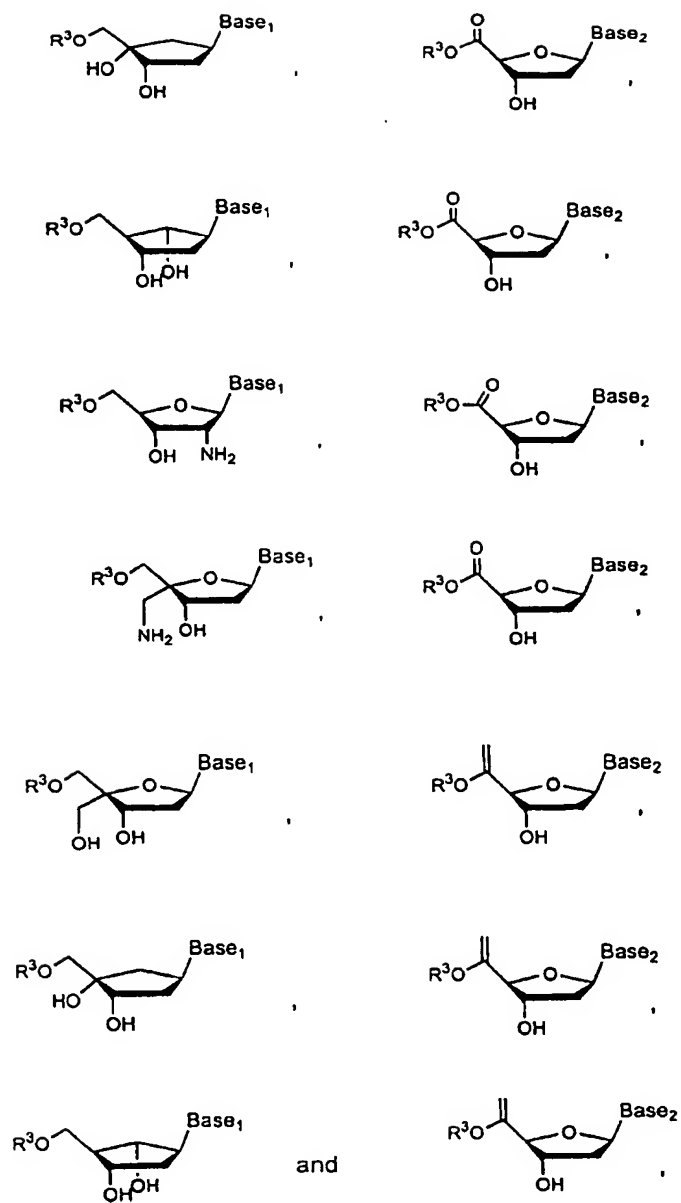












wherein:

Base₁ is selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine, guanine or inosine, and thymine or uracil;

Base₂ is selected from the group consisting of the remaining three bases which are not Base₁;

R³ is O⁻-P(=O)(O⁻)-O-P(=O)(O⁻)-O-P(=O)(O⁻)-O⁻; and,

W is an electron withdrawing group;

X is leaving group;

a second W or X shown in parentheses on the same carbon atom means that a single W or X group can be in either position on the sugar or both W or both X groups can be present at the same time; and,

R is a lower alkyl group;

A final aspect of this invention is a kit, comprising:

one or more modified nucleotides;

one or more polymerases capable of incorporating said one or more modified nucleotides in a polynucleotide to form a modified polynucleotide; and,

a reagent or reagents capable of cleaving said modified polynucleotide at each point of occurrence of said one or more modified nucleotides in said polynucleotide.

As used herein, a "chemical method" refers to a combination of one or more modified nucleotides and one or more reagents which, when the modified nucleotide(s) is incorporated into a polynucleotide by partial or complete substitution for a natural nucleotide and the modified polynucleotide is subjected to the reagent(s), results in the selective cleavage of the modified polynucleotide at the point(s) of incorporation of the modified nucleotide(s).

By "analysis" is meant either detection of variance in the nucleotide sequence among two or more related polynucleotides or, in the alternative, the determination of the full nucleotide sequence of a polynucleotide.

By "reagent" is meant a chemical or physical force which causes the cleavage of a modified polynucleotide at the point of incorporation of a modified nucleotide in place of a natural nucleotide; such a reagent may be, without limitation, a chemical or combination of chemicals, normal or coherent (laser) visible or uv light, heat, high

energy ion bombardment and irradiation. In addition, a reagent may consist of a protein such as, without limitation, a polymerase.

5 "Related" polynucleotides are polynucleotides obtained from genetically similar sources such that the nucleotide sequence of the polynucleotides would be expected to be exactly the same in the absence of a variance or there would be expected to be a region of overlap that, in the absence of a variance would be exactly the same, where the region of overlap is greater than 35 nucleotides.

A "variance" is a difference in the nucleotide sequence among related polynucleotides. The difference may be the deletion of one or more nucleotides
10 from the sequence of one polynucleotide compared to the sequence of a related polynucleotide, the addition of one or more nucleotides or the substitution of one nucleotide for another. The terms "mutation," "polymorphism" and "variance" are used interchangeably herein. As used herein, the term "variance" in the singular is to be construed to include multiple variances; i.e., two or more nucleotide additions,
15 deletions and/or substitutions in the same polynucleotide. A "point mutation" refers to a single substitution of one nucleotide for another.

A "sequence" or "nucleotide sequence" refers to the order of nucleotide residues in a nucleic acid.

As noted above, one aspect of the chemical method of the present invention
20 consists of modified nucleotides which can be incorporated into an polynucleotide in place of natural nucleotides.

A "nucleoside" refers to a base linked to a sugar. The base may be adenine (A), guanine (G) (or its substitute, inosine (I)), cytosine (C), or thymine (T) (or its substitute, uracil (U)). The sugar may be ribose (the sugar of a natural nucleotide in
25 RNA) or 2-deoxyribose (the sugar of a natural nucleotide in DNA).

A "nucleoside triphosphate" refers to a nucleoside linked to a triphosphate group
 $(O^--P(=O)(O^-)-O-P(=O)(O^-)-O-P(=O)(O^-)-O-nucleoside)$. The triphosphate group has four formal negative charges which require counter-ions, i.e., positively charged
30 ions. Any positively charged ion can be used, e.g., without limitation, Na^+ , K^+ , NH_4^+ , Mg^{2+} , Ca^{2+} , etc. Na^+ is one of the most commonly used counter-ions. It is accepted convention in the art to omit the counter-ion, which is understood to be present,

when displaying nucleoside triphosphates and that convention will be followed in this application.

As used herein, unless expressly noted otherwise, the term "nucleoside triphosphate" or reference to any specific nucleoside triphosphate; e.g., adenosine triphosphate, guanosine triphosphate or cytidine triphosphate, refers to the triphosphate made using either a ribonucleoside or a 2'-deoxyribonucleoside.

A "nucleotide" refers to a nucleoside linked to a single phosphate group or, by convention, when referring incorporation into a polynucleotide, a short-hand for the nucleoside triphosphate which is the specie which actually polymerizes in the presence of a polymerase.

A "natural nucleotide" refers to an A, C, G or U nucleotide when referring to RNA and to dA, dC, dG (the "d" referring to the fact that the sugar is a deoxyribose) and dT when referring to DNA. A natural nucleotide also refers to a nucleotide which may have a different structure from the above, but which is naturally incorporated into a polynucleotide sequence by the organism which is the source of the polynucleotide.

As used herein, inosine (I) refers to a purine ribonucleoside containing the base hypoxanthine.

As used herein, a "substitute" for a nucleoside triphosphate refers to a molecule in a different nucleoside may be naturally substituted for A, C, G or T. Thus, inosine is a natural substitute for guanosine and uridine is a natural substitute for thymidine.

As used herein, a "modified nucleotide" is characterized by two criteria. First, a modified nucleotide is a "non-natural" nucleotide. In one aspect, a "non-natural" nucleotide may be a natural nucleotide which is placed in non-natural surroundings. For example, in a polynucleotide which is naturally composed of deoxyribonucleotides, a ribonucleotide would constitute a "non-natural" nucleotide when incorporated into that polynucleotide. Conversely, in a polynucleotide which is naturally composed of ribonucleotides, a deoxyribonucleotide incorporated into that polynucleotide would constitute a non-natural nucleotide. In addition, a "non-natural" nucleotide may be a natural nucleotide which has been chemically altered, for example, without limitation, by the addition of one or more chemical substituent

groups to the nucleotide molecule, the deletion of one or more chemical substituents groups from the molecule or the replacement of one or more atoms or chemical substituents in the nucleotide for other atoms or chemical substituents. Finally, a "modified" nucleotide may be a molecule that resembles a natural nucleotide little, if at all, but is nevertheless capable of being incorporated by a polymerase into a polynucleotide in place of a natural nucleotide.

The second criterion by which a "modified" nucleotide, as the term is used herein, is characterized is that it alter the cleavage properties of the polynucleotide into which it is incorporated. For example, without limitation, incorporation of a ribonucleotide into an polynucleotide composed predominantly of deoxyribonucleotides imparts a susceptibility to alkaline cleavage which does not exist in natural deoxyribonucleotides. This second criterion of a "modified" nucleotide may be met by a single non-natural nucleotide substituted for a single natural nucleotide (e.g., the substitution of ribonucleotide for deoxyribonucleotide described above) or by a combination of two or more non-natural nucleotides which, when subjected to selected reaction conditions, do not individually alter the cleavage properties of a polynucleotide but, rather, interact with one another to impose altered cleavage properties on the polynucleotide (termed "dinucleotide cleavage").

When reference is made herein to the incorporation of a single modified nucleotide into a polynucleotide and the subsequent cleavage of the modified polynucleotide, the modified nucleotide cannot be a ribonucleotide.

"Having different cleavage characteristics" when referring to a modified nucleotide means that modified nucleotides incorporated into the same modified polynucleotide can be cleaved under reaction conditions which leaves the sites of incorporation of each of the other modified nucleotides in that modified polynucleotide intact.

As used herein, a "stabilizing modified nucleotide" refers to a modified nucleotide that imparts increased resistance to cleavage that the site of incorporation of such a modified nucleotide. Most of the modified nucleotides described herein provide increased lability to cleavage when incorporated in a modified polynucleotide. However, the differential lability of modified nucleotides over natural nucleotides in a modified polynucleotide may not always be sufficient to

allow complete cleavage at the modified nucleotide(s) while avoiding any cleavage at the natural nucleotides. Therefore there is a useful role for modified nucleotides that reduce lability (stabilizing nucleotides), in that the presence of stabilizing nucleotides in a polynucleotide which also contains nucleotides that increase lability to a particular cleavage procedure (labilizing nucleotides) can provide increased discrimination between cleaved and noncleaved nucleotides in a cleavage procedure. The preferred way to use stabilizing nucleotides in a polynucleotide is to substitute stabilizing nucleotides for all the nucleotides that are not labilizing nucleotides. In the case of mononucleotide cleavage this would entail use of three stabilizing nucleotides and one labilizing nucleotide; in the case of dinucleotide cleavage this would entail use of two stabilizing nucleotides and two (different) labilizing nucleotides. As used herein the term "stabilizing nucleotide" refers to a modified nucleotide which, when incorporated in a polynucleotide and subjected to a cleavage procedure, reduces cleavage at the stabilizing nucleotides relative to mono or dinucleotide cleavage at other (nonstabilizing) nucleotides of the polynucleotide, whether said other nucleotides are natural nucleotides or labilizing nucleotides.

A use here a "destabilizing modified nucleotide" or a "labilizing modified nucleotide" refers to a modified nucleotide which imparts greater affinity for cleavage than a natural nucleotide at sites of incorporation of the destabilizing modified nucleotide in a polynucleotide.

As used herein "determining a mass" refers to the use of a mass spectrometer to determine the mass of a molecule. Mass spectrometers generally measure the mass to charge ratio (m/z) of analyte ions, from which the mass can be inferred. When the charge state of the analyte polynucleotide is +1 or -1 the m/z ratio and the mass are numerically the same after making a correction for the proton mass (an extra proton is added to positively charged ions and a proton is abstracted from negatively charged ions) but when the charge is $>+1$ or <-1 the m/z ratio will usually be less than the actual mass. In some cases the software provided with a mass spectrometer computes the mass from m/z so the user does not need to be aware of the difference.

As used herein, a "label" or "tag" refers to a molecule that, when appended by, for example, without limitation, covalent bonding or hybridization, to another

molecule, for example, also without limitation, a polynucleotide or polynucleotide fragment, provides or enhances a means of detecting the other molecule. A fluorescence or fluorescent label or tag emits detectable light at a particular wavelength when excited at a different wavelength. A radiolabel or radioactive tag
5 emits radioactive particles detectable with an instrument such as, without limitation, a scintillation counter.

A "mass-modified" nucleotide is a nucleotide in which an atom or chemical substituents has been added, deleted or substituted but such addition, deletion or substitution does not create modified nucleotide properties, as defined herein, in the
10 nucleotide; i.e., the only effect of the addition, deletion or substitution is to modify the mass of the nucleotide.

A "polynucleotide" refers to a linear chain of nucleotides connected by a phosphodiester linkage between the 3'-hydroxyl group of one nucleoside and the 5'-hydroxyl group of a second nucleoside which in turn is linked through its 3'-hydroxyl
15 group to the 5'-hydroxyl group of a third nucleoside and so on to form a polymer comprised of nucleosides linked by a phosphodiester backbone. The polynucleotide may be, without limitation, single or double stranded DNA or RNA or any other structure known in the art.

A "modified polynucleotide" refers to a polynucleotide in which one or more
20 natural nucleotides have been partially or substantially completely replaced with modified nucleotides.

A "modified DNA fragment" refers to a DNA fragment synthesized under Sanger dideoxy termination conditions with one of the natural nucleotides other than the one which is partially substituted with its dideoxy analog being replaced with a
25 modified nucleotide as defined herein. The result is a set of Sanger fragments; i.e., a set of fragments ending in ddA, ddC, ddG or ddT, depending on the dideoxy nucleotide used with each such fragment also containing modified nucleotides (if, of course, the natural nucleotide corresponding to the modified nucleotide exists in that particular Sanger fragment).

30 As used herein, to "alter the cleavage properties" of a polynucleotide means to render the polynucleotide differentially cleavable or non-cleavable; i.e., resistant to cleavage, at the point of incorporation of the modified nucleotide relative to sites

consisting of other non-natural or natural nucleotides. It is presently preferred to "alter the cleavage properties" by rendering the polynucleotide more susceptible to cleavage at the sites of incorporation of modified nucleotides than at any other sites in the molecule.

5 As used herein, the use of the singular when referring to nucleotide substitution is to be construed as including substitution at each point of occurrence of the natural nucleotide unless expressly noted to be otherwise.

 As used herein, a "template" refers to a target polynucleotide strand, for example, without limitation, an unmodified naturally-occurring DNA strand, which a
10 polymerase uses as a means of recognizing which nucleotide it should next incorporate into a growing strand to polymerize the complement of the naturally-occurring strand. Such DNA strand may be single-stranded or it may be part of a double-stranded DNA template. In applications of the present invention requiring repeated cycles of polymerization, e.g., the polymerase chain reaction (PCR), the
15 template strand itself may become modified by incorporation of modified nucleotides, yet still serve as a template for a polymerase to synthesize additional polynucleotides.

 A "primer" is a short oligonucleotide, the sequence of which is complementary to a segment of the template which is being replicated, and which the polymerase
20 uses as the starting point for the replication process. By "complementary" is meant that the nucleotide sequence of a primer is such that the primer can form a stable hydrogen bond complex with the template; i.e., the primer can hybridize to the template by virtue of the formation of base-pairs over a length of at least ten base pairs.

25 As used herein, a "polymerase" refers, without limitation, to molecules such as DNA or RNA polymerases, reverse transcriptases, mutant DNA or RNA polymerases mutagenized by nucleotide addition, nucleotide deletion, one or more point mutations or the technique known to those skilled in the art as "DNA shuffling" (q.v., *infra*) or by joining portions of different polymerases to make chimeric
30 polymerases. Combinations of these mutagenizing techniques may also be used. A polymerase catalyzes the polymerization of nucleotides to form polynucleotides. Methods are disclosed herein and are an aspect of this invention, for producing,

identifying and using polymerases capable of efficiently incorporating modified nucleotides along with natural nucleotides into a polynucleotide. Polymerases may be used either to extend a primer once or repetitively or to amplify a polynucleotide by repetitive priming of two complementary strands using two primers. Methods of amplification include, without limitation, polymerase chain reaction (PCR), NASBR, SDA, 3SR, TSA and rolling circle replication. It is understood that, in any method for producing a polynucleotide containing given modified nucleotides, one or several polymerases or amplification methods may be used. A "heat stable polymerase" or "thermostable polymerase" refers to a polymerase which retains sufficient activity to effect primer extension reactions after being subjected to elevated temperatures, such as those necessary to denature double-stranded nucleic acids.

The selection of optimal polymerization conditions depends on the application. In general, a form of primer extension may be best suited to sequencing or variance detection methods that rely on dinucleotide cleavage and mass spectrometric analysis while either primer extension or amplification (e.g., PCR) will be suitable for sequencing methods that rely on electrophoretic analysis. Genotyping methods are best suited to production of polynucleotides by amplification. Either type of polymerization may be suitable for variance detection methods of this invention.

A "restriction enzyme" refers to an endonuclease (an enzyme that cleaves phosphodiester bonds within a polynucleotide chain) that cleaves DNA in response to a recognition site on the DNA. The recognition site (restriction site) consists of a specific sequence of nucleotides typically about 4 – 8 nucleotides long.

As used herein, "electrophoresis" refers to that technique known in the art as gel electrophoresis; e.g., slab gel electrophoresis, capillary electrophoresis and automated versions of these, such as the use of an automated DNA sequencer or a simultaneous multi-channel automated capillary DNA sequencer or electrophoresis in an etched channel such as that which can be produced in glass or other materials.

"Mass spectrometry" refers to a technique for mass analysis known in the art which includes, but is not limited to, matrix assisted laser desorption ionization (MALDI) and electrospray ionization (ESI) mass spectrometry optionally employing,

without limitation, time-of-flight, quadrupole or Fourier transform detection techniques. While the use of mass spectrometry constitutes a preferred embodiment of this invention, it will be apparent that other instrumental techniques are, or may become, available for the determination of the mass or the comparison of masses of oligonucleotides. An aspect of the present invention is the determination and comparison of masses and any such instrumental procedure capable of such determination and comparison is deemed to be within the scope and spirit of this invention.

As used herein, "FRET" refers to fluorescence resonance energy transfer, a distance dependent interaction between the electronic excited states of two dye molecules in which excitation is transferred from one dye (the donor) to another dye (the acceptor) without emission of a photon. A series of fluorogenic procedures have been developed to exploit FRET. In the present invention, the two dye molecules are generally located on opposite sides of a cleavable modified nucleotide such that cleavage will alter the proximity of the dyes to one another and thereby change the fluorescence output of the dyes on the polynucleotide.

As used herein "construct a gene sequence" refers to the process of inferring partial or complete information about the DNA sequence of a subject polynucleotide by analysis of the masses of its fragments obtained by a cleavage procedure. The process of constructing a gene sequence generally entails comparison of a set of experimentally determined cleavage masses with the known or predicted masses of all possible polynucleotides that could be obtained from the subject polynucleotide given only the constraints of the modified nucleotide(s) incorporated in the polynucleotide and the chemical reaction mechanism(s) utilized, both of which impact the range of possible constituent masses. Various analytical deductions may then be employed to extract the greatest amount of sequence information from the masses of the cleavage fragments. More sequence information can generally be inferred when the subject polynucleotide is modified and cleaved, in separate reactions, by two or more modified nucleotides or sets of modified nucleotides because the range of deductions that may be made from analysis of several sets of cleavage fragments is greater.

As used herein, a "sequence ladder" is a collection of overlapping polynucleotides, prepared from a single DNA or RNA template, which share a common end, usually the 5' end, but which differ in length because they terminate at different sites at the opposite end. The sites of termination coincide with the sites of occurrence of one of the four nucleotides, A,G,C or T/U, in the template. Thus the lengths of the polynucleotides collectively specify the intervals at which one of the four nucleotides occurs in the template DNA fragment. A set of four such sequence ladders, one specific for each of the four nucleotides, specifies the intervals at which all four nucleotides occur, and therefore provides the complete sequence of the template DNA fragment. As used herein, the term "sequence ladder" also refers to the set of four sequence ladders required to determine a complete DNA sequence. The process of obtaining the four sequence ladders to determine a complete DNA sequence is referred to as "generating a sequence ladder."

As used herein, "cell senescence selection" refers to a process by which cells that are susceptible to being killed by a particular chemical only when the cells are actively growing; e.g., without limitation, bacteria which can be killed by antibiotics only when they are growing, are used to find a polymerase which will incorporate a modified nucleotide into a polynucleotide. The procedure requires that, when a particular polymerase which has been introduced into the cell line incorporates a modified nucleotide, that incorporation produces changes in the cells which cause them to senesce, i.e., to stop growing. When cell colonies, some members of which contain the modified nucleotide-incorporating polymerase and some member of which don't, are then exposed to the chemical, only those cells which do not contain the polymerase are killed. The cells are then placed in a medium where cell growth is reinitiated; i.e., a medium without the chemical or the modified nucleotide, and those cells which grow are separated and the polymerase isolated from them.

As used herein, a "chemical oxidant" refers to a reagent capable of increasing the oxidation state of a group on a molecule. For instance, without limitation, a hydroxyl group (-OH) can be oxidized to a keto group. For example and without limitation, potassium permanganate, t-butyl hypochlorite, m-chloroperbenzoic acid, hydrogen peroxide, sodium hypochlorite, ozone, peracetic acid, potassium persulfate, and sodium hypobromite are chemical oxidants.

As used herein, a "chemical base" refers to a chemical which, in aqueous medium, has a pK greater than 7.0. Examples of chemical bases are, without limitation, alkali (sodium, potassium, lithium) and alkaline earth (calcium, magnesium, barium) hydroxides, sodium carbonate, sodium bicarbonate, trisodium phosphate, ammonium hydroxide and nitrogen-containing organic compounds such as pyridine, aniline, quinoline, morpholine, piperidine and pyrrole. These may be used as aqueous solutions which may be mild (usually due to dilution) or strong (concentrated solutions). A chemical base also refers to a strong non-aqueous organic base; examples of such bases include, without limitation, sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide and potassium t-butoxide.

As used herein, the term "acid" refers to a substance which dissociates on solution in water to produce one or more hydrogen ions. The acid may be inorganic or organic. The acid may be strong which generally infers highly concentrated, or mild which generally infers dilute. It is, of course, understood that acids inherently have different strengths; e.g., sulfuric acid is much stronger than acetic acid and this factor may also be taken into consideration when selecting the appropriate acid to use in conjunction with the methods described herein. The proper choice of acid will be apparent to those skilled in the art from the disclosures herein. Preferably, the acids used in the methods of this invention are mild. Examples of inorganic acids are, without limitation, hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, nitric acid and boric acid. Examples, without limitation, of organic acids are formic acid, acetic acid, benzoic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, naphthoic acid, uric acid and phenol.

An "electron-withdrawing group" refers to a chemical group which, by virtue of its greater electronegativity inductively draws electron density away from nearby groups and toward itself, leaving the less electronegative group with a partial positive charge. This partial positive charge, in turn, can stabilize a negative charge on an adjacent group thus facilitating any reaction which involves a negative charge, either formal or in a transition state, on the adjacent group. Examples of electron-withdrawing groups include, without limitation, cyano ($\text{C}\equiv\text{N}$), azido ($-\text{N}\equiv\text{N}$), nitro (NO_2), halo (F, Cl, Br, I), hydroxy ($-\text{OH}$), thiohydroxy ($-\text{SH}$) and ammonium ($-\text{NH}_3^+$).

An "electron withdrawing element," as used herein, refers to an atom which is

more electronegative than carbon so that, when placed in a ring, the atom draws electrons to it which, as with an electron-withdrawing group, results in nearby atoms being left with a partial positive charge. This renders the nearby atoms susceptible to nucleophilic attack. It also tends to stabilize, and therefore favor the formation of, negative charges on other atoms attached to the positively charged atom.

An "electrophile" or "electrophilic group" refers to a group which, when it reacts with a molecule, takes a pair of electrons from the molecule. Examples of some common electrophiles are, without limitation, iodine and aromatic nitrogen cations.

10 An "alkyl" group as used herein refers to a 1 to 20 carbon atom straight or branched, unsubstituted group. Preferably the group consists of a 1 to 10 carbon atom chain; most preferably, it is a 1 to 4 carbon atom chain. As used herein "1 to 20," etc. carbon atoms means 1 or 2 or 3 or 4, etc. up to 20 carbon atoms in the chain.

15 A "mercapto" group refers to an -SH group.

An "alkylating agent" refers to a molecule which is capable of introducing an alkyl group into a molecule. Examples, without limitation, of alkyl groups include methyl iodide, dimethyl sulfate, diethyl sulfate, ethyl bromide and butyl iodide.

As used herein, the terms "selective," "selectively," "substantially," "essentially," "uniformly" and the like, mean that the indicated event occurs to a particular degree. In particular, the percent incorporation of a modified nucleotide is greater than 90%, preferably greater than 95%, most preferably, greater than 99% or the selectivity for cleavage at a modified nucleotide is greater than 10X, preferably greater than 25X, most preferably greater than 100X that of other nucleotides natural or modified, or the percent cleavage at a modified nucleotide is greater than 90%, preferably greater than 95%, most preferably greater than 99%.

As use herein, "diagnosis refers to determining the nature of a disease or disorder. The methods of this invention may be used in any form of diagnosis including, without limitation, clinical diagnosis (a diagnosis made from a study of the signs and symptoms of a disease or disorder, where such sign or symptom is the presence of a variance), differential diagnosis (the determination of which of two or more diseases with similar symptoms is the one from which a patient is suffering), etc.

By "prognosis," as used herein, is meant a forecast of the of the probably course and/or outcome of a disease. In the context of this invention, the methods described herein may be used to follow the effect of a genetic variance or variances on disease progression or treatment response. It is to be noted that, using the
5 methods of this invention as a prognostic tool does not require knowledge of the biological impact of a variance. The detection of a variance in an individual afflicted with a particular disorder or the statistical association of the variance with the disorder is sufficient. The progression or response to treatment of patients with a particular variance can then be traced throughout the course of the disorder to guide
10 therapy or other disorder management decisions.

By "having a genetic component" is meant that a particular disease, disorder or response to treatment is known or suspected to be related to a variance or variances in the genetic code of an individual afflicted with the disease or disorder.

As used herein, an "individual" refers to any higher life form including reptiles
15 and mammals, in particular human beings. However, the methods of this invention are useful for the analysis of the nucleic acids of any biological organism

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE TABLES

Table 1 is a description of several procedures presently in use for the detection of variance in DNA.

20 **Table 2** shows the molecular weights of the four DNA nucleotide monophosphates and the mass difference between each pair of nucleotides.

Table 3 shows the masses of all possible 2mers, 3mers, 4mers and 5mers of the DNA nucleotides in Table 2.

25 **Table 4** shows the masses of all possible 2mers, 3mers, 4mers, 5mers, 6mers and 7mers that would be produced by cleavage at one of the four nucleotides and the mass differences between neighboring oligonucleotides.

Table 5 shows the mass changes that will occur for all possible point mutations (replacement of one nucleotide by another) and the theoretical maximum size of a polynucleotide in which a point mutation should be detectable by mass
30 spectrometry using mass spectrometers of varying resolving powers.

Table 6 shows the actual molecular weight differences observed in an oligonucleotide using the method of this invention; the difference reveals a hitherto unknown variance in the oligonucleotide.

Table 7 shows all of the masses obtained by cleavage of an exemplary 20mer in four separate reactions, each reaction being specific for one of the DNA nucleotide; i.e., at A, C, G and T.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

Figure 1 shows detection of a single base change (a T to C) in 66 base-pair fragments obtained by PCR.

Figure 2 shows the molecular weights of the main fragments expected from cleavage of a polynucleotide modified by incorporation of the modified nucleotide 7-methylguanine in place of G.

Figure 3 shows polyacrylamide gel analysis of polynucleotides with modified G before and after cleavage. Two polynucleotides differing by a single nucleotide (RFC vs. RFC mut) were analyzed.

Figure 4 is a mass spectrogram, with magnified insert, of the 66 base-pair fragment PCR amplified in the presence of RFC.

Figure 5 shows the mass spectrogram, with magnified insert, of the cleavage products from a 66 base polynucleotide with complete substitution of 7-methylG for G and subsequent cleavage at G.

Figure 6 is a mass spectrogram of two oligonucleotides differing by only one nucleotide; i.e., a G is present only in the larger oligonucleotide.

Figure 7 shows a sequencing gel of a linearized, single-stranded M13 template. The template was extended to 87 nucleotides in the presence of 5'-amino dTTP using exo-minus Klenow polymerase and then partially cleaved with acetic acid.

Figure 8 shows a purified full-length extension product of the fragment in Figure 7 before and after chemical cleavage.

Figure 9 shows results of a restriction endonuclease digestion of the fully extended primer/template complex of Figures 7 and 8 and also shows extension of the primer in the presence of 5'-aminoT to form a 7.2 Kb polynucleotide.

Figure 10 shows the resolution obtained upon high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) separation of an Hae III restricted PhiX174 DNA.

Figure 11 shows the sequence ladder obtained from a polynucleotide in which T was replaced with 5-amino T, followed by cleavage with acetic acid and
5 denaturing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis.

Figure 12 shows an example of dinucleotide cleavage in which a ribonucleotide is 5' of a bridging thiol ester.

Figure 13 shows the efficiency of complete mononucleotide cleavage or complete dinucleotide cleavage for variance detection in 50, 100, 150, 200 and 250
10 nucleotide polynucleotides.

Figures 14 through 18 show various aspects of long range DNA sequencing using chemically cleavable modified nucleotides.

Figure 14 shows a hypothetical shotgun sequencing analysis of a 10 kb clone and illustrates the principle and advantages of long range DNA sequencing by
15 chemical cleavage of polymerase incorporated mononucleotides.

Figure 15 illustrates the sequencing of a 2.7 kb plasmid by primer extension in the presence of 4 dNTPs and one 5'-amino-dNTP followed by restriction endonuclease digestion, end labeling, chemical cleavage and electrophoretic resolution of the resulting sequence ladder.

Figure 16 shows the separation of partially 5'-aminoT substituted HincII
20 restriction endonuclease fragments by HPLC.

Figure 17 is a comparison of sequence ladders produced by dideoxy termination and by acid cleavage of partially 5'-amino nucleotide substituted primer extension products. The chemical cleavage procedure results in a homogeneous
25 distribution of labeled products over greater than 4000 nucleotides.

Figure 18 is a comparison of sequence ladders produced by dideoxy termination and by acid cleavage of partially 5'-amino-nucleotide substituted primer extension products as visualized on an autoradiogram.

Figure 19 is an illustration of the DNA fragments produced by restriction
30 endonuclease cleavage of a 700 nt DNA fragment compared to fragments produced by dinucleotide chemical cleavage.

Figure 20 shows a dinucleotide cleavage employing a ribonucleotide and a 5'-amino-nucleotide in a 5' to 3' orientation.

Figure 21 compares the cleavage products obtained by base cleavage of a ribonucleotide and 5'-aminonucleotide substituted DNA fragment with the cleavage products obtained by acid cleavage.

Figure 22 shows the results of cleavage of a DNA fragment substituted with ribo-G and 5' amino-TTP. The autoradiogram shows complete cleavage at GT and no background cleavage at G or T.

Figure 23 shows the results of cleavage of a DNA fragment incorporating ribo-A and 5'-amino-TTP. Again, the autoradiogram shows complete and completely site specific cleavage.

Figure 24 is a mass spectrogram of the cleavage products of the DNA fragment of Fig. 23. All fragments except the 2 nt fragment are observed.

Figure 25 depicts the results of dinucleotide cleavage of a 257 nt primer extension product into which ribo-A and 5' amino-TTP have been incorporated.

Figure 26 is a MALDI-TOF mass spectrogram of the AT dinucleotide cleavage products of the primer extension product of Fig. 25.

Figures 27 – 33 demonstrate the application of mononucleotide cleavage to genotyping by mass spectrometry, capillary electrophoresis and FRET.

Figure 27 is a schematic illustration of genotyping (variance detection at a known variant site).

Figure 28 shows the results of genotyping a dA vs dG variance in the transferrin receptor by PCR amplification in the presence of modified ddA followed by chemical cleavage at the modified nucleotide.

Figure 29 exemplified genotyping using modified nucleotide incorporation/chemical cleavage followed by mass spectrometric analysis of the resulting fragments.

Figure 30 demonstrates genotyping of a modified nucleotide containing transferrin receptor by chemical cleavage followed by MALDI-TOF.

Figure 31 demonstrates distinguished features of MALDI-TOF genotyping.

Figure 32 demonstrates genotyping of a transferrin receptor polymorphism by chemical cleavage of a modified nucleotide transferrin receptor followed by slab gel or capillary electrophoresis.

Figure 33 illustrates schematically FRET detection of variant polynucleotides after chemical cleavage of a modified polynucleotide.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

In one aspect, this invention relates to a method for detecting a variance in the nucleotide sequence among related polynucleotides by replacing a natural nucleotide in a polynucleotide at substantially each point of incorporation of the natural nucleotide with a modified nucleotide, cleaving the modified polynucleotide at substantially each point of incorporation of the modified nucleotide, determining the mass of the fragments obtained and then comparing the masses with those expected from a related polynucleotide of known sequence or, if the sequence of a related polynucleotide is unknown, by repeating the above steps with a second related polynucleotide and then comparing the masses of the fragments obtained from the two related polynucleotides. Of course, it is understood that the methods of this invention are not limited to any particular number of related polynucleotides; as many as are needed or desired may be used.

In another aspect, this invention relates to a method for detecting a variance in the nucleotide sequence among related polynucleotides by replacing two natural nucleotides in a polynucleotide with two modified nucleotides, the modified nucleotides being selected so that, under the chosen reaction condition, they individually not impart selective cleavage properties on the modified polynucleotide. Rather, when the two modified nucleotides are contiguous; i.e., the natural nucleotides being replaced were contiguous in the unmodified polynucleotide, they act in concert to impart selective cleavage properties on the modified polynucleotide. In addition to mere proximity, it may also be necessary, depending on the modified nucleotides and reaction conditions selected, that the modified nucleotides are in the proper spatial relationship. For example, without limitation, 5'A-3'G might be susceptible to cleavage while 5'G-3'A might not. As above, once substitution of the modified nucleotides for the natural nucleotides has been accomplished, the modified nucleotide pair is cleaved, the masses of the fragments are determined and

the masses are compared, either to the masses expected from a related polynucleotide of known sequence or, if the sequence of at least one of the related polynucleotides is not known, to the masses obtained when the procedure is repeated with other related polynucleotides.

5 In another aspect, this invention relates to methods for detecting mono- or dinucleotide cleavage products by electrophoresis or fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET). In FRET-based assays, the presence or absence of fluorescence over a specified wavelength range is monitored. Both these methods are particularly well-suited for detecting variance at a single site in a polynucleotide
10 where the variance has been previously identified. Knowledge of the particular variance permits the design of electrophoretic or FRET reagents and procedures specifically suited to the rapid, low cost, automatable determination of the status of the variant nucleotide(s). Examples of electrophoretic and FRET detection of cleavage products are described below and in the Figures.

15 The use of the variance detection methods of this invention for the development of and use as diagnostic or prognostic tools for the detection of predisposition to certain diseases and disorders is another aspect of this invention.

In the development of diagnostic tools, the methods of this invention would be employed to compare the DNA of a test subject which is displaying symptoms of a
20 particular disease or disorder known or suspected to be genetically-related or is displaying a desirable characteristic such as a health enhancing or economically valuable trait such as growth rate, pest resistance, crop yield, etc. with the DNA of healthy members of the same population and/or members of the population which exhibit the same disease, disorder or trait. The test subject may be, without
25 limitation, a human, any other mammal such as rat, mouse, dog, cat, horse, cow, pig, sheep, goat, etc., cold-blooded species such as fish or agriculturally important crops such as wheat, corn, cotton and soy beans. The detection of a statistically significant variance between the healthy members of the population and members of the population with the disease or disorder would serve as substantial evidence of
30 the utility of the test for identifying subjects having or at risk of having the disease or disorder. This could lead to very useful diagnostic tests.

Using the methods of this invention as a diagnostic or prognostic tool, it is entirely unnecessary to know anything about the variance being sought; i.e., its exact location, whether it is an addition, deletion or substitution or what nucleotide(s) have been added, deleted or substituted. The mere detection of the presence of the variance accomplishes the desired task, to diagnose or predict the incidence of a disease or disorder in a test subject. In most instances, however, it would be preferable to be able to create a specific genotyping test for a particular variance with diagnostic or prognostic utility.

Particularly useful aspects of the genotyping methods described herein are ease of assay design, low cost of reagents and suitability of the cleavage products for detection by a variety of methods including, without limitation, electrophoresis, mass spectrometry and fluorescent detection.

In another aspect of this invention, the complete sequence of a polynucleotide may be determined by repeating the above method involving the replacement of one natural nucleotide at each point of occurrence of the natural nucleotide with one modified nucleotide followed by cleavage and mass detection. In this embodiment, the procedure is carried out four times with each of the natural nucleotides; i.e., in the case of DNA, for example but without limitation, each of dA, dC, dG and T is replaced with a modified nucleotide in four separate experiments. The masses obtained from the four cleavage reactions can then be used to determine the complete sequence of the polynucleotide. This method is applicable to polynucleotides prepared by primer extension or amplification by, for example, PCR; in the latter case both strands undergo modified nucleotide replacement.

An additional experiment may be necessary should the preceding procedure leave any nucleotide positions in the sequence ambiguous (see, e.g., the Examples section, *infra*). This additional experiment may be repeating the above procedure using the complementary strand of the DNA being studied if the method involves primer extension. The additional experiment may also be the use of the above described method for replacing two natural nucleotides with two modified nucleotides, cleaving where the modified nucleotides are contiguous and then determining masses of the fragments obtained. Knowledge of the position of contiguous nucleotides in the target polynucleotide may resolve the ambiguity.

Another experiment which might be employed to resolve any ambiguity which might occur in the main experiment is one-pass Sanger sequencing followed by gel electrophoresis which is fast and easy but which alone would not afford highly accurate sequencing. Thus, in conjunction with the methods of this invention, an
5 alternative sequencing method known in the art might, in the case of a specific ambiguity, provide the information necessary to resolve the ambiguity.
Combinations of these procedures might also be used. The value of using different procedures lies in the generally recognized observation that each sequencing
10 method has certain associated artifacts that compromise its performance but the artifacts are different for different procedures. Thus, when the goal is highly accurate sequencing, using two or more sequencing techniques which would tend to cancel out each other's artifacts should have great utility. Other additional experiments which might resolve an ambiguity will, based on the disclosures herein and the specific sequence ambiguity at issue, be apparent to those skilled in the art
15 and are, therefore, deemed to be within the scope of this invention.

In yet another aspect of this invention, the modified nucleotide cleavage reactions described herein may result in the formation of a covalent bond between one of the cleavage fragments and another molecule. This molecule may serve a number or purposes. It may contain a directly detectable label or a moiety that
20 enhances detection of the cleavage products during mass spectrometric, electrophoretic or fluorogenic analysis. For example, without limitation, the moiety may be a dye, a radioisotope, an ion trap to enhance ionization efficiency, an excitable group which can to desorbion efficiency or simply a large molecule which globally alter desorbion and/or ionization characteristics. The labeling reaction may
25 be partial or complete. An example of the use of homogeneously labeled DNA fragments of controllable size is in DNA hybridization such as hybridization probes for DNA on high density arrays like DNA chips.

An additional aspect of this invention is the replacement of a natural
30 nucleotide with a modified nucleotide at only a percentage of the point of occurrence of that natural nucleotide in a polynucleotide. This percentage may be from about 0.01% to about 95%, preferably it is from about 0.01% to about 50%, more preferably from about 0.01% to about 10% and most preferably from about 0.01% to

about 1%. The percent replacement is selected to be complementary to the efficiency of the cleavage reaction selected. That is, if a cleavage reaction of low efficiency is selected, then a higher percentage of substitution is permissible; if a cleavage reaction of high efficiency is selected, then a low percentage of replacement is preferred. The result desired is that, on the average, each individual strand of polynucleotide is cleaved once so that a sequencing ladder, such as that described for the Maxam-Gilbert and Sanger procedures, can be developed. Since the cleavage reactions described herein are of relatively high efficiency, low percentages of replacement are preferred to achieve the desired single cleavage per polynucleotide strand. Low percentages of replacement may also be more readily achieved with available polymerases. However, based on the disclosures herein, other cleavage reactions of varying degrees of efficiency will be apparent to those skilled in the art and, as such, are within the scope of this invention. It is, in fact, an aspect of this invention that, using cleavage reactions of sufficiently low efficiency, which, in terms of percentage cleavage at points of incorporation of a modified nucleotide in a modified polynucleotide may be from about 0.01% to 50%, preferably from about 0.01% to 10% and, most preferably, from about 0.01% to about 1%, a polynucleotide in which a natural nucleotide has been replaced with a modified nucleotide at substantially each point of occurrence may still be used to generate the sequencing ladder. At the most preferred level of efficiency, about 0.01% to about 1%, each strand of a fully modified polynucleotide should, on the average, only be cleaved once.

In another aspect, this invention relates to methods for producing and identifying polymerases with novel properties with respect to incorporation and cleavage of modified nucleotides.

A. Nucleotide Modification and Cleavage

(1) Base modification and cleavage

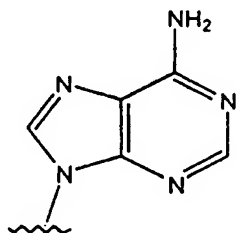
A modified nucleotide may contain a modified base, a modified sugar, a modified phosphate ester linkage or a combination of these.

Base-modification is the chemical modification of the adenine, cytosine, guanine or thymine (or, in the case of RNA, uracil) moiety of a nucleotide such that the resulting chemical structure renders the modified nucleotide more susceptible to

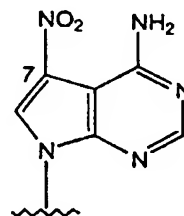
attack by a reagent than a nucleotide containing the unmodified base. The following are examples, without limitation of base modification. Other such modification of bases will become readily apparent to those skilled in the art in light of the disclosures herein and therefore are to be considered to be within the scope of this invention (e.g., the use of difluorotoluene; Liu, D., et al., Chem. Biol., 4:919-929, 1997; Moran, S., et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 94:10506-10511, 1997).

Some examples, without limitation, of such modified bases are described below.

1. Adenine (1) can be replaced with 7-deaza-7-nitroadenine (2). The 7-deaza-7-nitroadenine is readily incorporated into polynucleotides by enzyme-catalyzed polymerization. The 7-nitro group activates C-8 to attack by chemical base such as, without limitation, aqueous sodium hydroxide or aqueous piperidine, which eventually results in specific strand scission. Verdine, et al., JACS, 1996, 118:6116-6120;



1

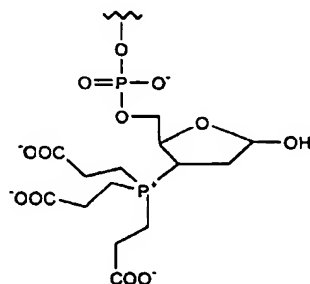


2

We have found that cleavage with piperidine is not always complete whereas complete cleavage is the desired result. However, when the cleavage reaction is carried out in the presence of a phosphine derivative, for example, without limitation, tris(2-carboxyethyl) phosphine (TCEP) and a base, complete cleavage is obtained. An example of such a cleavage reaction is as follows: DNA modified by incorporation of 7-nitro-7-deaza-2'-deoxyadenosine is treated with 0.2 M TCEP/1 M piperidine/ 0.5 M Tris base at 95° C for one hour. Denaturing polyacrylamide gel (20%) analysis showed complete cleavage. Other bases such as, without limitation, NH₄OH can be used in place of the piperidine and Tris base. This procedure, i.e.,

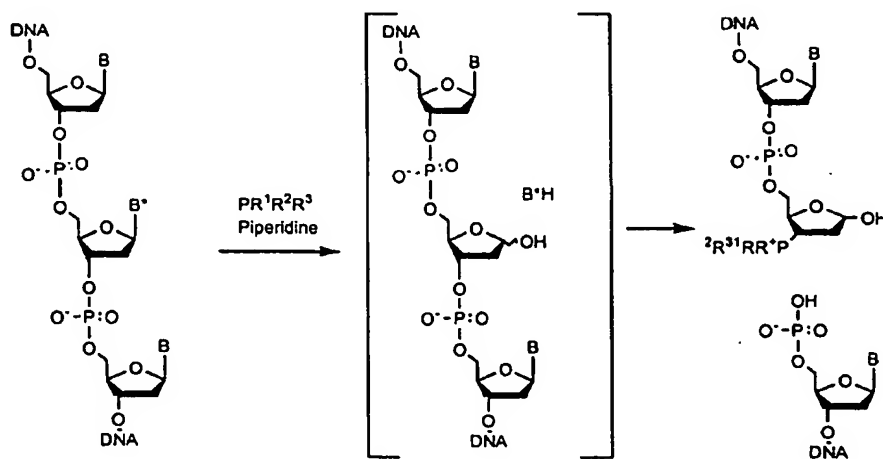
the use of a phosphine in conjunction with a base, should be applicable to any cleavage reaction in which the target polynucleotide has been substituted with a modified nucleotide which is labile to piperidine.

- 5 The product of cleavage with TCEP and base is unique. Mass spectrometry analysis was consistent with a structure having a phosphate-ribose-TCEP adduct at 3' ends and a phosphate moiety at 5' ends, i.e. structure 3.



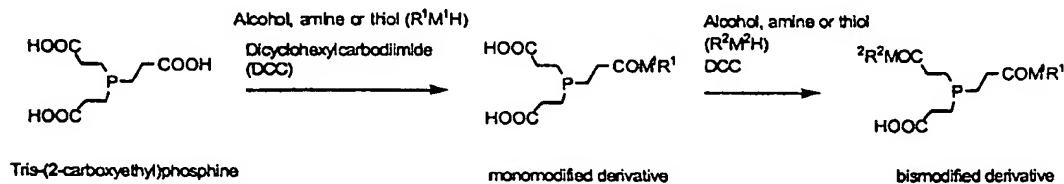
3

- 10 How TCEP participates in the fragmentation of a modified polynucleotide is not presently known; however, without being held to any particular theory, we believe that the mechanism may be the following:



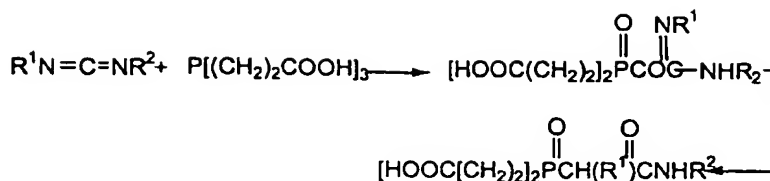
The incorporation of the TCEP (or other phosphine) into the cleavage product should be a very useful method for labeling fragmented polynucleotides at the same time cleavage is being performed. By using an appropriately functionalized phosphine that remains capable of forming an adduct at the 3' end ribose as described above, such functionalities, without limitation, as mass tags, fluorescence tags, radioactive tags and ion-trap tags could be incorporated into a fragmented polynucleotide. Phosphines that contain one or more tags and that are capable of covalently bonding to a cleavage fragment constitute another aspect of this invention. Likewise, the use of such tagged phosphines as a method for labeling polynucleotide fragments is another aspect of this invention.

While other phosphines, which may become apparent to those skilled in the art based on the disclosures herein, may be used to prepare labeled phosphines for incorporation onto nucleotide fragments, TCEP is a particularly good candidate for labeling. For instance, the carboxy (-C(O)OH) groups may be modified directly by numerous techniques, for example, without limitation, reaction with an amine, alcohol or mercaptan in the presence of a carbodiimide to form an amide, ester or mercaptoester as shown in the following reaction scheme:



When a carboxy group is reacted with a carbodiimide in the absence of a nucleophile (the amine in this case) the adduct between the carbodiimide and the carboxy group may rearrange to form a stable N-acylurea. If the carbodiimide contains a fluorophore, the resultant phosphine will then carry that fluorophore as shown in the following reaction scheme:

wherein, M^1 and M^2 are independently O, NH, NR, S.
 R^1 and R^2 are mass tags, fluorescent tags, radioactive tags, ion trap tags or combinations thereof.



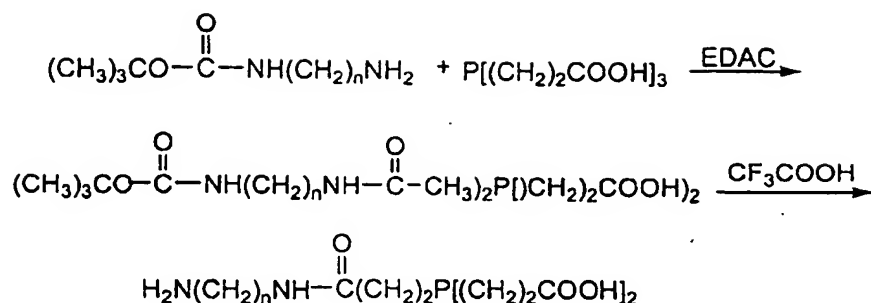
Amino group-containing fluorophores such as fluoresceinyl glycine amide (5-aminofluorescein, 1-pyrenemethylamine and 5-aminoeosin may be used to prepare the labeled phosphines of this method. Amino derivatives of lucifer yellow and Cascade Blue may also be used as can amino derivatives of biotin. In addition, hydrazine derivatives such as rhodamine and Texas Red hydrazine may be useful in this method.

10 Fluorescent diazoalkanes, such as, without limitation, 1-pyrenyldiazomethane, may also be used to form esters with TCEP.

Fluorescent alkyl halides may also react with the anion of the carboxy group, i.e., the C(O)O⁻ group, to form esters. Among the halides which might be used are, without limitation, panacyl bromide, 3-bromoacetyl-7-diethylaminocoumarin, 6-bromoacetyl-2-diethylaminonaphthalene, 5-bromomethylfluorescein, BODIPY[®] 493/503 methyl bromide, monobromobimanes and iodoacetamides such as coumarin iodoacetamide may serve as effective label-carrying moieties which will covalently bond with TCEP.

20 Naphthalimide sulfonate ester reacts rapidly with the anions of carboxylic acids in acetonitrile to give adducts which are detectable by absorption at 259 nm down to 100 femtomoles and by fluorescence at 394 nm down to four femtomoles.

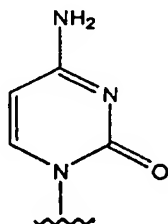
There are, furthermore, countless amine-reactive fluorescent probes available and it is possible to covert TCEP into an primary amine by the following reaction:



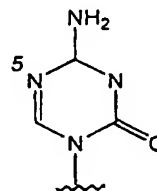
The aminophosphine can then be used to form label-containing aminophosphines for use in the cleavage/labeling method described herein.

- 5 The above dyes and procedures for covalently bonding them to TCEP are but a few examples of the possible adducts which can be formed. A valuable source of additional such reagents and procedures is the catalog of Molecular Probes, Inc. Based on the disclosures herein and resources such as the Molecular Probes catalog, many others way to modify phosphines, in particular TCEP, will be apparent to those skilled in the art. Those other ways to modify phosphines for use in the incorporation of labels into polynucleotide fragments during chemical cleavage of the polynucleotide are within the scope of this invention.

2. Cytosine (4) can be replaced with 5-azacytosine (5). 5-Azacytosine is likewise efficiently incorporated into polynucleotides by enzyme catalyzed polymerization. 5-Azacytosine is susceptible to cleavage by chemical base, particularly aqueous base, such as aqueous piperidine or aqueous sodium hydroxide. Verdine, et al., Biochemistry, 1992, 31:11265-11273;

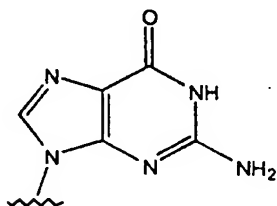
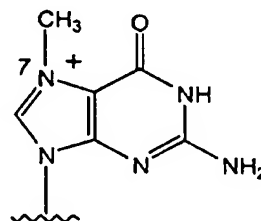


4

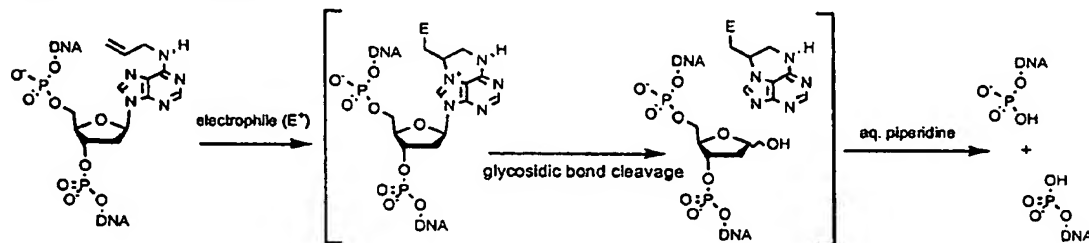


5

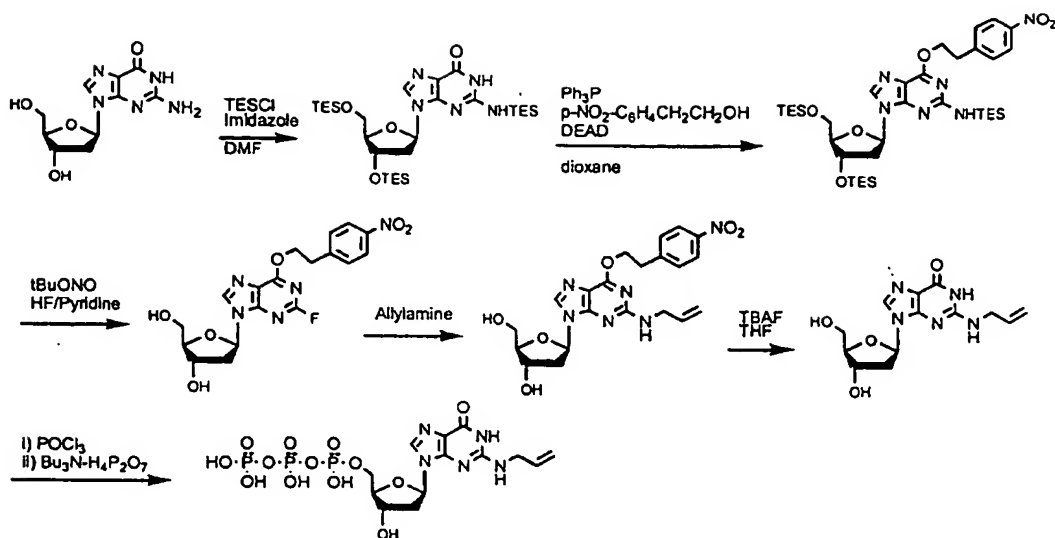
- 3(a). Guanine (**6**) can be replaced with 7-methylguanine (**7**) and can likewise be readily incorporated into polynucleotides by polymerases (Verdine, et al., *JACS*, **1991**, 113:5104-5106) and is susceptible to attack by chemical base, such as, without limitation, aqueous piperidine (Siebenlist, et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, **1980**, 77:122); or,

**6****7**

- 3(b). Gupta and Kool, Chem. Commun. 1997, pp 1425 – 26 have demonstrated that N⁸-allyl-dideoxyadenine, when incorporated into a DNA strand, will cleave on treatment with a mild electrophile, E⁺, in their case iodine. The proposed mechanism is shown in (Scheme 1):

**Scheme 1**

A similar procedure might be employed with guanine using the previously unreported 2-allylaminoguanine derivative **8**, which can be prepared by the procedure shown in (Scheme 2):



8

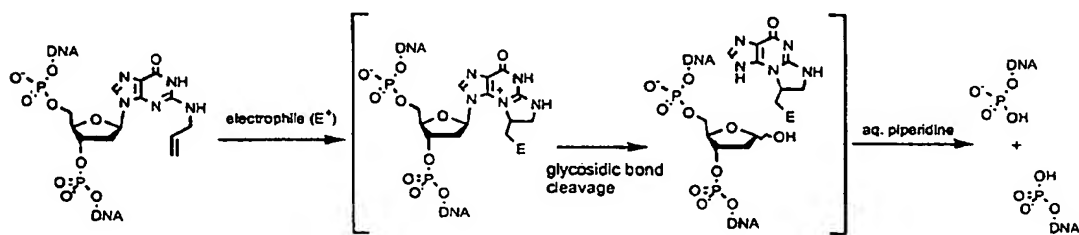
5

Scheme 2

Other ways to synthesize compound 8 will become apparent based on the disclosures herein; such syntheses are considered within the spirit and scope of this invention.

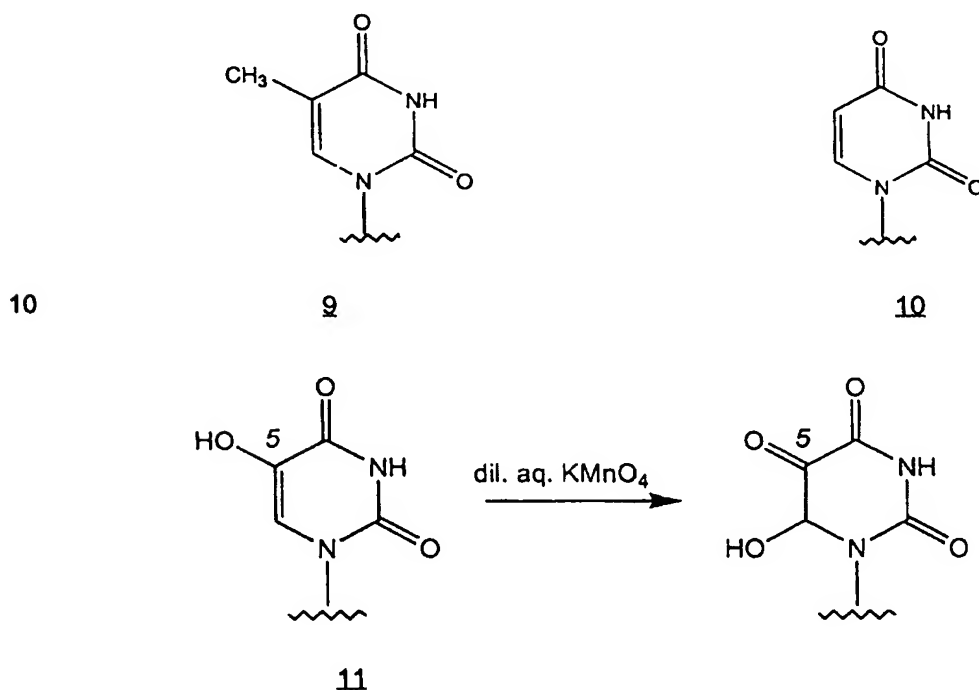
The incorporation of the resulting N²-allylguanosine triphosphate into a polynucleotide strand should be susceptible to cleavage in a similar manner to the N⁶-allyladenine nucleotide of Gupta, i.e. by the mechanism shown in (Scheme 3):

10



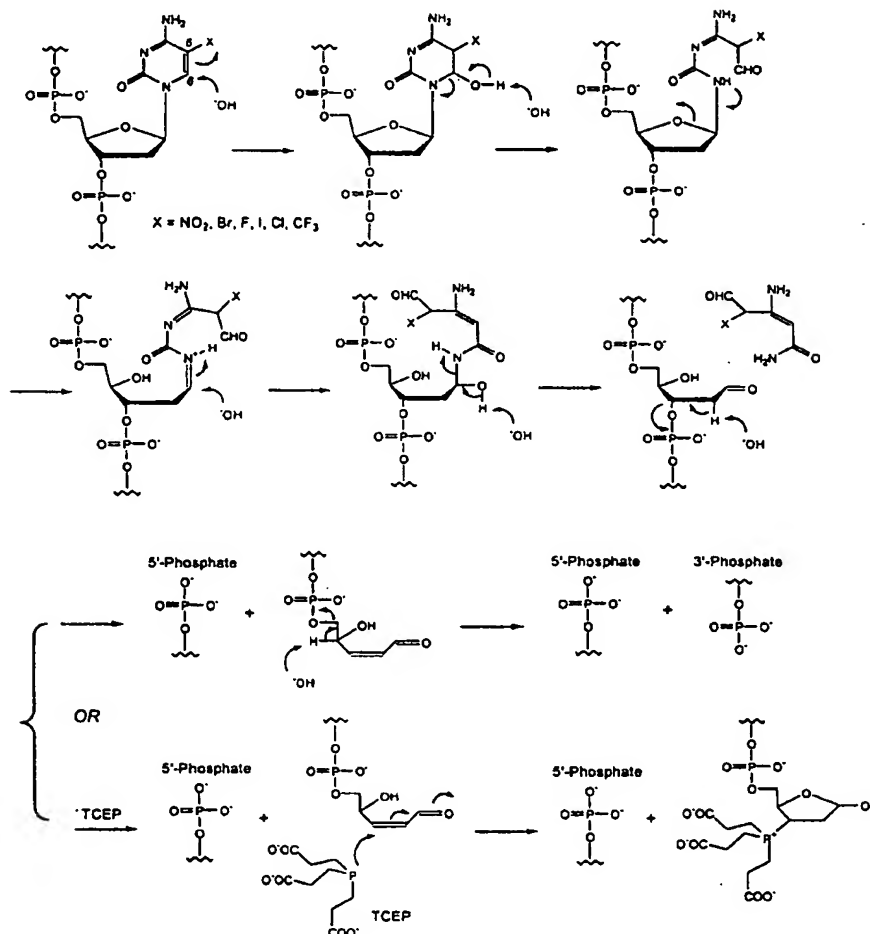
Scheme 3

4. Either thymine (9) or uracil (10) may be replaced with 5-hydroxyuracil (11) (Verdine, JACS, 1991, 113:5104). As with the above modified bases, the nucleotide prepared from 5-hydroxyuracil can also be incorporated into a polynucleotide by enzyme-catalyzed polymerization. Verdine, et al., JACS, 1993, 115:374-375. Specific cleavage is accomplished by first treating the 5-hydroxyuracil with an oxidizing agent, for instance, aqueous permanganate, and then with a chemical base such as, without limitation, aqueous piperidine (Verdine, ibid).



5. Pyrimidines substituted at the 5-position with an electron withdrawing group such as, without limitation, nitro, halo or cyano, should be susceptible to nucleophilic attack at the 6-position followed by base-catalyzed ring opening and subsequent degradation of the phosphate ester linkage. An example, which is not to be construed as limiting the scope of this technique in any manner, is shown in (Scheme 4) using 5-substituted cytidine. If the cleavage is carried out in the presence of tris(carboxyethyl)phosphine (TCEP), the adduct 10 may be obtained

and, if the TCEP is functionalized with an appropriate moiety (q.v. infra), labeled polynucleotide fragments may be obtained.



10

Scheme 4

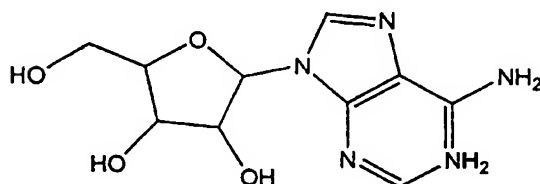
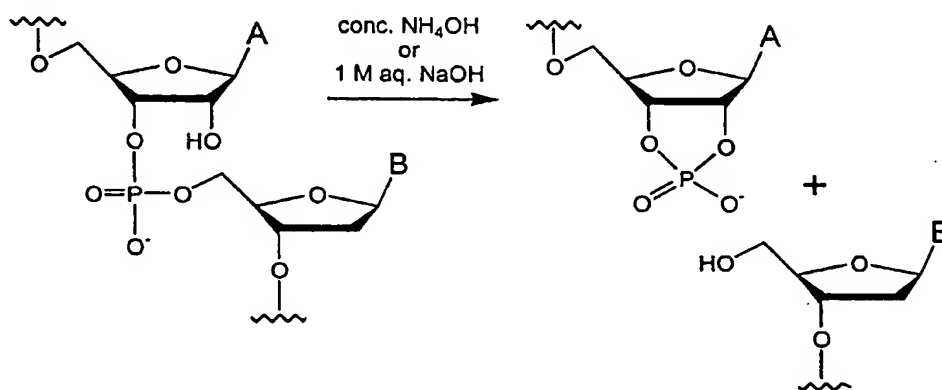
(2) Sugar modification and cleavage

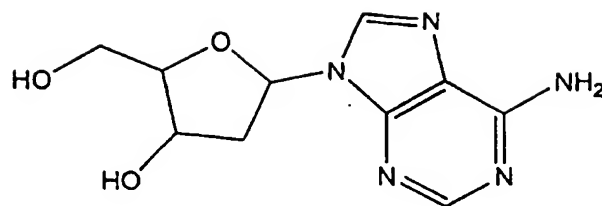
Modification of the sugar portion of a nucleotide may also afford a modified polynucleotide which is susceptible to selective cleavage at the site(s) of

10 Incorporation of such modification. In general, the sugar is modified to include one

or more functional groups which renders the 3' and/or the 5' phosphate ester linkage more labile; i.e. susceptible to cleavage, than the 3' and/or 5' phosphate ester linkage of a natural nucleotide. The following are examples, without limitation, of such sugar modifications. Other sugar modifications will become readily apparent to those skilled in the art in light of the disclosures herein and are therefore deemed to be within the scope of this invention. In the formulas which follow, B and B' refer to any base and they may be the same or different.

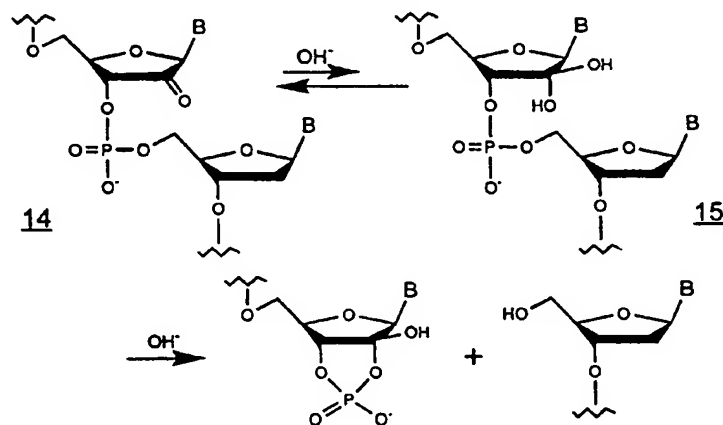
1. In a deoxyribose-based polynucleotide, replacement of one or more of the deoxyribonucleosides with a ribose analog; e.g., without limitation, substituting adenosine (12) for deoxyadenosine (13) renders the resultant modified polynucleotide susceptible to selective cleavage by chemical bases such as, without limitation, aqueous sodium hydroxide or concentrated ammonium hydroxide, at each point of occurrence of adenosine in the modified polynucleotide (Scheme 5);





13

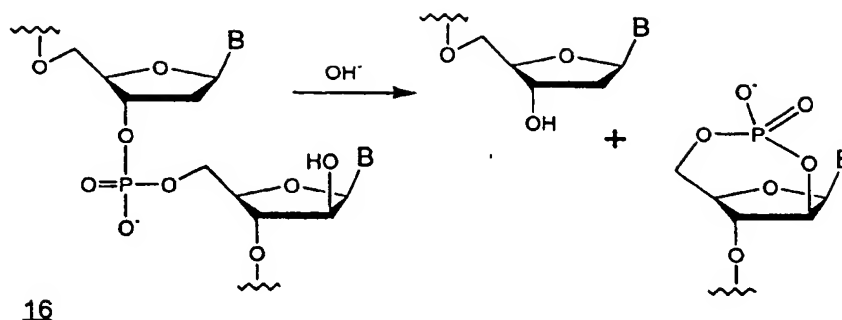
2. A 2'-ketosugar (14, synthesis: JACS, 1967, 89:2697) may be substituted for the sugar of a deoxynucleotide; upon treatment with chemical base such as, without limitation, aqueous hydroxide, the keto group equilibrates with its ketal form (15) which then attacks the phosphate ester linkage effecting cleavage (Scheme 6);



10

Scheme 6

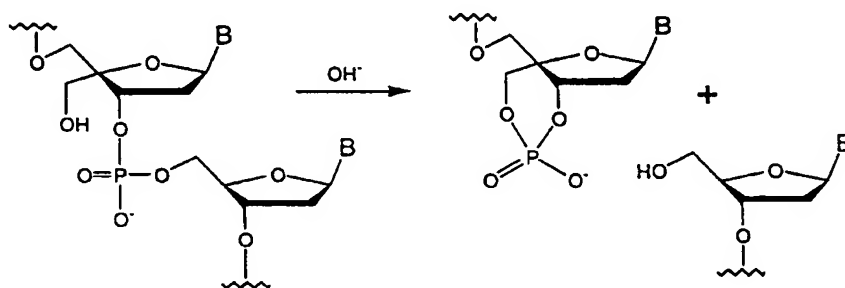
3. A deoxyribose nucleotide can be replaced with its arabinose analog; i.e., a sugar containing a 2"-hydroxy group (16). Again, treatment with mild (dilute aqueous) chemical base effects the intermolecular displacement of a phosphate ester linkage resulting in cleavage of the polynucleotide (Scheme 7):



16

Scheme 7

4. A deoxyribose nucleotide can be replaced by its 4'-hydroxymethyl analog (17, synthesis: *Helv. Chim. Acta*, 1966, 79:1980) which, on treatment with mild chemical base such as, without limitation, dilute aqueous hydroxide, likewise displaces a phosphate ester linkage causing cleavage of the polynucleotide as shown in (Scheme 8):



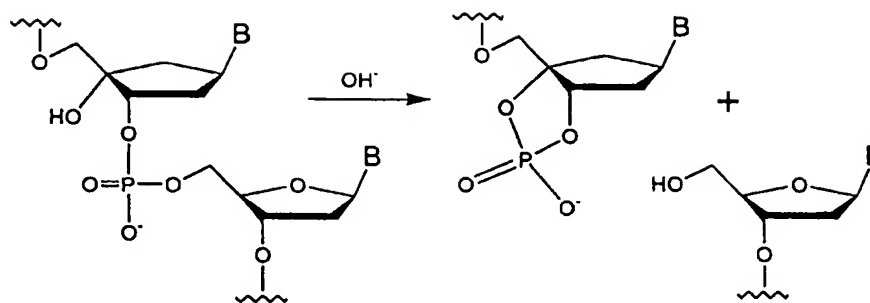
10

17

Scheme 8

5. A deoxyribose nucleotide can be replaced by its 4'-hydroxy carbocyclic analog; i.e., a 4-hydroxymethylcyclopentane derivative (18) which, on treatment with aqueous base, results in the cleavage of the polynucleotide at a phosphate ester linkage as shown in (Scheme 9):

15



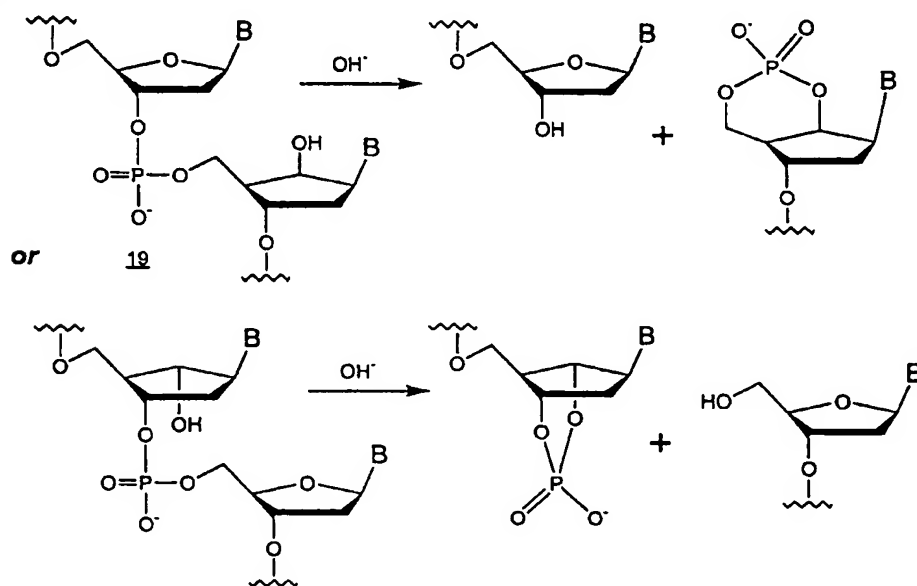
18

Scheme 9

5

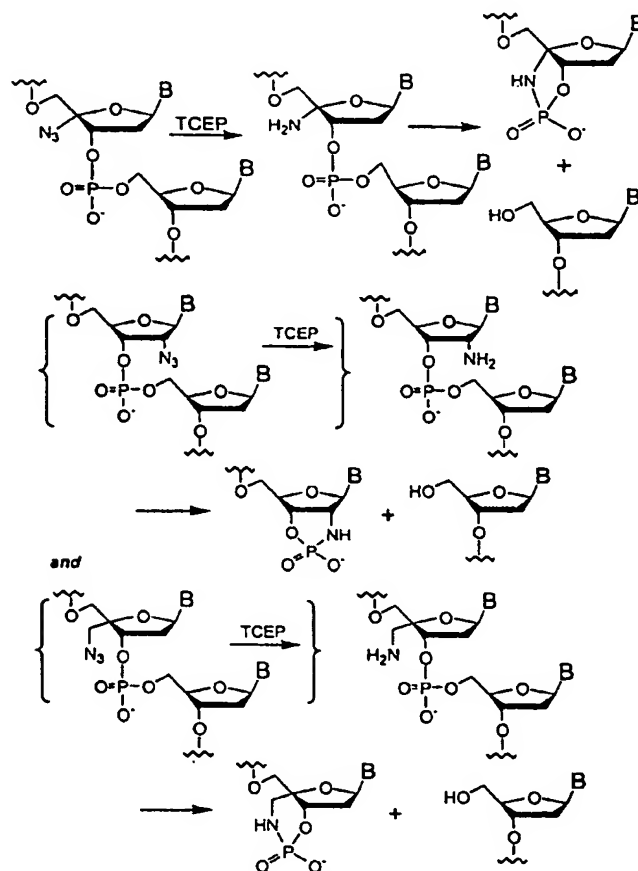
6. A sugar ring may be replaced with its carbocyclic analog which is further substituted with a hydroxyl group (19). Depending on the stereochemical positioning of the hydroxyl group on the ring, either a 3' or a 5' phosphate ester linkage can be selectively cleaved on treatment with mild chemical base (Scheme

10 10):



Scheme 10

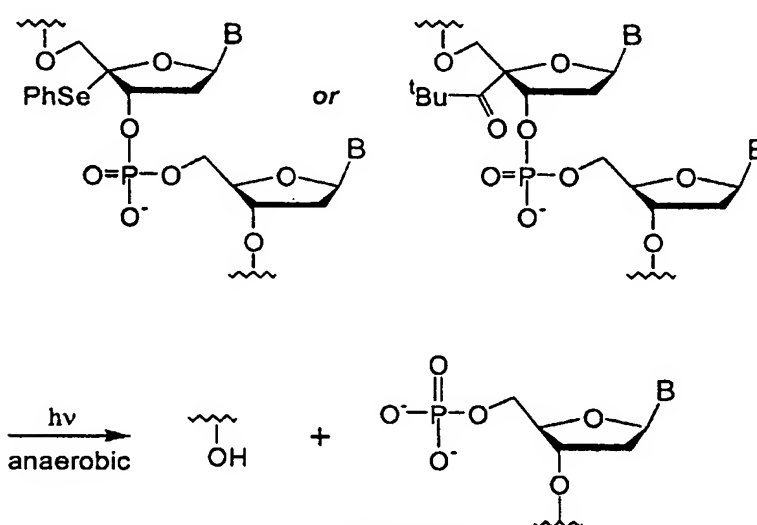
7. In each of examples 1, 3, 4, 5 and 6, above, the hydroxy group which attacks the phosphate ester cleavage may be replaced with an amino group ($-NH_2$). The amino group may be generated *in situ* from the corresponding azidosugar by treatment with tris(2-carboxyethyl)-phosphine (TCEP) after the azide-modified polynucleotide has been formed (Scheme 11). The amino group, once formed, spontaneously attacks the phosphate ester linkage resulting in cleavage.



Scheme 11

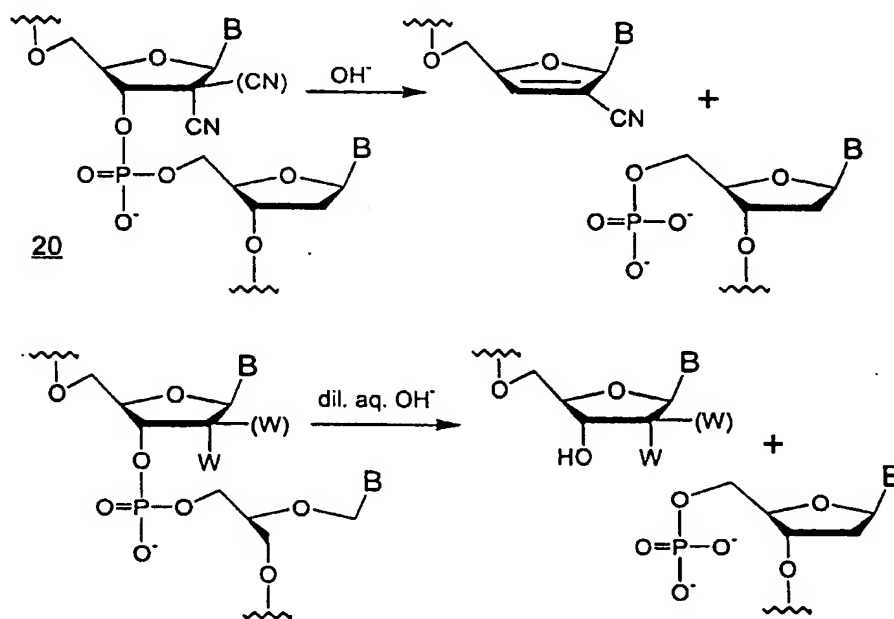
- 10 8. A sugar may be substituted with a functional group which is capable of generating a free radical such as, without limitation, a phenylselenenyl ($PhSe-$) or a t-butyl ester group ($tBuC(=O)-$) (*Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* 1993, 32:1742-43).

- Treatment of the modified sugar with ultraviolet light under anaerobic conditions results in the formation of a C₄' radical whose fragmentation causes the excision of the modified nucleotide and thereby the cleavage of the polynucleotide at the modified nucleotide (Scheme 12). The free radicals may be generated either prior to or during the laser desorption/ionization process of MALDI mass analysis. Modified nucleotides with other photolabile 4' substituents such as, without limitation, 2-nitrobenzyl groups or 3-nitrophenyl groups (Synthesis, 1980, 1-26) and bromo or iodo groups may also be used as precursors to form a C₄' radical.



Scheme 12

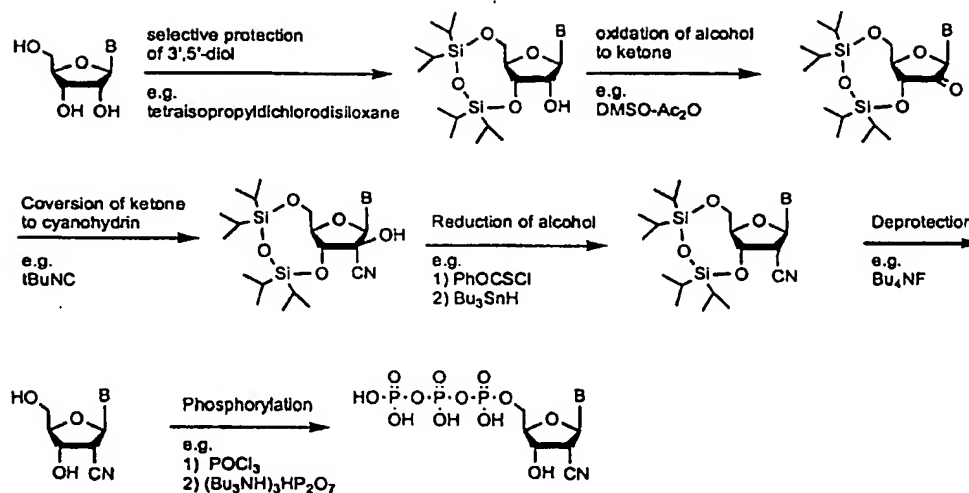
9. An electron-withdrawing group may be incorporated into the sugar such that the nucleotide is either rendered susceptible to β -elimination (when W is cyano (a "cyanosugar" 20)) or the oxyanion formed by the hydrolysis of the 3'-phosphate ester linkage is stabilized and thus hydrolysis with mild chemical base will be preferred at the modified sugar; such electron-withdrawing groups include, without limitation, cyano
- 5 be preferred at the modified sugar; such electron-withdrawing groups include, without limitation, cyano
- (-C \equiv N), nitro (-NO₂), halo (in particular, fluoro), azido (-N₃) or methoxy (-OCH₃) (Scheme 13):



10

Scheme 13

- A cyano sugar can be prepared by a number of approaches, one of which is shown in (Scheme 14). Other methods will no doubt be apparent to those skilled in the art based on the disclosures herein; such alternate approaches to cyano (or other
- 15 electron withdrawing group substituted sugars) are within the spirit and scope of this invention.

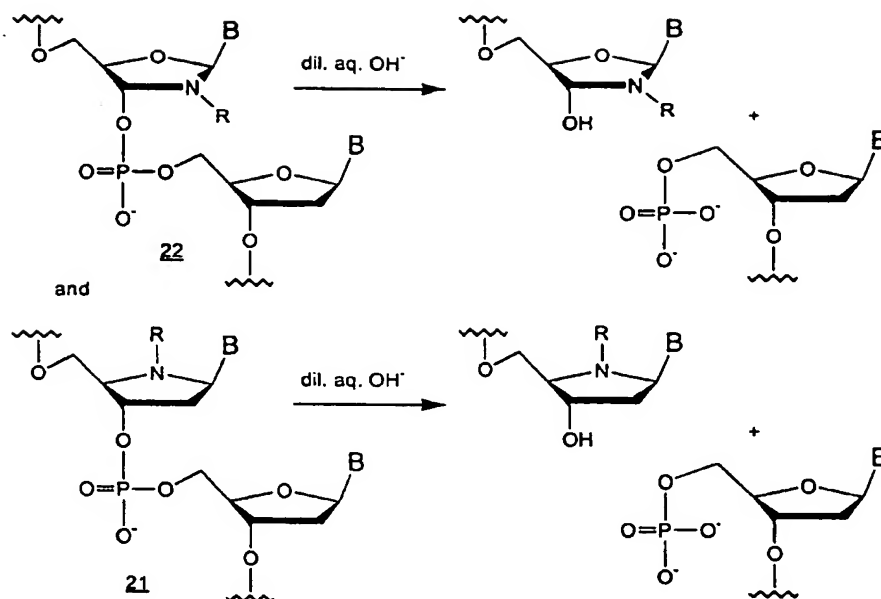


5

Scheme 14

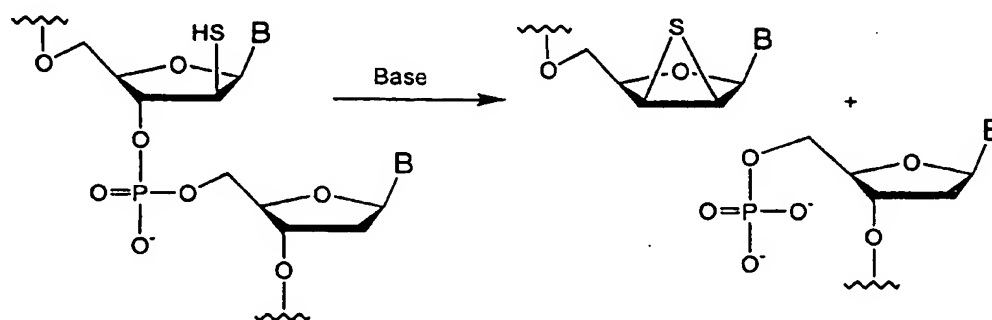
10. The ring oxygen of a sugar may be replaced with another atom; e.g.,
- 10 without limitation, a nitrogen to form a pyrrole ring (21). Or, another heteroatom may be placed in the sugar ring in place of one of the ring carbon atoms; for example, without limitation, a nitrogen atom to form an oxazole ring (22). In either case, the purpose of the different or additional heteroatom is to render the phosphate ester linkage of the resulting non-natural nucleotide more labile than that of the natural
- 15 nucleotide (Scheme 15):

20



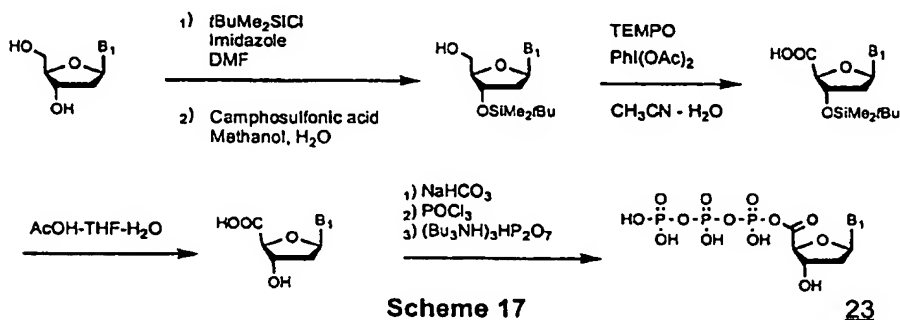
Scheme 15

11. A group such as, without limitation, a mercapto group may be
 5 incorporated at the 2' position of a sugar ring which group, on treatment with mild
 chemical base, forms a ring by elimination of the 3'-phosphate ester (Scheme 16).



Scheme 16

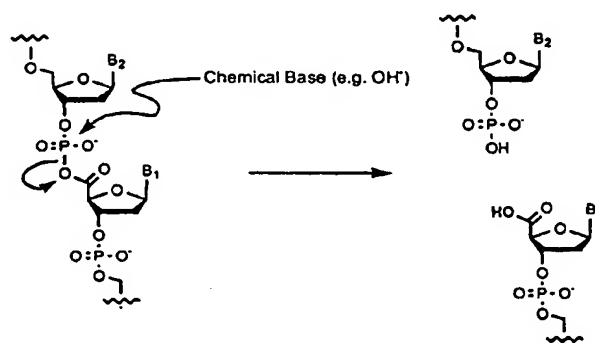
12. A keto group can be incorporated at the 5' position such that the resulting phosphate has the lability of an anhydride, i.e., structure 23. A nucleotide triphosphate such as 23 may be synthesized by the procedure shown in (Scheme 17). It is recognized that other routes to such nucleotide triphosphates may become apparent to those skilled in the art based on the disclosures herein; such syntheses are within the spirit and scope of this invention.



10

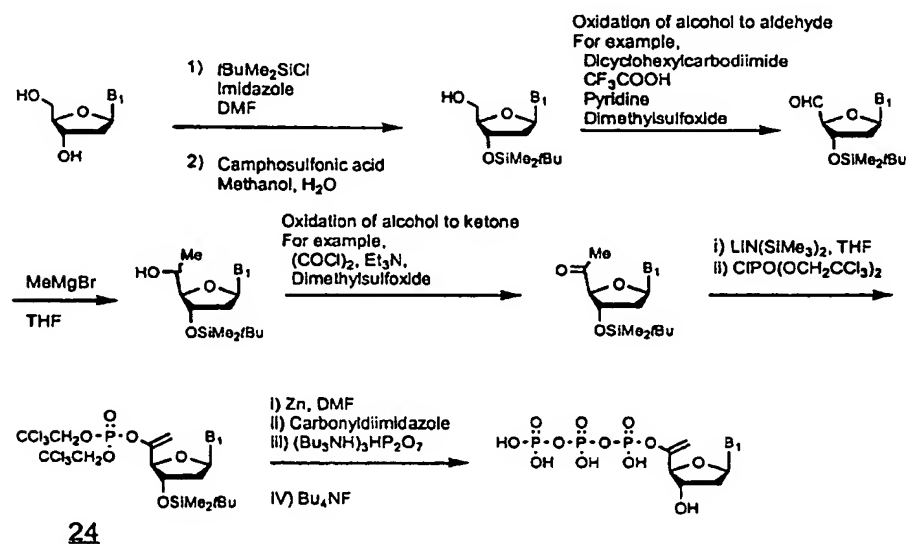
Polynucleotides into which nucleotide triphosphates of structure 23 have been incorporated should, like analogous mixed anhydrides, be susceptible to alkaline hydrolysis as shown in (Scheme 18):

15



13. The phosphate ester linkage could be turned into the relatively more labile enol ester linkage by the incorporation of a double bond at the 5' position, that is, a nucleotide triphosphate of structure 24 could be used. A nucleotide triphosphate of structure 24 can be prepared by the procedure shown in (Scheme 19). It is again understood that other ways to produce structure 24 may be apparent to those skilled in the art based on the disclosures herein, as before, these alternate syntheses are well within the spirit and scope of this invention.

10

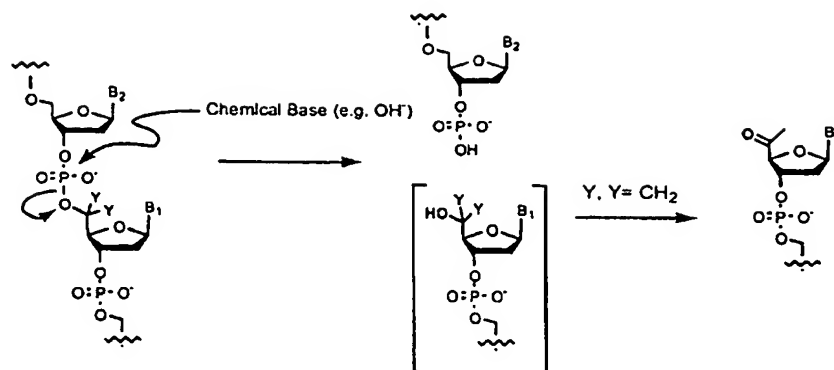


Scheme 19

The enol ester would be susceptible to alkaline cleavage according to (Scheme 20).

15

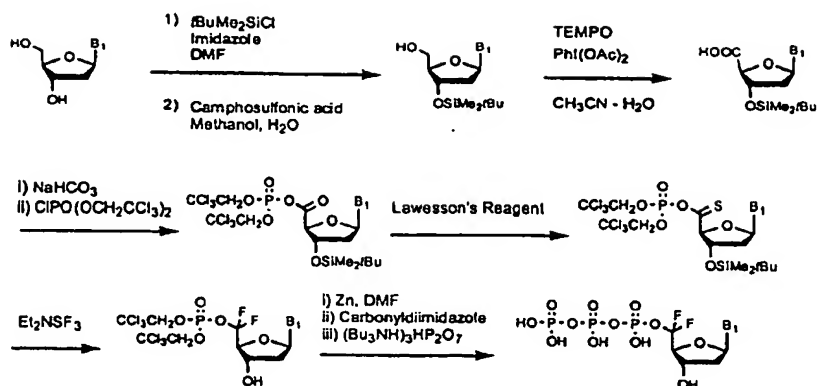
20



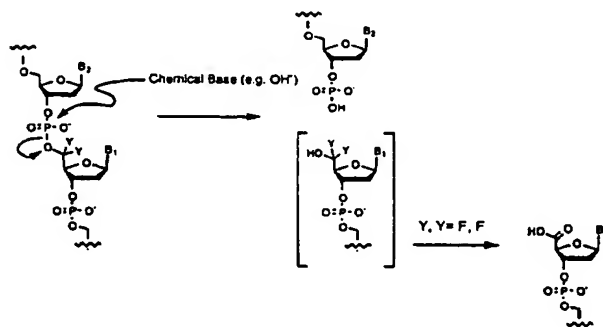
5

Scheme 20

14. Difluoro substitution at the 5' position would increase the lability of the phosphate ester linkage and would also push the reaction to completion by virtue of the
- 10 hydrolysis of the intermediate difluorohydroxy group to an acid group as shown in (Scheme 22). The dihalo derivative could be synthesized by the procedure shown in (Scheme 21). Once again, the route shown in (Scheme 21) is not the only way possible to make the difluoronucleotide triphosphate. However, as above, these other routes
- 15 would be apparent based on the disclosures herein and would be within the spirit and scope of this invention.



Scheme 21



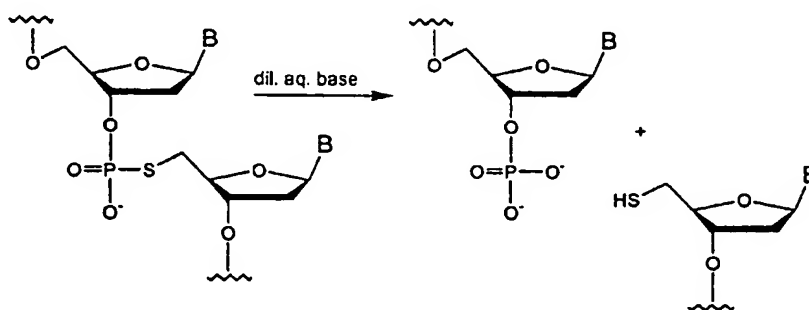
Scheme 22

(3) Phosphate ester modification and cleavage

Modification of the phosphate ester of a nucleotide results in modification of the phosphodiester linkages between the 3'-hydroxy group of one nucleotide and the 5'-hydroxy group of the adjacent nucleotide such that one or the other of the modified 3' or 5' phosphate ester linkages is rendered substantially more susceptible to cleavage than the corresponding unmodified linkage. Since the phosphodiester linkage forms the backbone of a polynucleotide, this modification method will, herein, be referred to alternatively as "backbone modification." The following are non-limiting examples of backbone modification. Other such modifications will become apparent to those skilled in the art

based on the disclosures herein and therefore are deemed to be within the scope of this invention.

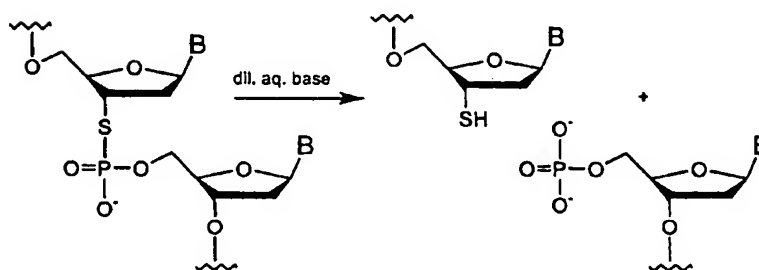
1. Replacement of an oxygen in the phosphate ester linkage with a sulfur; i.e., creation of a phosphorothiolate linkage (25a, 25b, 25c) which either directly on treatment with mild base (Schemes 23(a) and 23(b)) or on treatment with an alkylating agent, such as, for instance, methyl iodide, followed by treatment with strong non-aqueous organic base, for example, methoxide (Scheme 23(c)), results in the selective cleavage of the phosphothioester linkage. Alternatively, phosphorothiolate linkages such as those in Formula 14 may also be selectively cleaved through laser photolysis during MALDI mass analysis. This in-source fragmentation procedure (Internat'l J. of Mass Spec. and Ion Process, 1997, 169/170:331-350) consolidates polynucleotide cleavage and analysis into one step;



15

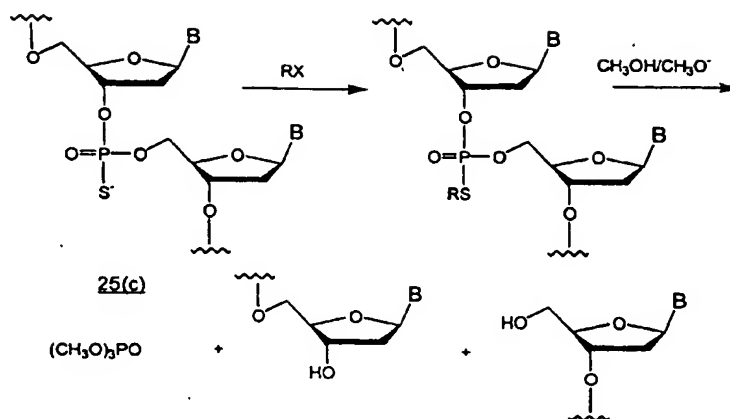
25a

Scheme 23(a)



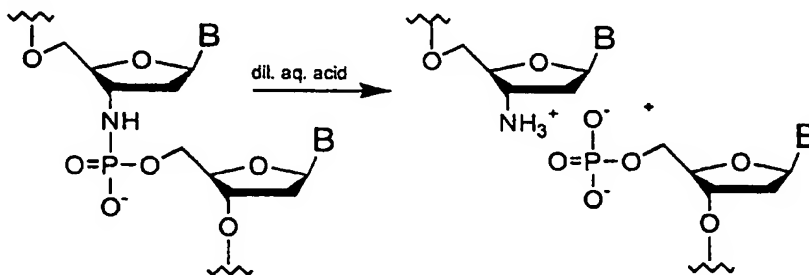
25b

Scheme 23(b)

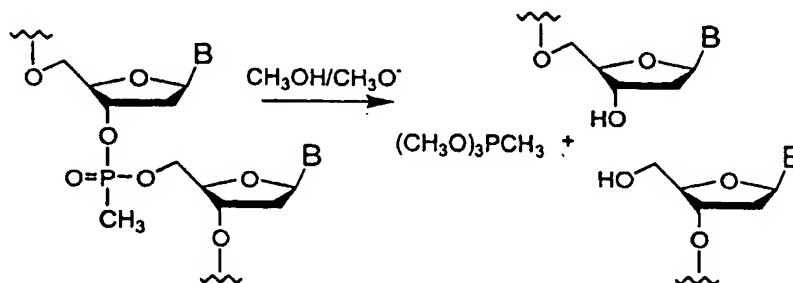


Scheme 23(c)

- 5 2. Replacement of an oxygen in the phosphate ester linkage with a nitrogen creating a phosphoramidate linkage (26) which, on treatment with, for instance and without limitation, dilute aqueous acid, will result in selective cleavage (Scheme 24);

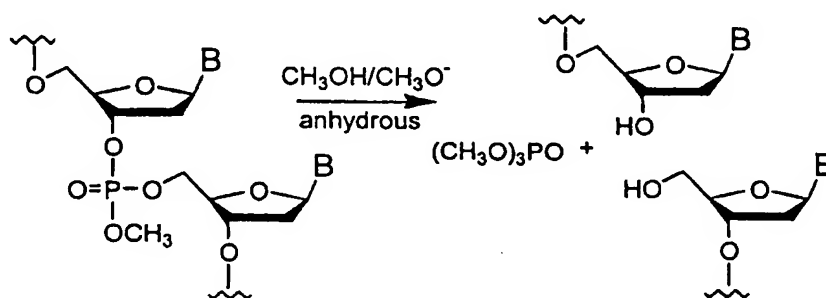


3. Replacement of one of the free oxygen atoms attached to the phosphorus of the phosphate backbone with an alkyl group, such as, without limitation, a methyl group, to form a methylphosphonate linkage, which, on treatment with strong non-aqueous organic base, such as without limitation, methoxide, will
- 5 likewise result in selective cleavage (Scheme 25).



Scheme 25

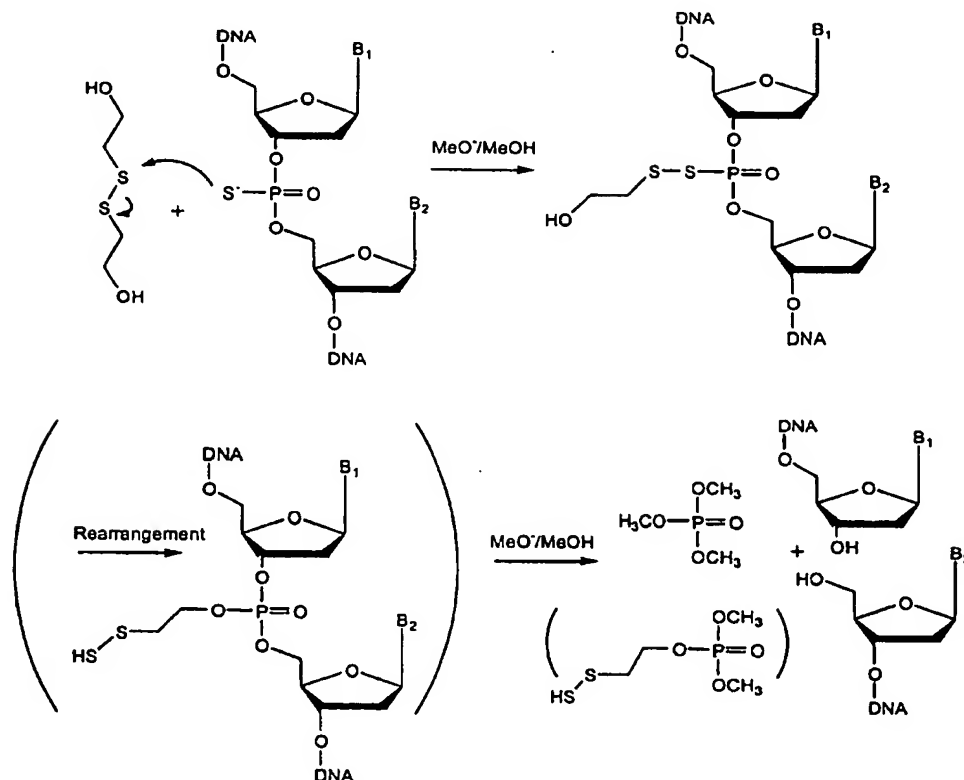
4. Alkylation of the free oxyanion of a phosphate ester linkage with an alkyl group such as, without limitation, a methyl group will, on treatment with strong non-aqueous organic base such as without limitation, methoxide, result in the
- 10 selective cleavage of the resulting alkylphosphorotriester linkage (Scheme 26).



Scheme 26

- 15 5. Treatment of a phosphorothioate with β -mercaptoethanol in a strong, base such as, without limitation, methanolic sodium methoxide, in which the mercaptoethanol exists primarily as the disulfide, could result in the formation of a

mixed disulfide, which would then degrade, with or without rearrangement, to give the cleavage products shown in (Scheme 27).



5

Scheme 27

(4) Dinucleotide modification and cleavage

The previous substitutions are all single substitutions; that is, one modified nucleotide is substituted for one natural nucleotide wherever the natural nucleotide occurs in the target polynucleotide or, if desired, at a fraction of such sites. In an additional aspect of this invention, multiple substitutions may be used. That is, two or more different modified nucleotides may be substituted for two or more different natural nucleotides, respectively, wherever the natural nucleotides occur in a subject polynucleotide. The modified nucleotides and cleavage conditions are selected such that, under the proper cleavage conditions, they do not individually confer

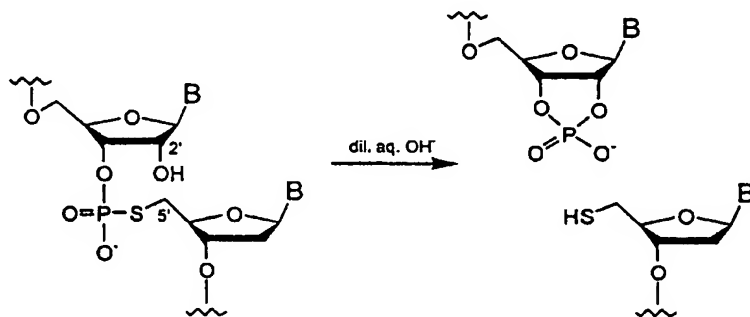
10

selective cleavage properties on a polynucleotide. When, however, the proper cleavage conditions are applied and the modified nucleotides are incorporated into the polynucleotide in a particular spatial relationship to one another, they interact to jointly render the polynucleotide selectively cleavable. Preferably, two modified
5 nucleotides are substituted for two natural nucleotides in a polynucleotide, thus, this method is referred to herein as "dinucleotide modification." It is important to note that, individually, each of the two modified nucleotides may elicit specific and selective cleavage of a polynucleotide albeit under quite different, typically more vigorous chemical conditions.

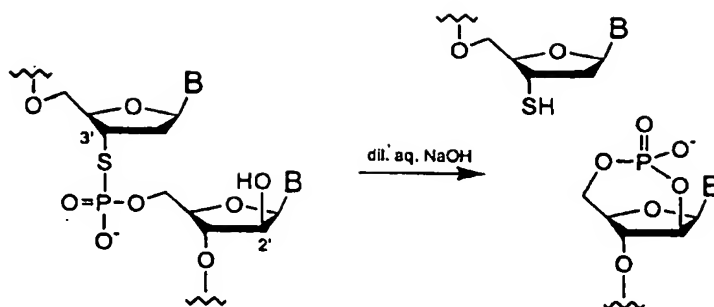
10 As used herein, "spatial relationship" refers to the 3-dimensional relationship between two or more modified nucleotides after substitution into a polynucleotide. In a preferred embodiment of this invention, two modified nucleotides must be contiguous in a modified polynucleotide in order to impart altered cleavage properties on the modified polynucleotide. By employing two modified nucleotides
15 in this manner, and then cleaving the modified polynucleotide, the relationship between two natural nucleotides in a target polynucleotide can be established depending on the nature of the multiple substitution selected. That is, the natural nucleotides being replaced would also have been adjacent to one another in the natural nucleotide. For example, without limitation, if a modified A and modified G
20 are replaced at every point of occurrence of the corresponding natural A and natural G, respectively, the modified polynucleotide will be rendered selectively cleavable only where the natural A and G were directly adjacent, i.e., AG or GA (but not both), in the naturally-occurring polynucleotide. As shown below, proper choice of the modified polynucleotides will also reveal the exact relationship of the nucleotides,
25 i.e., in the example above, whether the nucleotide sequence in the natural polynucleotide was AG or GA. The following are non-limiting examples of multiple substitutions. Other multiple substitutions will become apparent to those skilled in the art based on the disclosures set forth herein and therefore are deemed to be within the scope of this invention.

30 1. One modified nucleotide may contain a functional group capable of effecting nucleophilic substitution while the companion modified nucleotide is modified so as to render it a selective leaving group. The nucleophile and the

leaving group may be in a 5'-3' orientation or in a 3'-5' orientation with respect to one another. A non-limiting example of this is shown in (Scheme 28). The 2' or 2" hydroxy group on one modified nucleotide, when treated with mild chemical base becomes a good nucleophile. The other modified nucleotide contains a 3' or 5' thiohydroxy (-SH) group which forms a 3' or 5' phosphorothioate linkage when incorporated into the modified polynucleotide. This phosphorothiolate linkage is selectively more labile than a normal phosphodiester linkage. When treated with mild base, the oxyanion formed from the hydroxy group of one modified nucleotide selectively displaces the thiophosphate linkage to the other modified nucleotide resulting in cleavage. As shown in Scheme 28(a) and 2(b), depending on the stereochemical relationship between the hydroxy group and the thiophosphate linkage, cleavage will occur either to the 3' or the 5' side of the hydroxy-containing modified nucleotide. Thus, the exact relationship of the natural nucleotides in the naturally-occurring polynucleotide is revealed.

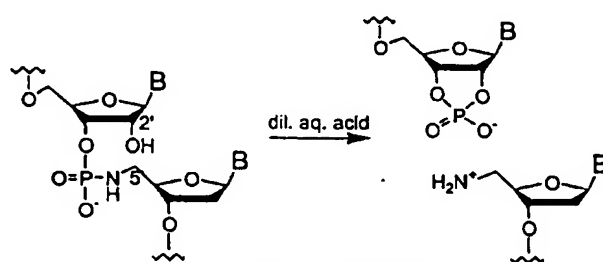


Scheme 28(a)

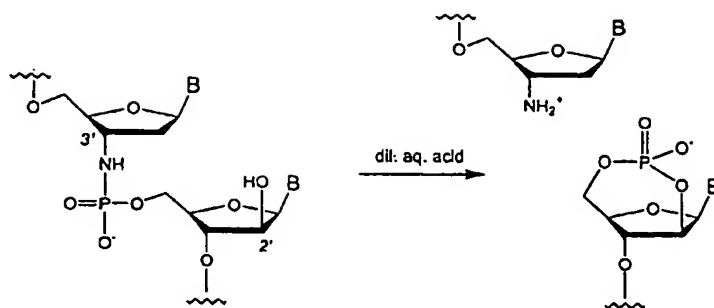


Scheme 28(b)

- 5 2 (a). If one modified nucleotide contains a 3' or 5' amino (-NH_2) group and the other modified nucleotide contains a 5' or 3' hydroxy group, respectively, treatment of the resulting phosphoroamidate-linked polynucleotide with mild acid results in the protonation of the amino group of the phosphoroamidate linkage which then becomes a very good leaving group. Once again, depending on the spatial
- 10 relationship between the hydroxy group of one modified nucleotide and the amino group of the other modified nucleotide, the exact relationship of the nucleotides in the naturally-occurring polynucleotide can be determined as shown in Formulas 29(a) and 29(b).



Scheme 29(a)



Scheme 29(b)

Dinucleotide cleavage of a ribonucleotide/ 5'- aminonucleotide 5'-3' linkage is presently a preferred embodiment of this invention. Examples of this method are shown in Figures 21 –26.

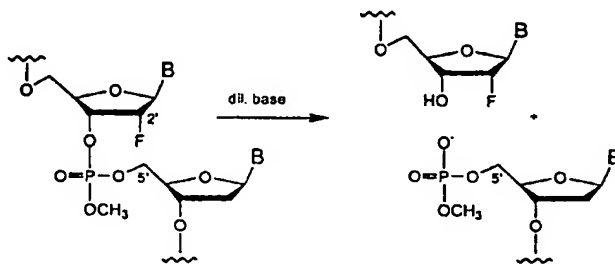
2(b). When the amino group of the modified nucleotide is 5', a ribonucleotide/5'-amino 2',5'-dideoxynucleotide pair may be cleaved during the polymerization process. For example, without limitation, cleavage occurs during the incorporation of adenine ribonucleotide and 5'-aminodideoxythymine nucleotide into a polynucleotide using a combination of wild type Klenow (exo-) and mutant E710A Klenow (exo-) polymerases. E710A is a mutant Klenow (exo-) polymerase in which a glutamate at residue 710 has been replaced by alanine. The E710A mutant is more efficient at incorporating both ribonucleotides and deoxyribonucleotides into a single nascent polynucleotide strand than Klenow (exo-). Other polymerases with similar properties will be apparent to those skilled in the art based on the disclosures herein and their use for the incorporation of ribonucleotide and 5'-amino-2',5'-dideoxynucleotide into a polynucleotide with subsequent cleavage during the polymerization reaction is within the scope of this invention.

When a 5'-end radiolabeled primer was extended using a mixture of Klenow (exo-) and E710A Klenow (exo-), only one fragment (the 5'-end fragment) was observed indicating complete cleavage at the ribonucleotide-5'-aminonucleotide sites. We have shown (Figs. 21 – 26) that the polymerization and cleavage occur in the same step. That is, cleavage is induced during protein-DNA contact. The figures show that the polymerases continue to extend the template even after cleavage which also suggests that the cleavage is the result of protein-DNA contact. While USB brand

Klenow polymerase (Amersham) was also able to incorporate the two nucleotides, it was not as efficient as the mixture of polymerases and, furthermore, multiple product bands were observed indicating incomplete cleavage at the AT sites.

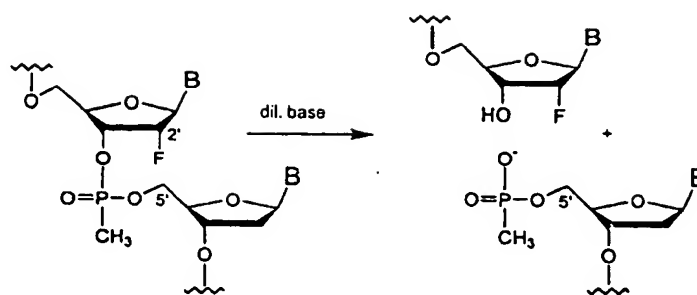
The above is, of course, a specific example of a general concept. That is, other wild type polymerases, mutant polymerases or combinations thereof should likewise be capable of cleaving, or facilitating cleavage of, modified nucleotides or dinucleotides during the polymerization procedure. The procedure for determining the exact combinations of polymerase(s) and nucleotide modifications that result in cleavage, based on the disclosures herein, will be apparent to those skilled in the art. For instance, as is described below, it may be useful to generate a library of mutant polymerases and select specifically for those which induce dinucleotide cleavage. Thus, a polymerase or a combination of polymerases which cause the cleavage of a forming modified polynucleotide during the polymerization process is yet another aspect of this invention, as are the method of cleaving a modified polynucleotide during the polymerization process using a polymerase or combination of polymerases and the modified nucleotide(s) necessary for the cleavage to occur.

3. An electron-withdrawing group can be placed on a sugar carbon adjacent to the carbon which is bonded to the hydroxy group participating in the ester linkage of a methylphosphonate (Scheme 30(a)) or methylphosphotriester (Scheme 30(b)) backbone. This will result in increased stability of the oxyanion formed when the phosphate group is hydrolyzed with mild chemical base (Scheme 30) and thus selective hydrolysis of those phosphate ester linkages compared to phosphate ester linkages not adjacent to such hydroxy groups.



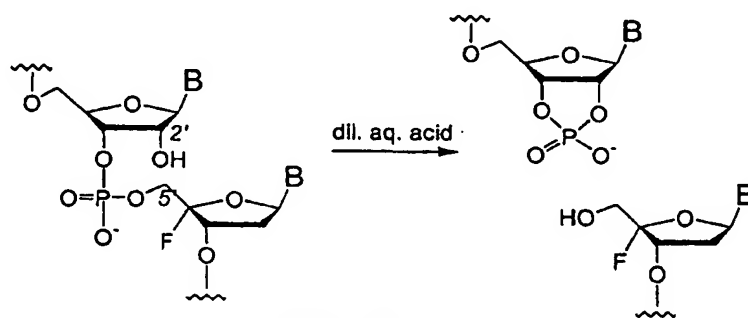
Scheme 30(a)

123



Scheme 30(b)

4. An electron-withdrawing group can be placed on the 4' carbon of a nucleotide which is linked through its 5'-hydroxy group to the 3'-hydroxy group of an adjacent ribonucleotide. Treatment with dilute base will result in cleavage as shown in (Scheme 31).

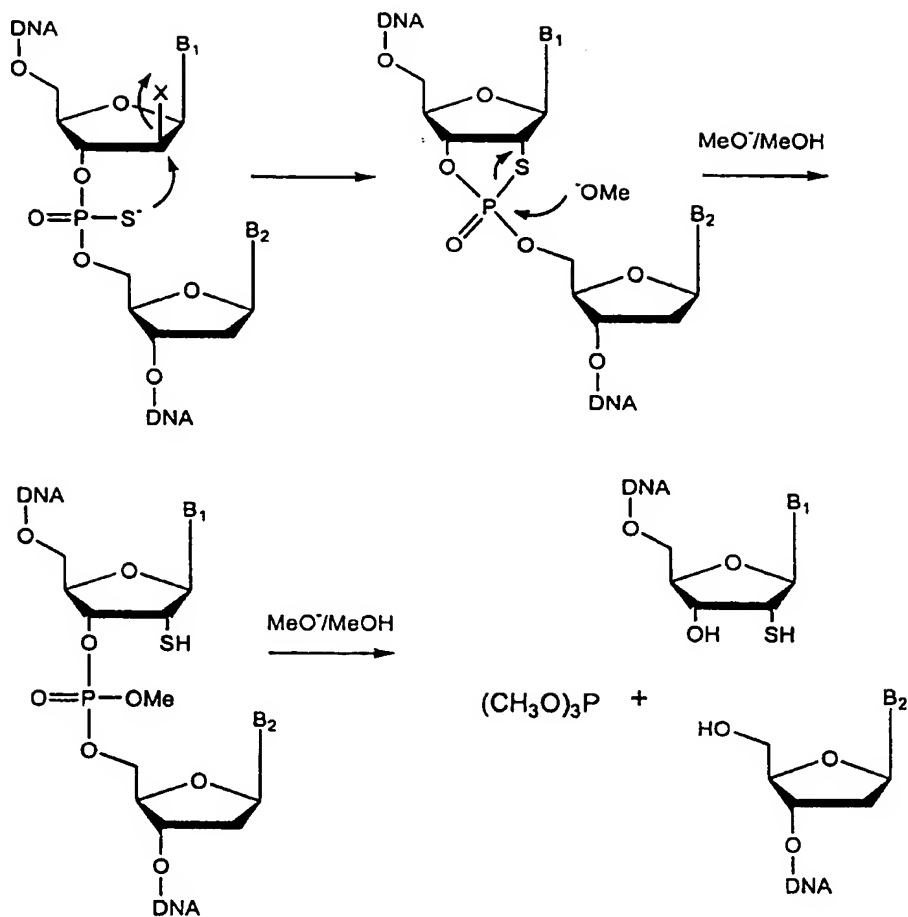


Scheme 31

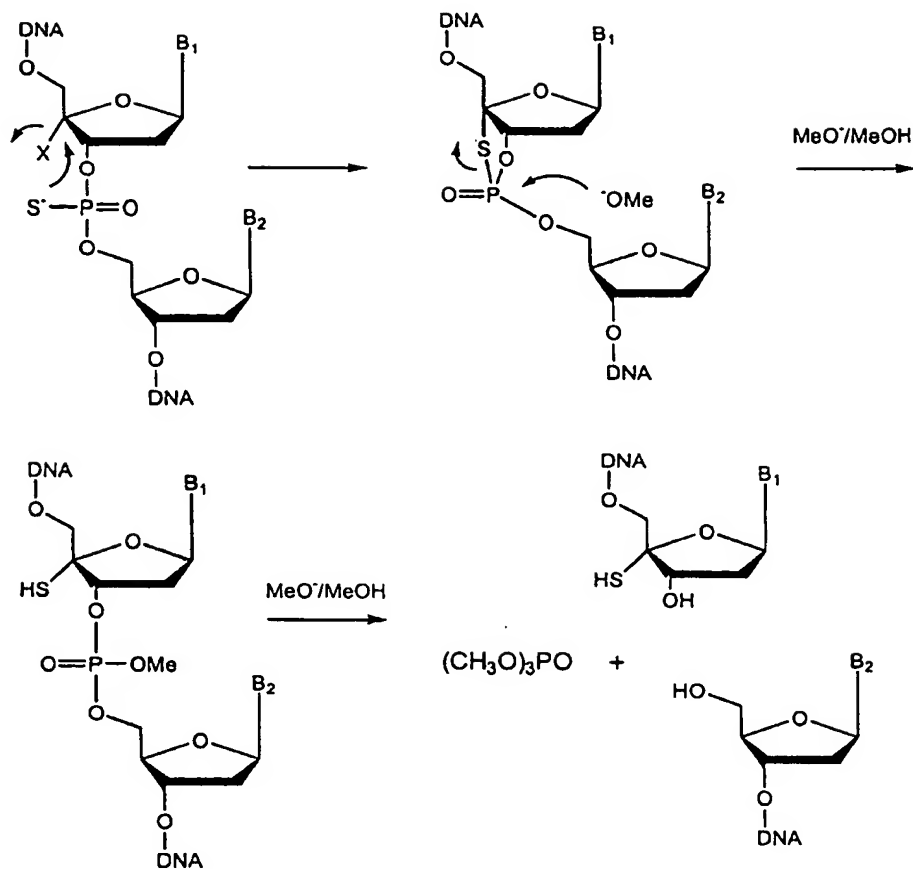
10

5. A 2' or 4' leaving group in a sugar may be susceptible to attack by the sulfur of a phosphorothioate as shown in (Schemes 32 and 33) to afford the desired cleavage:

15

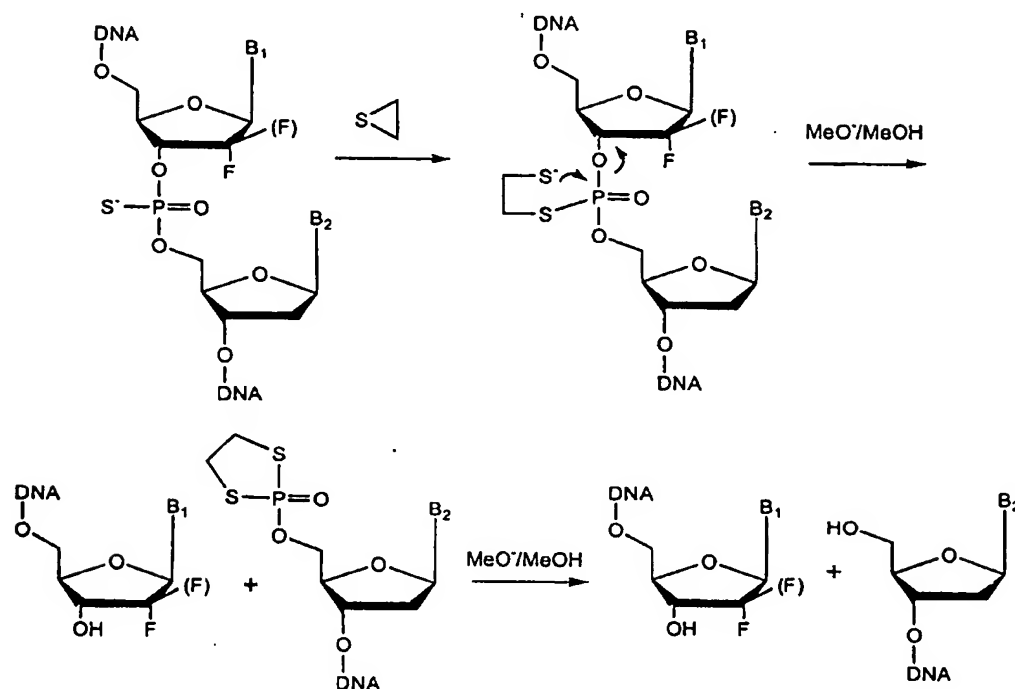


Scheme 32



Scheme 33

6. Ethylene sulfide could effect the cleavage of a 2' fluoro derivative of a sugar next to a phosphorothioate according to (Scheme 34):

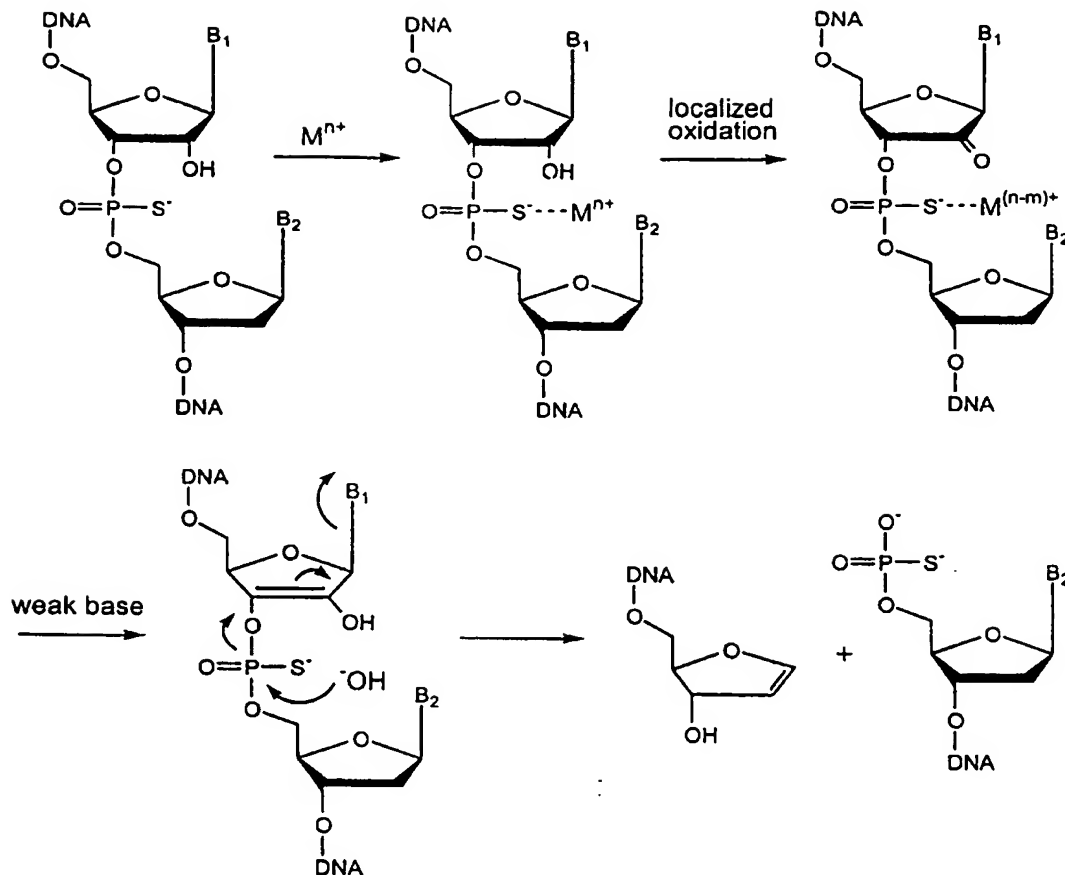


5

Scheme 34

β -Mercaptoethanol or a similar reagent may be substituted for the ethylene sulfide.

7. A phosphorothioate might coordinate with a metal oxidant such as, without limitation, Cu^{II} or Fe^{III}, which would be held in close proximity to the 2' hydroxy group of an adjacent ribonucleotide. Selective oxidation of the 2' hydroxy group to a ketone should render the adjacent phosphate ester linkage more susceptible to cleavage under basic conditions than the corresponding ribonucleotides or deoxyribonucleotides as shown in (Scheme 35):



Scheme 35

The preceding cleavage reactions may be carried out in such a manner as to cause cleavage at substantially all points of occurrence of the modified nucleotide

- 5 or, in the case of multiple substitutions, all points of occurrence of two or more modified nucleotides in the proper spatial relationship. On the other hand, by controlling the amount of cleaving reagent and the reaction conditions, cleavage can be partial; i.e., cleavage will occur at only a fraction of the points of occurrence of a modified nucleotide or pairs of modified nucleotides.

10 **B. Fragmenting modified polynucleotides in mass spectrometers**

The preceding discussion relates to chemical methods for cleaving polynucleotides at sites where modified nucleotides have been incorporated. However,

besides fragmenting polynucleotide molecules chemically in solution, it is a further aspect of this invention that fragmentation is accomplished within a mass spectrometer using chemical or physical means. Further, by manipulating the conditions within the mass spectrometer, the extent of fragmentation can be controlled. The ability to

5 control degree of fragmentation of chemically modified oligonucleotides can be very useful in determining relationships between adjacent sequences. This is because, while mass spectrometric (MS) analysis of a completely cleaved polynucleotide provides the masses and therefore the nucleotide content of each fragment polynucleotide, determining the order in which these fragment polynucleotides are

10 linked together in the original (analyte) polynucleotide is a difficult problem. By relaxing the stringency of cleavage one can generate fragments that correspond to two or more fragments from the complete cleavage set. The mass of these compound fragments provides the information that permits the inference that the two component fragments are adjacent in the original polynucleotide. By determining that multiple different pairs

15 or triplets of complete cleavage fragments are adjacent to each other, eventually a much larger sequence can be pieced together than if one must rely solely on analysis of complete cleavage fragments. The ability to control the conditions of fragmentation by manipulation in the mass spectrometer is particularly advantageous because, in contrast to the iterative generation and subsequent testing of partial cleavages in a test

20 tube, the effect of various partial cleavage conditions can be directly observed in real time and instantaneously manipulated to provide the optimal partial cleavage data set(s). For some purposes, use of several partial cleavage conditions may be very useful as successive levels of partial cleavage will provide a cumulative picture of the relationships between ever larger fragments. Specific mechanisms for fragmentation

25 of modified polynucleotides are described below.

First, by choice of appropriate ionization methods, fragmentation can be induced during the ionization process. Alternatively, in the tandem mass spectrometry (MS/MS) approach, ions with mass-to-charge ratios (m/z) of interest can be selected and then activated by a variety of procedures including collision with

30 molecules, ions or electrons, or the absorption of photons of various wavelength, leading to the fragmentation of the ions. In one aspect, ionization and fragmentation of the polynucleotide molecules can be achieved with fast atom bombardment

(FAB). In this approach, modified polynucleotide molecules are dissolved in a liquid matrix such as glycerol, thioglycerol, or other glycerol analogs. The solution is deposited on a metallic surface. Particles with thousands of electron volts of kinetic energy are directed at the liquid droplet. Depending on the modification of the polynucleotides, partial fragmentation or complete fragmentation at every modified nucleotide can be achieved.

In another aspect, ionization and fragmentation can be effected by matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization mass spectrometry (MALDI-MS). In MALDI-MS a solution of modified polynucleotide molecules is mixed with a matrix solution, e.g., 3-hydroxypicolinic acid in aqueous solution. An aliquot of the mixture is deposited on a solid support, typically a metallic surface with or without modification. Lasers, preferably with wavelength between 3 μm and 10.6 μm , are used to irradiate the modified polynucleotide/matrix mixture. To analyze in-source fragmentation (ISF) products, delayed extraction can be employed. To analyze post-source decay (PSD) products, an ion reflector can be employed.

In another approach, ionization and fragmentation can be accomplished by electrospray ionization (ESI). In this procedure, the solution of modified DNA is sprayed through the orifice of a needle with a few kilovolts of voltage applied. Fragmentation of the modified polynucleotide molecules would occur during the desolvation process in the nozzle-skimmer (NS) region. The degree of the fragmentation will depend on the nature of the modification as well as factors such as the voltage between the nozzle and skimmer, the flow rate as well as the temperature of the drying gas. If a capillary is used to assist the desolvation, then it is the voltage between the exit of the capillary and the skimmer and the temperature of the capillary that need to be controlled to achieve the desired degree of fragmentation.

In yet another technique, modified polynucleotide molecules can be selectively activated and dissociated. Activation can be accomplished by accelerating precursor ions to a kinetic energy of a few hundred to a few million electron volts and then causing them to collide with neutral molecules, preferably of noble gas. In the collision some of the kinetic energy of the precursor ions is converted into internal energy and causes fragmentation. Activation can be also

accomplished by allowing accelerated precursor ions to collide onto a conductive or semi-conductive surface. Activation can also be accomplished by allowing accelerated precursor ions to collide with ions of opposite polarity. In another approach, activation can be accomplished by electron capturing. In this technique, the precursor ions are allowed to collide with thermalized electrons. Activation can also be accomplished by irradiating the precursor ions with photons of various wavelengths, preferably in the range of 193 nm to 10.6 μm . Activation can also be accomplished by heating vacuum chambers for trapped ions; the heating of vacuum chamber walls causes blackbody IR irradiation (Williams, E. R., Anal. Chem., 1998, 70:179A-185A). The presence of modified nucleotides in a polynucleotide could also increase the rate constant of the fragmentation reaction, shortening the 10-1000 second duration required by the blackbody IR irradiation approach for unmodified polynucleotides.

As noted previously, tandem mass spectrometry is another tool that may be beneficially employed with the methods of this invention. In tandem mass spectrometry, precursor ions with m/z of interest are selected and subjected to activation. Depending on the activation technique employed, some or all of the precursor ions can be fragmented to give product ions. When this is done inside a suitable mass spectrometer (e.g., Fourier-transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometer and ion trap mass spectrometers), the product ions with m/z of interest can be further selected and subjected to activation and fragmentation, giving more product ions. The mass of both precursor and product ions can be determined.

To control the degree of fragmentation at different stage of activation, two or more different types of modified nucleotides which, for purposes of discussion will be called Type I and Type II, with different sensitivity to different activation techniques could be incorporated (complete replacement of the natural nucleotide) into a target polynucleotide. Such a polynucleotide can be fragmented with high efficiency by type I activation technique at every position where type I modified nucleotides are incorporated. The resulting fragment ions, which still contain type II modified nucleotides can then be selected and fragmented by a type II activation technique to generate a set of sub-fragments from which nucleotide content can be more readily inferred. Such an approach can be useful for variance detection. For example, a

500-mer polynucleotide can be first fragmented into 10-50 fragments using a type I fragmentation technique. The m/z of each fragment (when compared to the predicted set of fragment masses) will reveal if a variance resides in this fragment. Once fragments containing a variance are identified, the rest of the fragment ions are ejected from the ion trapping device, while the fragment ions of interest are subjected to activation. By controlling the degree of fragmentation of these fragment ions, a set of smaller DNA fragments can be generated, allowing the order of the nucleotides and the position of the variance to be determined. Compared to the approach involving one type of modified nucleotide and one stage fragmentation, such an approach has the advantage in that the number of experimental steps and the amount of data that needs to be processed is significantly reduced. Compared to the approach involving one type of modified nucleotide but two stages of partial fragmentation, this approach has the advantage in that the fragmentation efficiency at the second stage is more controllable, hence reducing the chance of sequence gaps.

Although the aforementioned schemes of activation can be applied to all kinds of mass spectrometers, ion-trap mass spectrometers (ITMS) and Fourier-transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometers (FT-ICRMS) are particularly suited for the electron capturing, photon activation, and blackbody IR irradiation approaches.

C. Modified Nucleotide Incorporation

Several examples of the polymerase catalyzed incorporation of a modified nucleotide into polynucleotides are described in the Example section, below. It may be, however, that one particular polymerase will not incorporate all the modified nucleotides described above, or others like them which are within the scope of this invention, with the same ease and efficiency. Also, while a particular polymerase may be capable of incorporating one modified nucleotide efficiently, it may be less efficient in incorporating a second modified nucleotide directly adjacent to the first modified nucleotide. Furthermore, currently available polymerases may not be capable of inducing or facilitating cleavage at modified nucleotides or nucleotide pairs, an extremely convenient way to achieve cleavage (see above). There are, however, several approaches to acquiring polymerases that are capable of

incorporating the modified nucleotides and contiguous pairs of modified nucleotides of this invention and, potentially, inducing or facilitating specific cleavage at that modified nucleotide or those modified nucleotides.

One approach to finding polymerases with the proper capabilities is to take
5 advantage of the diversity inherent among naturally-occurring polymerases including, without limitation, RNA polymerases, DNA polymerases and reverse transcriptases. Naturally-occurring polymerases are known to have differing affinities for non-natural nucleotides and it is likely that a natural polymerase which will perform the desired incorporation can be identified. In some cases, use of a
10 mixture of two or more naturally- occurring polymerases having different properties regarding the incorporation of one or more non-natural nucleotides may be advantageous. For example, W. Barnes has reported (Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 1994, 91:2216-2220) the use of two polymerases, an exonuclease-free N-terminal deletion mutant of Taq DNA polymerase and a thermostable DNA polymerase
15 having 3'-exonuclease activity, to achieve improved polymerization of long DNA templates. Naturally occurring polymerases from thermophilic organisms are preferred polymerases for applications in which amplification by thermal cycling, e.g., PCR, is the most convenient way to produce modified polynucleotides.

Another approach is to employ current knowledge of polymerase structure-
20 function relationships (see, e.g., Delarue, M., et al., Protein Engineering, 1990, 3:461-467; Joyce, C. M., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 1997, 94:1619-1622) to identify or aid in the rational design of a polymerase which can accomplish a particular modified nucleotide incorporation. For example, the amino acid residues of DNA polymerases that provide specificity for deoxyribo-NTPs (dNTPs, deoxyribo
25 Nucleotide TriPhosphates), while excluding ribo-NTPs (rNTPs), have been examined in some detail. Phenylalanine residue 155 of Moloney Murine Leukemia Virus reverse transcriptase appears to provide a steric barrier that blocks entry of ribo-NTPs. A similar role is played by phenylalanine residue 762 of the Klenow
30 Fragment of E. Coli DNA polymerase I, and tyrosine residue 115 of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase. Mutation of this latter amino acid, or its equivalent, in several different polymerases has the effect of altering polymerase fidelity and sensitivity to nucleotide inhibitors.

The corresponding site in RNA polymerases has also been investigated and appears to play a similar role in discriminating ribo- from deoxyribo- nucleotides. For example, it has been shown that mutation of tyrosine 639 of T7 RNA polymerase to phenylalanine reduces the specificity of the polymerase for rNTPs by about 20-fold and almost eliminates the K_m difference between rNTPs and dNTPs. The result is that the mutant T7 RNA polymerase can polymerize a mixed dNTP/rNTP chain. See, e.g., Huang, Y., Biochemistry, 1997, 36:13718-13728. These results illustrate the use of structure-function information in the design of polymerases that will readily incorporate one or more modified nucleotides.

10 In addition, chemical modification or site directed mutagenesis of specific amino acids or genetic engineering can be used to create truncated, mutant or chimeric polymerases with particular properties. For example, chemical modification has been used to modify T7 DNA polymerase (Sequenase®, Amersham) to increase its processivity and affinity for non-natural nucleotides (Tabor, S., et al.,
15 Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 1987, 84:4767-4771). Likewise, site directed mutagenesis has been employed to examine how E. coli DNA polymerase I (Klenow fragment) distinguishes between deoxy and dideoxynucleotides (Astake, M., et al., J. Mol. Biol., 1998, 278:147-165).

Furthermore, development of a polymerase with optimal characteristics can
20 be accomplished by random mutagenesis of one or more known polymerases coupled with an assay which manifests the desired characteristics in the mutated polymerase. A particularly useful procedure for performing such mutagenesis is called "DNA shuffling " (see Harayama, S., Trends Biotechnol., 1998, 16:76-82). For example, using only three rounds of DNA shuffling and assaying for β -lactamase
25 activity, a variant with 16,000-fold higher resistance to the antibiotic cefotaxime than the wild-type gene was created (Stemmer, W. P. C., Nature, 1994, 370:389-391).

A novel procedure, which is a further aspect of this invention, for creating and selecting polymerases capable of efficiently incorporating a modified nucleotide or contiguous pair of modified polynucleotides of this invention is described in the
30 Examples section, below.

D. Fragment Analysis

Once a modified nucleotide or nucleotides has been partially or completely substituted for one or more natural nucleotides in a polynucleotide and cleavage of the resultant modified polynucleotide has been accomplished, analysis of the fragments obtained can be performed. If the goal is complete sequencing of a polynucleotide, the above-mentioned partial incorporation of modified nucleotides into a polynucleotide or partial cleavage of a completely modified-nucleotide-substituted polynucleotide may be used to create fragment ladders similar to those obtained when using the Maxam-Gilbert or Sanger procedures. In such case, a sequencing ladder can then be constructed using slab, capillary or miniaturized gel electrophoresis techniques. The advantages of the method of this invention over the Maxam-Gilbert procedure is that the placement of the modified nucleotides in the modified polynucleotide is precise as is cleavage whereas post-synthesis modification of a full-length polynucleotide by the Maxam-Gilbert reactions is susceptible to error. For example, the wrong nucleotides might be modified and thus the wrong cleavage may occur or the intended nucleotides may not be modified at all such that there may be insufficient, perhaps even no cleavage where cleavage would be expected to occur. The advantages over the Sanger procedure are several. First, the full length clone can be purified after extension and prior to cleavage so that prematurely terminated fragments due to stops caused by polymerase error or template secondary structure can be removed before gel electrophoresis resulting in cleaner cleavage bands. In fact, it may not even be necessary to perform such clean up in that the prematurely terminated polymerase extension fragments themselves will be cleaved if they contain a modified nucleotide and those correctly cleavage fragments will simply augment the other fragments obtained from the cleavage of the full length clone (although such augmentation is confined to fragments shorter than the site of premature termination). Second, the chemical method produces equal intensity sequence ladder products in contrast to dye-terminator sequencing where substantial differences in the characteristics of different dye terminator molecules or in the interaction of dye modified dideoxynucleotides with polymerase template complexes results in an uneven signal intensity in the resulting sequence ladders. Such differences can lead to errors and

make heterozygote identification difficult. Third, the chemical methods described herein allow production of homogeneous sequence ladders over distances of multiple kb, in contrast to the Sanger chain terminating method, which generate usefully labeled fragments over a substantially shorter interval. This is demonstrated
5 in Figs. 17 and 18. The production of long sequence ladders can be coupled with restriction endonuclease digestion to accomplish 1X sequencing of long templates.

The utility of this approach to sequencing genomic DNA is described in Fig. 14 and its execution in Figs. 15 and 16. These methods have particular utility in the sequencing of repeat-rich genomes such as, without limitation, the human genome.

10 A particular advantage of the methods described herein for the use of mass spectrometry for polynucleotide sequence determination is the speed, reproducibility, low cost and automation associated with mass spectrometry, especially in comparison to gel electrophoresis. See, e.g., Fu, D. J., et al., Nature Biotechnology, 1998, 16:381-384. Thus, although some aspects of this invention
15 may employ gel analysis, those that use mass spectroscopy are preferred embodiments.

When detection of variance between two or more related polynucleotides is the goal, the ability of mass spectrometry to differentiate masses within a few or even one atomic mass unit (amu) of each other permits such detection without the
20 need for determining the complete nucleotide sequences of the polynucleotides being compared; i.e., the masses of the oligonucleotides provide the nucleotide content. The use of mass spectrometry in this manner constitutes yet another aspect of this invention.

This use of mass spectrometry to identify and determine the chemical nature
25 of variances is based on the unique molecular weight characteristics of the four deoxynucleotides and their oligomers.

Table 2 shows the mass differences among the four deoxynucleotide monophosphates. Table 3A then shows the calculated masses of all possible 2-
30 mers, 3-mers, 4-mers and 5-mers by nucleotide composition alone; that is, without consideration of nucleotide order. As can be seen, only two of the 121 possible 2mer through 5mer oligonucleotides have the same mass. Thus, the nucleotide composition, of all 2mers, 3mers, 4mers and all but two 5mers created by cleavage

of a polynucleotide can be immediately determined by mass spectrometry using an instrument with sufficient resolving power. For the masses in Table 3A, an instrument with a resolution (full width at half-maximal height) of 1500 to 2000 would be sufficient; mass spectrometers with resolution up to 10,000 are commercially available. However, when cleavage is performed at all sites of modified nucleotide substitution, it is not necessary to consider the masses of all possible 2mers, 3mers, 4mers, etc. This is because there can be no internal occurrences of the cleavage nucleotide in any cleavage fragment. That is, if G is the cleavage nucleotide, then all resulting cleavage fragments will have 0 or 1 G, depending on the cleavage mechanism and, if it is 1 G, that G must occur at either the 3' or the 5' end of the fragment depending on the cleavage mechanism. Put another way, there cannot be a G internal to a fragment because, if there were, that fragment would necessarily be refragmented at the internal G. Thus, if the cleavage chemistry does leave a G on either end of all G-cleavage fragments, then the mass of G can be subtracted from the mass of each fragment and the resulting masses can be compared. The same can be done with A, C and T. Table 4 shows the masses of all 2mers through 7mers lacking one nucleotide. This calculation has been performed for polynucleotides up to 30mers and it has been shown that there are only 8 sets of isobaric oligonucleotides (oligonucleotides with masses within 0.01% of each other) below a mass of 5000 Da. The eight sets of isobaric oligonucleotides are shown in Table 3B. Inspection of Table 3B reveals that every set except Set 2 involves a polynucleotide with multiple G residues. Thus, cleavage at G would eliminate all isobaric masses except one, $d(T_8)$ vs $d(C_3A_5)$ which could not be resolved by mass spectrometry with a resolution of 0.01%. However, either C or A cleavage would remove the latter polynucleotide.

Table 4 shows that cleavage at A or T consistently produces fragments with larger mass differences between the closest possible cleavage fragments. Cleavage at A produces mass differences of 5, 10, 15, 20 or 25 Da between the closest fragments while cleavage at T affords mass differences of 8, 18 or 24 Da, albeit at the expense of a few more isobaric fragments.

TABLE 2

<i>Panel A</i>	dAMP	dCMP	dGMP	dTMP
Mol. wt.	313.2	289.2	329.2	304.2
vs. dAMP	-	24	16	9
vs. dCMP		-	40	15
vs. dGMP			-	25

<i>Panel B</i>	dAMP	dCMP	dGMP	dTMP	2-chlor- oadenineMP
Mol. wt.	313.2	289.2	329.2	304.2	347.7
vs. dTMP					42.3
vs. dAMP	-	24	16	9	-
vs. dCMP		-	40	15	57.3
vs. dGMP			-	25	17.3

Table 2. Panel A. Masses of the four deoxynucleotide residues are shown across the top, and calculated molecular weight differences between each pair of nucleotide residues are shown in the table. Note that chemically modified nucleotides will generally have different masses than those shown above for the natural nucleotides. The mass difference between a particular modified nucleotide and the other nucleotides will vary depending on the modification. See description of specific nucleotide modifications and cleavage mechanisms for details of cleavage products. Panel B. The mass differences between the natural nucleotides and 2-chloroadenine are shown (far right column). The smallest mass difference is 17.3 Da instead of 9 Da as in panel A, providing advantageous discrimination of nucleotides using mass spectrometry.

TABLE 3a

2mer	mass	3mer	mass	4mer	mass	5mer	mass
CC	586	CCC	885	CCCC	1174	CCCCC	1483
CT	611	CCT	900	COCT	1189	COOCT	1478
AC	620	CCA	909	CCCA	1198	COCCA	1487
TT	626	CTT	915	COCTT	1204	COCTT	1493
AT	635	CTA	924	OCTA	1213	COCTA	1502
CG	636	COG	925	COOG	1214	COOOG	1503
AA	644	TTT	930	CTTT	1219	CCTTT	1508
GT	651	CAA	933	CCAA	1222	CCCAA	1511
AG	660	TTA	939	CTTA	1228	CCTTA	1517
GG	676	CTG	940	OCTG	1229	COCTG	1518
		TAA	948	TTTT	1234	CTTTT	1523
		CGA	949	CAAT	1237	CCTAA	1526
		TTG	955	CCAG	1238	COOGA	1527
		AAA	957	TTTA	1243	CTTTA	1532
		TGA	964	CTTG	1244	CCTTG	1533
		CGG	985	CAAA	1246	CCAAA	1535
		AAG	973	TTAA	1252	TTTTT	1538
		TGG	980	CTAG	1253	CTTAA	1541
		GGA	989	COGG	1254	CCTGA	1542
		GGG	1005	TTTG	1259	COOOG	1543
				TAAA	1261	TTTTA	1547
				CAAG	1262	CTTTG	1548
				TTAG	1268	CAATA	1550
				CTGG	1269	CCAGA	1551
				AAAA	1270	TTTAA	1556
				TAAG	1277	CTTGA	1557
				CAGG	1278	OCTGG	1558
				TTGG	1284	CAAAA	1559
				AAAG	1286	TTTTG	1563
				TAGG	1293	TTAAA	1565
				OGGG	1294	CTAGA	1566
				AAGG	1302	COGGA	1567
				TGGG	1309	TTTGA	1572
				AGGG	1318	CTTGG	1573
				GGGG	1334	TAAAA	1574
						CAAGG	1575
						TTAAG	1581
						CTGGA	1582
						AAAAA	1583
						COGGG	1583

Continued from right

5mer	mass
TTTGG	1588
TAAAG	1590
CAAGG	1591
ATTGG	1597
CTGGG	1598
AAAAG	1599
TAAGG	1606
ACGGG	1607
TTGGG	1613
AAAGG	1615
ATGGG	1622
CGGGG	1623
AAGGG	1631
TGGGG	1638
AGGGG	1647
GGGGG	1663

Table 3. Masses of all possible compositions of 2mers, 3mers, 4mers and 5mers in order of mass in Daltons (Da), rounded to the nearest whole number for ease of presentation. (Other nucleotide orders are possible for many of the oligonucleotides.) The 5mers column is continued on the left under the 2mers. Note that two 5mers with different nucleotide content have the same mass (AAAAA and CCGGG, shaded at bottom right, both weigh 1504). The molecular masses are provided; ionization will change the masses. More generally, these masses are illustrative; actual masses will differ depending on the chemical modification, cleavage mechanism and polarity of ionization.

Thus, for a given target analyte polynucleotide, if its sequence is known, it is possible to determine whether cleavage at one or more of the base nucleotides would produce any of the above confounding artifacts and then, by judicious choice
5 of experimental conditions, it is possible to avoid or resolve them.

Based on the preceding analysis, it can be seen that any difference in the nucleotide sequence among two or more similar polynucleotides from different members of a population will result in a difference in the pattern of fragments obtained by cleavage of the polynucleotides and thus a difference in the masses
10 seen in the mass spectrogram. Every variance will result in two mass changes, the disappearance of a mass and the appearance of a new mass. In addition, if a double-stranded polynucleotide is being analyzed or if two strands are being analyzed independently, the variance will result in a change in mass of the two complementary strands of a target DNA resulting in four mass changes altogether (a
15 mass disappearance and a mass appearance in each strand). The presence of a second strand displaying mass changes provides a useful internal corroboration of the presence of a variance. In addition, the sets of mass changes in fragments from complementary strands can provide additional information regarding the nature of the variance. Figs. 27 – 30 exemplify the detection of a mass difference on both
20 strands of a polynucleotide after full substitution and cleavage at modified dA, a variant position in the transferrin receptor gene. Table 5 shows the sets of mass changes expected on complementary strands for all possible point mutations (transitions and transversions). Once the mass spectrogram is obtained, it will be immediately apparent whether the variance was an addition of one or more
25 nucleotides to a fragment (an approximately 300+ a.u. increase in fragment mass), deletion of one or more nucleotides from a fragment (approximately a 300+ a.u. decrease in fragment mass) or a substitution of one or more nucleotides for one or more other nucleotides (differences as shown in Table 5). Furthermore, if the variance is a substitution, the exact nature of that substitution can also be
30 ascertained.

TABLE 3b

	Polynucleotides	Masses
Set 1	d (C ₂ G ₃)	1566.016
	d (A ₅)	1566.068
Set 2	d (C ₅ G ₃)	2433.584
	d (T ₈)	2433.603
	d (C ₃ A ₅)	2433.636
Set 3	d (A ₁ G ₇)	2617.707
	d (C ₈ T ₁)	2617.711
Set 4	d (C ₁₀ T ₁)	3196.090
	d (G ₁₀)	3196.137
Set 5	d (C ₆ T ₁ A ₄)	3292.134
	d (C ₁₃)	3292.190
Set 6	d (C ₁₃)	3759.457
	d (T ₇ A ₁ G ₄)	3759.472
Set 7	d (C ₅ T ₉)	4183.751
	d (A ₆ G ₇)	4183.779
Set 8	d (T ₇ G ₇)	4433.899
	d (C ₁₁ A ₄)	4433.936

TABLE 4 (part 1)

Cleavage at G				Cleavage at C				Cleavage at A				Cleavage at T			
2mers	2mer	mass	mass Δ	2mer	mass	mass Δ		2mer	mass	mass Δ		2mer	mass	mass Δ	
	CC	517		TT	547			CC	517			CC	517		
	CT	532	15	AT	556	9		CT	532	15		AC	541	24	
	AC	541	9	AA	565	9		TT	547	15		CG	557	16	
	TT	547	8	GT	572	7		CG	557	10		AA	565	8	
3mers	3mer	mass	mass Δ	3mer	mass	mass Δ		3mer	mass	mass Δ		3mer	mass	mass Δ	
	AT	556	9	AG	581	9		GT	572	15		AG	581	16	
	AA	565	9	CG	597	16		CG	597	25		CG	597	16	
	CCC	806		TTT	851			CCC	806			CCC	806		
	CCT	821	15	TTA	860	9		CCT	821	15		CCA	830	24	
4mers	4mer	mass	mass Δ	4mer	mass	mass Δ		4mer	mass	mass Δ		4mer	mass	mass Δ	
	CCA	830	9	TAA	869	9		CTT	836	15		CCG	846	16	
	CTT	836	6	TTG	876	7		CCG	846	10		CAA	854	8	
	CTA	845	9	AAA	878	2		TTT	851	5		CGA	870	16	
	TTT	851	8	TGA	885	7		CTG	861	10		AAA	878	8	
5mers	5mer	mass	mass Δ	5mer	mass	mass Δ		5mer	mass	mass Δ		5mer	mass	mass Δ	
	CAA	854	3	AAG	894	9		TTG	876	15		CGG	886	8	
	TTA	860	6	TGG	901	7		CCG	886	10		AAG	894	8	
	TAA	869	9	GGA	910	9		TGG	901	15		GGA	910	16	
	AAA	878	9	GGG	926	16		GGG	926	25		GGG	926	16	
6mers	6mer	mass	mass Δ	6mer	mass	mass Δ		6mer	mass	mass Δ		6mer	mass	mass Δ	
	COCC	1095		TTTT	1155			COCC	1095			COCC	1095		
	COCT	1110	15	TTTA	1164	9		COCT	1110	15		CCCA	1119	24	
	CCCA	1119	9	TTAA	1173	9		CCTT	1125	15		CCCG	1135	16	
	CCTT	1125	6	TTTG	1180	7		CCCG	1135	10		CCAA	1143	8	
7mers	7mer	mass	mass Δ	7mer	mass	mass Δ		7mer	mass	mass Δ		7mer	mass	mass Δ	
	CCTA	1134	9	TAAA	1182	2		CTTT	1140	5		CCAG	1159	16	
	CTTT	1140	6	TTAG	1189	7		CCTG	1150	10		CAAA	1167	8	
	CCAA	1143	3	AAAA	1191	2		TTTT	1155	5		CCGG	1175	8	
	CTTA	1149	6	TAAG	1198	7		CTTG	1165	10		CAAG	1183	8	
8mers	8mer	mass	mass Δ	8mer	mass	mass Δ		8mer	mass	mass Δ		8mer	mass	mass Δ	
	TTTT	1155	6	TTGG	1205	7		CCGG	1175	10		AAAA	1191	8	
	CAAT	1158	3	AAAG	1207	2		TTTG	1180	5		CAGG	1199	8	
	TTTA	1164	8	TAGG	1214	7		CTGG	1190	10		AAAG	1207	8	
	CAAA	1167	3	AAGG	1223	9		TTGG	1205	15		CCGG	1215	8	
9mers	9mer	mass	mass Δ	9mer	mass	mass Δ		9mer	mass	mass Δ		9mer	mass	mass Δ	
	TTTA	1173	6	TGGG	1230	7		CCGG	1215	10		AAAG	1223	8	
	TAAA	1182	9	AGGG	1239	9		TGGG	1230	16		AGGG	1239	16	
	AAAA	1191	9	GGGG	1255	16		GGGG	1255	25		GGGG	1255	16	
10mers	10mer	mass	mass Δ	10mer	mass	mass Δ		10mer	mass	mass Δ		10mer	mass	mass Δ	
	CCCCC	1384		TTTTT	1459			CCCCC	1384			CCCCC	1384		
	CCCCC	1399	15	TTTTA	1468	9		CCCCC	1399	15		CCCCC	1408	24	
	CCCCA	1408	9	TTTAA	1477	9		CCCCC	1414	15		CCCCG	1424	16	
	CCCTT	1414	6	TTTGG	1484	7		CCCCG	1424	10		CCCAA	1432	8	
11mers	11mer	mass	mass Δ	11mer	mass	mass Δ		11mer	mass	mass Δ		11mer	mass	mass Δ	
	CCCTA	1423	9	TTTAA	1486	2		CCCTT	1429	5		CCCGA	1448	16	
	CCCTT	1429	6	TTTGA	1493	7		CCCTG	1439	10		CCAAA	1456	8	
	CCCAA	1432	3	TAAAA	1495	2		CTTTT	1444	5		CCCGG	1464	8	
	CCTTA	1438	6	TTAAG	1502	7		CCTTG	1454	10		CCAGA	1472	8	
12mers	12mer	mass	mass Δ	12mer	mass	mass Δ		12mer	mass	mass Δ		12mer	mass	mass Δ	
	CTTTT	1444	6	AAAAA	1504	2		TTTTT	1459	5		CAAAA	1480	8	
	CCTAA	1447	3	TTTGG	1509	5		CCCGG	1464	5		CCGGA	1488	8	
	CTTTA	1453	6	TAAAG	1511	2		CTTTG	1469	5		CAAGG	1496	8	
	CCAAA	1456	3	ATTGG	1518	7		CCTGG	1479	10		AAAAA	1504	8	
13mers	13mer	mass	mass Δ	13mer	mass	mass Δ		13mer	mass	mass Δ		13mer	mass	mass Δ	
	TTTTT	1459	3	AAAAA	1520	2		TTTTG	1484	5		CCGGG	1504	0	
	CTTAA	1462	3	TAAGG	1527	7		CTTGG	1494	10		CAAGG	1512	8	
	TTTTA	1468	6	TTGGG	1534	7		CCGGG	1504	10		AAAGG	1520	8	
	CAATA	1471	3	AAAGG	1536	2		TTTGG	1509	5		ACGGG	1528	8	
14mers	14mer	mass	mass Δ	14mer	mass	mass Δ		14mer	mass	mass Δ		14mer	mass	mass Δ	
	TTTTA	1477	6	ATGGG	1543	7		CTGGG	1519	10		AAAGG	1536	8	
	CAAAA	1480	3	AAGGG	1552	9		TTGGG	1534	16		CGGGG	1544	8	
	TTAAA	1486	6	TGGGG	1559	7		CGGGG	1544	10		AAGGG	1552	8	
	TAAAA	1495	9	AGGGG	1568	9		TGGGG	1559	16		AGGGG	1568	16	
15mers	15mer	mass	mass Δ	15mer	mass	mass Δ		15mer	mass	mass Δ		15mer	mass	mass Δ	
	AAAAA	1504	9	GGGGG	1584	16		GGGGG	1584	25		GGGGG	1584	16	

Table 4 (part 1 of 2). Masses resulting from cleavage of oligonucleotides at specific nucleotides (G, C, A or T, as indicated). Cleavage at G will produce fragments with no internal G residues; depending on the cleavage mechanism there may be a G at the 5' or 3' end of the cleaved mass. In this table G has been omitted from the G cleavage fragments for ease of presentation (thus each fragment could be considered one nucleotide longer); note that addition of a G to each of the G cleavage fragments would have no effect on the mass differences between fragments (mass Δ). Similar considerations obtain for C, A and T cleavage fragments. Two 6mers with the same T cleavage mass are shaded. Masses were calculated by adding nucleotide masses rounded to the nearest whole number (and therefore not accurate, but the pattern of results is unaffected); 61 Daltons, the mass of a phosphate group, was subtracted from all fragments since most cleavage mechanisms will result in removal of one phosphate group.

TABLE 4 (part 2)

Cleavage at G				Cleavage at C				Cleavage at A				Cleavage at T			
6mer	mass	mass Δ		6mer	mass	mass Δ		6mer	mass	mass Δ		6mer	mass	mass Δ	
CCCCCC	1673			TTTTTT	1783			CCCCCC	1673			CCCCCC	1673		
CCCCCT	1688	15		TTTTTA	1772	9		CCCCCT	1688	15		CCCCCA	1697	24	
CCCCCA	1697	9		TTTTAA	1781	9		CCCTTT	1703	15		CCCCCG	1713	16	
CCCTTT	1703	6		TTTTTG	1788	7		CCCTTG	1713	10		CCCCAA	1721	8	
CCCTTA	1712	9		TTTAAA	1790	2		CCCTTT	1718	5		CCCTAG	1737	16	
CCCTTT	1719	6		TTTTAG	1797	7		CCCTG	1728	10		CCCAAA	1745	8	
CCCAAA	1721	3		TTAAAA	1799	2		CCCTTT	1733	5		CCCTGG	1753	8	
CCCTTA	1727	6		TTTAAG	1806	7		CCCTTG	1743	10		CCCAAG	1761	8	
CCCTTT	1733	6		TAAAAA	1808	2		TTTTTC	1748	5		CCAAAA	1769	8	
CCCTAA	1738	3		TTTTGG	1813	5		CCCTGG	1763	5		CCCTGA	1777	8	
CCCTTA	1742	6		TTAAAG	1815	2		CCCTTG	1768	5		CCCAAG	1785	8	
CCCAAA	1745	3		AAAAAA	1817	2		TTTTTT	1783	5		CCCTGG	1793	8	
TTTTTC	1748	3		TTTGGA	1822	5		CCCTGG	1788	5		CAAAAA	1793	0	
CCCTAA	1751	3		AAAAGT	1824	2		TTTTCG	1773	5		CCCAAG	1801	8	
CCCTTA	1757	6		TTAAGG	1831	7		CCCTGG	1783	10		CAAAAG	1809	8	
CCAAAT	1760	3		AAAAAG	1833	2		TTTTTG	1788	5		CCCTGA	1817	8	
TTTTTT	1763	3		TTTGGG	1838	5		CCCTGG	1793	5		AAAAAA	1817	0	
CTTTAA	1766	3		AAAGGT	1840	2		TTTCGG	1798	5		AAAGGG	1825	8	
CCAAAA	1769	3		ATTGGG	1847	7		CTGGGG	1808	10		AAAAAG	1833	8	
TTTTTA	1772	3		AAAAGG	1849	2		TTTTGG	1813	5		CCCTGG	1833	0	
CTTAAA	1775	3		TAAGGG	1856	7		TTGGGG	1823	10		AAAGGG	1841	8	
TTTTAA	1781	6		TTGGGG	1863	7		CCGGGG	1833	10		AAAAAG	1849	8	
TAAAAA	1784	3		AAAGGG	1865	2		TTTTGG	1838	6		ACGGGG	1857	8	
TTTAAA	1790	6		AGGGGT	1872	7		TGGGGC	1848	10		AAAGGG	1865	8	
CAAAAA	1793	3		AGGGGG	1881	9		TTGGGG	1853	15		GGGGGC	1873	8	
TTAAAA	1799	6		GGGGGT	1888	7		GGGGGC	1873	10		AAAGGG	1881	8	
TAAAAA	1808	9		AGGGGG	1897	9		GGGGGT	1888	15		AGGGGG	1897	16	
AAAAAA	1817	9		GGGGGG	1913	16		GGGGGG	1913	25		GGGGGG	1913	16	

7mer	mass	mass Δ		7mer	mass	mass Δ		7mer	mass	mass Δ		7mer	mass	mass Δ	
CCCCCCC	1862			TTTTTTT	2087			CCCCCCC	1862			CCCCCCC	1862		
CCCCCCT	1877	15		TTTTTTA	2076	9		CCCCCCT	1877	15		CCCCCCA	1888	24	
CCCCCCA	1888	9		TTTTTAA	2085	9		CCCCCTT	1892	15		CCCCCGG	2002	16	
CCCTTTT	1892	6		TTTTTTG	2092	7		CCCCCGG	2002	10		CCCCCAA	2010	8	
CCCTCTA	2001	9		TTTTTAA	2094	2		CCCTTTT	2007	5		CCCCCGA	2026	16	
CCCTTTT	2007	6		TTTTTGA	2101	7		CCCTCTG	2017	10		CCCCCAA	2034	8	
CCCTCAA	2010	3		TTTTTAA	2103	2		CCCTTTT	2022	5		CCCCCGG	2042	8	
CCCTTTA	2016	6		TTTTAAG	2110	7		CCCTCTG	2032	10		CCCTAAG	2050	8	
CCCTTTT	2022	6		TTAAAAA	2112	2		CCCTTTT	2037	5		CCCAAAA	2058	8	
CCCTTAA	2025	3		GGTTTTT	2117	5		CCCCCGG	2042	5		CCCGGGA	2066	8	
CCCTTTA	2031	6		TTTAAAG	2119	2		CCCTTTG	2047	5		CCCAAGG	2074	8	
CCCAAAA	2034	3		TAAAAAA	2121	2		CTTTTTT	2052	5		CCAAAAA	2082	8	
CCTTTTT	2037	3		TTTTTGA	2126	5		CCCTCTG	2057	5		CCCGGGG	2082	0	
CCCTTAA	2040	3		TTAAAGA	2128	2		CTTTTTG	2062	9		CCCGGAA	2090	8	
CCTTTTA	2048	6		AAAAAAA	2130	2		TTTTTTT	2067	5		CCCGGGA	2098	8	
CCCAAAAT	2049	3		TTTGGA	2135	5		CCCTTTG	2072	0		CCCGGGA	2106	8	
CTTTTTT	2052	3		AAAAAGT	2137	2		CTTTTTT	2077	5		CAAAAAA	2106	0	
CCTTTTA	2055	3		GGGTTTT	2142	5		CCCCGGG	2082	5		CCAAAGG	2114	8	
CCCAAAA	2058	3		TTAAAGG	2144	2		CTTTGGG	2087	5		CAAAAGG	2122	8	
TTTTTGA	2061	3		AAAAAAG	2146	2		TTTTTTT	2092	5		CCCCGGG	2122	0	
CCTTAAA	2064	3		TTTGGA	2151	5		CCCTGGG	2097	5		CCGGGAA	2130	8	
TTTTTTT	2067	3		AAAAGGT	2153	2		CTTTTGG	2102	5		AAAAAAA	2130	0	
TTTTAAC	2070	3		AATTGGG	2160	7		CCTTGGG	2112	10		AAACCGG	2138	8	
TAAAAAC	2073	3		AAAAAGG	2162	2		GGTTTTT	2117	5		AAAAAAG	2146	8	
ATTTTTT	2076	3		GGGGTTT	2167	5		CCCCGGG	2122	5		CCGGGGA	2146	0	
TTTAAAC	2079	3		TAAAGGG	2169	2		CTTTGGG	2127	5		AAACGGG	2154	8	
CCAAAAA	2082	3		TTGGGGA	2176	7		TGGGGCC	2137	10		AAAAAAG	2162	8	
AATTTTT	2085	3		AAAAGGG	2178	2		GGGTTTT	2142	5		CCGGGGG	2162	0	
CTTAAAA	2088	3		AAGGGGT	2185	7		CTTGGGG	2152	10		AAACGGG	2170	8	
AAATTTT	2094	6		GGGGGTT	2192	7		GGGGGCC	2162	10		AAAAAGG	2178	8	
CTAAAAA	2097	3		AAAGGGG	2194	2		GGGGTTT	2167	5		AGGGGGC	2186	8	
AAAAATT	2103	6		AGGGGGT	2201	7		GGGGGTC	2177	10		AAAAAGG	2194	8	
CAAAAAA	2106	3		AAGGGGG	2210	9		GGGGGTT	2192	15		CGGGGGG	2202	8	
AAAAAAT	2112	6		GGGGGGT	2217	7		CGGGGGG	2202	10		AAGGGGG	2210	8	
AAAAAAT	2121	9		AGGGGGG	2226	9		GGGGGGT	2217	15		AGGGGGG	2226	16	
AAAAAAA	2130	9		GGGGGGG	2242	16		GGGGGGG	2242	25		GGGGGGG	2242	16	

Table 4 (part 2). Masses resulting from cleavage of oligonucleotides at specific nucleotides (G,C,A or T, as indicated). See legend to part 1 of this Table. Note that the two 5mers with the same T cleavage mass (part 1) continue to propagate through the T cleavage masses (shaded).

E. Serial Cleavage

The preceding discussion focuses primarily on the use of one cleavage reaction with any given modified polynucleotide. However, it is also possible and it is a further aspect of this invention, to serially cleave a polynucleotide in which two or more natural nucleotides have been replaced with two or more modified nucleotides which have different cleavage characteristics. That is, a polynucleotide that contains two or more types of modified nucleotides, either fully or partially substituted, can be cleaved by serial exposure to different cleavage conditions, either chemical, physical or both. One preferred embodiment of this approach is tandem mass spectrometry, where fragmented molecular species produced by one procedure can be retained in a suitable mass spectrometer (e.g., Fourier-transform ion cyclotron resonance mass spectrometer or ion trap mass spectrometer), for subsequent exposure to a second physical/chemical procedure that results in activation and cleavage at a second modified nucleotide. The product ions may be subjected to a third and even a fourth cleavage condition directed to specific modifications on a third and fourth nucleotide to enable observation of precursor-product relationships between the input (precursor) ions and those generated during each round of cleavage. The use of a continuous or stepwise gradient of cleavage conditions of increasing efficiency may be used to enhance the elucidation of precursor-product relationships between ions.

The production of a polynucleotide containing multiple modified nucleotides reduces the need to perform multiple polymerizations on the same template to produce a set of polynucleotides each with a different single modified nucleotide; i.e., one for cleavage at A, one for G, one for T and one for C. Also, the serial application of cleavage procedures specific for different nucleotides of a single polynucleotide enhances detection of precursor-product relationships, which is useful for determining DNA sequence. Figure 21 shows the production of a polynucleotide modified by complete substitution of riboGTP for dGTP and 5'-amino-TTP for dTTP followed by cleavage with base, which results in cleavage at G, or cleavage with acid, which results in cleavage at T. Subsequent treatment of the base cleaved fragments with acid or visa-versa results in further fragmentation into double (G and

T) cleaved fragments. This would be useful, for example and without limitation, for identifying a variance at position 27 (dA) of the sequence (Fig. 21). That is, as can be seen in Fig. 21, cleavage at G alone produces the fragment ACTTCACCG (position 27 is highlighted), which contains two dA residues. A change in mass of this fragment of -24 Da, indicating an A to C change, would not permit determination of which of the two dA residues changed to dC. Similarly, cleavage at T alone to give the fragment TCACCGGCACCA, which contains three dA residues also prevents determination of which dA was changed. However, double cleavage at G and T produces the fragment TCACCG which undergoes the -24 Da mass shift and, because it only contains one dA, allows definitive assignment of the variant nucleotide. Schemes using this approach to precisely detect variances at other nucleotides will be apparent to those skilled in the art based on the disclosures herein and are within the scope of this invention.

A further aspect of this invention is a algorithm or algorithms which permit the use of computers to directly infer DNA sequence or the presence of variances from mass spectrometry.

F. Parallel Cleavage

It is likewise possible, and it is a further aspect of this invention that a polynucleotide which has been substituted with two or more modified nucleotides each of which is susceptible to a different cleavage procedure, may be analyzed in parallel fashion. That is, one can divide the polynucleotide into aliquots and expose each aliquot to a cleavage procedure specific for one of the modified nucleotides. This saves the effort of performing independent polymerization reactions for each of the modified nucleotides. This approach can be used to generate sequence ladders, or to generate complete cleavage products for variance detection. As reviewed in Example 5, complete cleavage at two different nucleotides (performed independently), followed by mass spectrometry, substantially increases the efficiency of variance detection compared to cleavage at a single nucleotide.

For example, consider a single polynucleotide substituted with ribo-A, 5'-amino-C, and 5'-(bridging) thio-G nucleotides. All three modified nucleotides are

known to be incorporated by polymerases. Sequence ladders can be produced from such a modified polynucleotide by exposure of one aliquot to acid, resulting in cleavage at C; exposure of a second aliquot to base, resulting in cleavage at A; and exposure of a third aliquot to silver or mercury salts, resulting in cleavage at G. It is possible that a polynucleotide produced with the three above modified nucleotides plus 4'-C-acyl T could also (separately) be exposed to UV light to produce cleavage at T, resulting in a complete set of sequencing reactions from a single polymerization product.

G. Combination of modified nucleotide cleavage and chain termination

Another application of modified nucleotide incorporation and cleavage is to combine it with a chain termination procedure. By incorporating one or more modified nucleotides in a polymerization procedure (for example but without limitation, modified A) with a different chain terminating nucleotide, such as a dideoxy-G, a Sanger-type ladder of fragments terminating at the dideoxy-nucleotide can be generated. Subsequent exposure of this ladder of fragments to a chemical that cleaves at the modified A will result in further fragmentation, with the resulting fragments terminating 5' to A and 3' to either A (most of the time) or G (in one fragment per chain termination product). Comparison of the resulting fragment set with a fragment set produced solely by substitution and cleavage at the modified nucleotide (A) will provide an instructive comparison: all the fragments will be the same except for the presence of extra fragments in the chain terminating set which end at 3' G, which, on mass spectrometric analysis would provide the mass (and by inference the nucleotide content) of all fragments in which an A is followed (directly or after some interval) by a G, without an intervening A. Derivation of similar data using other chain terminating nucleotides and other cleavage nucleotides will cumulatively provide a set of data useful for determining the sequence of the polymerization products.

H. Cleavage resistant modified nucleotide substitution and mass shifting nucleotides

The preceding embodiments of this invention relate primarily to the substitution into a polynucleotide of one or more modified nucleotides which have the effect of enhancing the susceptibility of the polynucleotide to cleavage at the

site(s) of incorporation of the modified nucleotide(s) in comparison to unmodified nucleotides. It is entirely possible, however, and it is yet another aspect of this invention, that a modified nucleotide which, when incorporated into a polynucleotide, reduces susceptibility to cleavage at the site of incorporation of the modified

5 nucleotide compared to unmodified sites. In this scenario, cleavage would then occur at unmodified sites in the polynucleotide. Alternatively, a combination of cleavage-resistant and cleavage-sensitive modified nucleotides may be incorporated into the same polynucleotide to optimize the differential between cleavable and non-cleavable sites.

10 An example of a modified nucleotide which imparts this type of resistance to cleavage is the 2'-fluoro derivative of any natural nucleotide. The 2'-fluoro derivative has been shown to be substantially less susceptible to fragmentation in a mass spectrometer than unsubstituted natural nucleotides.

As shown in Table 2, the mass differences between the naturally occurring

15 nucleotides range from 9 to 40 Da and are sufficient for resolving single nucleotide differences in all fragments of 25mer size and under. However, it may be desirable to increase the mass difference between the four nucleotides or between any pair of nucleotides to simplify their detection by mass spectrometry. This is illustrated for dA and its 2-chloroadenine analog in Table 2. That is, substitution with 2-

20 chloroadenine, mass 347.7, increases the A-T mass difference from 9 Da to 42.3 Da, the A-C difference from 24 to 57.3 Da and the A-G difference from 16 to 17.3 Da. Other mass-shifting nucleotide analogs are known in the art and it is an aspect of this invention that they may be used to advantage with the mass spectrometric methods of this invention.

25 I. Applications

A number of applications of the methods of the present invention are described below. It is understood that these descriptions are exemplary only and are not intended to be nor are they to be construed as being limiting on the scope of this invention in any manner whatsoever. Thus, other applications of the methods

30 described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art based on the disclosures herein; such applications are within the scope of this invention.

a. Full substitution, full extension and complete cleavage.

In one aspect of the present invention at least one of the four nucleotides of which the target polynucleotide is composed is completely replaced with a modified polynucleotide (either on one strand using primer extension, or on both strands using a DNA amplification procedure), a full length polynucleotide is made and
5 substantially complete cleavage is effected. The result will be cleavage of modified polynucleotides into fragments averaging four nucleotides in length. This is so because the abundance of A, T, G and C nucleotides is roughly equal in most genomes and their distribution is semi-random. Therefore a particular nucleotide occurs approximately once every four nucleotides in a natural polynucleotide
10 sequence. There will, of course, be a distribution of sizes, with considerable deviation from the average size due to the non-random nature of the sequence of biological polynucleotides, and the unequal amounts of A:T vs. G:C base pairs in different genomes. The extended primer (whether primer extension or amplification) will not be cleaved until the first occurrence of a modified nucleotide after the end of
15 the primer, resulting in fragments of greater than 15 nt (i.e., greater than the length of the primer). Often, these primer-containing fragments will be the largest or among the largest produced. This can be advantageous in the design of genotyping assays. That is, primers can be designed so that the first occurrence of a polymorphic nucleotide position is after the primer. After cleavage, the genotype can be
20 determined from the length of the primer-containing fragment. This is illustrated in Figs. 27 – 32. Due to this variation in the size of analyte masses it is essential that the mass spectrometer be capable of detecting polynucleotides ranging up to 20mers, or even 30mers, with a level of resolution and mass accuracy consistent with unambiguous determination of the nucleotide content of each mass. As
25 discussed below, this requirement has different implications depending on whether the nucleotide sequence of the analyte polynucleotide is already known (as will generally be the case with variance detection or genotyping) or not (as will be the case with de novo DNA sequencing).

i. Applications to variance detection

30 Variance detection is usually performed on an analyte DNA or cDNA sequence for which at least one reference sequence is available. The concern of variance detection is to examine a set of corresponding sequences from different

individuals (sample sequences) in order to identify sequence differences between the reference and sample sequences or among the sample sequences. Such sequence variances will be identified and characterized by the existence of different masses among the cleaved sample polynucleotides.

- 5 Depending on the scope of the variance detection procedure, analyte fragments of different lengths may be optimal. For genotyping, it is desirable that one primer be close to the know variant site.

- Generally an analyte fragment of at least 50 nucleotides, more preferably at least 100 nucleotides and still more preferably at least 200 nucleotides will be
- 10 produced by polymerase incorporation of modified nucleotides (either A, G, C or T), followed by cleavage at the sites of modified nucleotide incorporation, and mass spectrometric analysis of the resulting products. Given the frequency of nucleotide variances (estimated at one in 200 to one in 1000 nucleotides in the human genome), there will generally be zero or only one or two cleavage fragments that
- 15 differ among any two samples. The fragments that differ among the samples may range in size from a monomer to a 10mer, less frequently up to a 20mer or, rarely, a fragment of even greater length; however, as noted above, the average cleavage fragment will be about 4 nucleotides. Knowledge of the reference sequence can be used to avoid cleavage schemes that would generate very large cleavage products,
- 20 and more generally to enhance the detectability of any sequence variation that may exist among the samples by computing the efficiency of variance detection at each nucleotide position for all possible cleavage schemes, as outlined below. However, large sequences are not really a problem when a reference sequence is available and the analyte fragment length is only several hundred nucleotides. This is
- 25 because it is extremely unlikely that any analyte fragment will contain two large cleavage masses that are close in size. In general, if there are only a few large fragments they can be easily identified and, as Table 5 shows, even with a MALDI instrument capable of mass resolution of only 1000, the most difficult substitution, an A <-> T change resulting in a 9 amu shift can be detected in a 27mer.

TABLE 5

Nucleotide substitution	Δ (Da)	Resolving Power of MS Instrument (FWHM)			
		1,000	1,500	2,000	10,000
		Maximum fragment in which Δ at left is resolvable			
C \leftrightarrow G	40	123 nt	184 nt	246 nt	1,230
G \leftrightarrow T	25	77 nt	116 nt	154 nt	770
A \leftrightarrow C	24	74 nt	111 nt	148 nt	740
A \leftrightarrow G	16	49 nt	74 nt	98 nt	490
C \leftrightarrow T	15	46 nt	69 nt	92 nt	460
A \leftrightarrow T	9	27 nt	41 nt	55 nt	270

Table 5. This table summarizes the relation between mass spectrometer resolution and nucleotide changes in determining the maximum size fragment in which a given base change can be identified. The maximum size DNA fragment (in nucleotides; nt) in which a base substitution can theoretically be resolved is provided in the four columns at right (bottom 6 rows) for each possible nucleotide substitution, listed in column at left. As is evident from the table, the mass difference created by each substitution (Δ , measured in Daltons) and the resolving power of the mass spectrometer determine the size limit of fragments that can be successfully analyzed. Commercially available MALDI instruments can resolve between 1 part in 1,000 to 1 part in 5,000 (FWHM) while available ESI instruments can resolve 1 part in 10,000. Modified ESI MS instruments are capable of at least 10-fold greater mass resolution. (The theoretical resolution numbers in the table do not take into consideration limitations on actual resolution imposed by the isotopic heterogeneity of molecular species and the technical difficulty of efficiently obtaining large ions.) FWHM: full width at half maximal height, is a standard measure of mass resolution. (For further information on resolution and mass accuracy in MS see, for example: Siuzdak, G. Mass Spectrometry for Biotechnology, Academic Press, San Diego, 1996.)

In order to select experimental conditions for variance detection that maximize the likelihood of success, one can use the reference sequence to predict the fragments that would be produced by cleavage at A, G, C or T in advance of experimental work. Based on such an analysis, the optimal modified nucleotide substitution and
5 cleavage scheme can be selected for each DNA or cDNA sequence that is to be analyzed. Such an analysis can be performed as follows:

- For each nucleotide of the test polynucleotide, substitute each of the three other possible nucleotides and generate an associated mass change. For example, if at position 1 the test polynucleotide begins with A, then generate
10 hypothetical polynucleotides beginning with T, G and C. Next move to position two of the test sequence and again make all three possible substitutions, and so forth for all positions of the test polynucleotide. If the test polynucleotide is 100 nucleotides in length then altogether 300 new hypothetical fragments will be generated by this procedure on one strand and
15 another 300 on the complementary strand. Each set of three substitutions can then be analyzed together.
- Generate the masses that would be produced by cleaving at T, C, G or A each of the three new hypothetical test fragments obtained by the substitutions of T, C or G for A at position 1. Compare these mass sets with
20 the set of masses obtained from the reference sequence (which in our example has A at position 1). For each of the four cleavages (T, C, G, A), determine whether the disappearance of an existing mass or the generation of a new mass would create a difference in the total set of masses. If a difference is created, determine whether it is a single difference or two
25 differences (i.e. a disappearance of one mass and an appearance of another). Also determine the magnitude of the mass difference compared to the set of masses generated by cleavage of the reference sequence. Perform this same analysis for each of the 100 positions of the test sequence, in each case examining the consequences of each of the four possible base-specific cleavages, i.e., for DNA, at A, C, G and T.
30
- Generate a correlation score for each of the four possible base-specific cleavages. The correlation score increases in proportion to the fraction of the

300 possible deviations from the reference sequence that produce one or more mass changes (i.e., a higher correlation score for two mass differences), and in proportion to the extent of the mass differences (greater mass differences score higher than small ones).

- 5 • In the case of primer extension, the analysis is performed for one strand; in the case of amplification, the computation is carried out on the products of cleavage of both strands.

The above method can be extended to the use of combinations of substitution and cleavage. For example, T cleavage on each of the strands of the
10 analyte polynucleotide (either independent or simultaneous cleavage of both strands at T), or cleavage at T and A on one strand (again, either independent or simultaneous cleavage of both strands), or cleavage of one strand with T and cleavage of the complementary strand with A, and so forth. Based on the generated correlation scores for each of the different schemes, an optimal scheme can be
15 determined in advance of experimental work.

A computer program can be constructed to accomplish the above task. Such a program can also be extended to encompass the analysis of experimental cleavage masses. That is, the program can be constructed to compare all the masses in the experimentally determined mass spectrum with the cleavage masses
20 expected from cleavage of the reference sequence and to flag any new or missing masses. If there are new or missing masses, the experimental set of masses can be compared with the masses generated in the computational analysis of all the possible nucleotide substitutions, insertions or deletions associated with the experimental cleavage conditions. However, nucleotide substitutions are about ten
25 times more common than insertions or deletions, so an analysis of substitutions alone should be useful. In one embodiment, the computational analysis data for all possible nucleotide insertions, deletions and substitutions can be stored in a look-up table. The set of computational masses that matches the experimental data then provides the sequence of the new variant sequence or, at a minimum, the restricted
30 set of possible sequences of the new variant sequence. (The location and chemical nature of a substitution may not be uniquely specified by one cleavage experiment.) To resolve all ambiguity concerning the nucleotide sequence of a variant sample

may require, in some cases, another substitution and cleavage experiment (see Section E, Serial Cleavage and DNA sequencing applications described below), or may be resolved by some other sequencing method (e.g. conventional sequencing methods or sequencing by hybridization). It may be advantageous to routinely

5 perform multiple different substitution and cleavage experiments on all samples to maximize the fraction of variances which can be precisely assigned to a specific nucleotide.

The inventors have performed a computational analysis of natural polynucleotides of 50, 100, 150, 200 and 250 nucleotides and discovered that

10 combinations of two nucleotide cleavages (for example cleave at A on one strand and G on the complementary strand) result in 99-100% detection efficiency, considering all possible substitutions up to 250 nt. Potentially useful but sometimes less than 100% sensitive analyses can be performed on longer fragments up to 1000 nt. See Example 5 for details of this analysis.

15 **ii. Applications to DNA sequencing**

A still further aspect of this invention utilizes the chemical methods disclosed herein together with mass spectrometry to determine the complete nucleotide sequence of a polynucleotide de novo. The procedure involves the same reactions described above for variance detection; i.e., total replacement of one of

20 the four nucleotides in a polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide followed by substantially complete cleavage of the modified polynucleotide at each and every point of occurrence of the modified nucleotide and then determination of the masses of the fragments obtained. In this case, however, it may be necessary to routinely perform four sets of cleavage reactions, a different natural nucleotide being replaced

25 with a modified nucleotide in each reaction so that all four natural nucleotides are in turn replaced with modified nucleotides and the resultant modified polynucleotides are cleaved and the masses of the cleavage products determined. It may also be necessary to employ one or more multiple nucleotide substitutions, as discussed above, to resolve sequencing ambiguities that may arise. While the number of

30 reactions necessary per sequence determination experiment is thus similar to that required for Maxam-Gilbert or Sanger sequencing, the method of this invention has the advantages of eliminating radiolabels or dyes, providing superior speed and

accuracy, permitting automation and eliminating artifacts, including compressions, associated with Maxam-Gilbert and Sanger sequencing or any other gel-based methods. This latter consideration may be of preeminent importance as mass spectrometry will currently allow analysis of cleavage reactions in a matter of
5 seconds to minutes (and, in the future, milliseconds), compared to hours for current gel electrophoretic procedures. Furthermore, the inherent accuracy of mass spectrometry, together with the control over the construction of the modified polynucleotide that can be achieved using the methods of this invention will sharply
10 reduce the need for sequencing redundancy. A representative total sequencing experiment is set forth in the Examples section, below.

The process of inferring DNA sequence from the pattern of masses obtained by cleavage of analyte molecules is considerably more complicated than the process for detecting and inferring the chemical nature of sequence variances. In the case of sequencing by complete cleavage and mass analysis the following must be
15 accomplished:

- Determine the length of the sequence. From the experimentally determined masses infer the nucleotide content of each cleavage fragment as discussed elsewherein herein. This analysis is performed for each of the four sets of experimental cleavage masses. The shortcomings of this analysis are that
20 two or more fragments (particularly short ones) may have identical mass, and therefore may be counted as one, leading to an undercounting of the length of the sequence. However, this is not a serious experimental problem in that the fragment masses can be summed and compared for all four cleavages; if they do not correspond then there must be two or more overlapping masses
25 among the fragments. Thus, the determination of all fragment masses in all four cleavage reactions essentially eliminates this source of potential error. First, the set of cleavage masses that gives the greatest length can be taken as a starting point. Next, the nucleotide content of all of the masses in the other three cleavage reactions can be tested for whether they are compatible
30 with the nucleotide content of any of the masses associated with the greatest length cleavage set. If they are not compatible, then there must be undercounting even in the set associated with the greatest length.

Comparison of sequence contents will generally allow the uncounted bases to be identified and the full length of the sequence to thus be determined.

- The next aspect of the analysis may include: (a) determining the intervals at which A, C, G and T nucleotides must occur based on the sizes of respective cleavage products; (b) analyze the nucleotide content of the largest fragments from each cleavage set to identify sets of nucleotides that belong together; (c) compare nucleotide content of fragments between the different sets to determine which fragments are compatible (i.e. one could be subsumed within the other or they could overlap) or incompatible (no nucleotides in common); (d) begin to integrate the results of these different analyses to restrict the number of ways in which fragments can be pieced together. The elimination of possibilities is as useful as the identification of possible relationships. A detailed illustration of the logic required to work out the sequence of a short oligonucleotide is provided in Example 4.

One way to provide additional information about local sequence relationships is to reduce the extent of nucleotide substitution or the completeness of cleavage (see below) in order to obtain sets of incompletely (but still substantially) cleaved fragments. The mass analysis of such fragments may be extremely useful, in conjunction with the completely cleaved fragment sets, for identifying which fragments are adjacent to each other. A limited amount of such information is needed to complete the entire puzzle of assembling the cleavage fragments into a continuous sequence.

Three additional ways to augment the inference of DNA sequence from analysis of complete substitution and cleavage masses are: (a) analysis of dinucleotide cleavage masses (see below), which can provide a framework for compartmentalizing the small masses associated with mononucleotide substitution and cleavage into fewer intermediate size collections. Dinucleotide cleavage also provides the location of dinucleotides sequences at intervals along the entire sequence in fact, dinucleotide cleavage at all possible dinucleotides is an alternate DNA sequencing method; (b) mononucleotide substitution and cleavage of the complementary strand using one or more modified nucleotides which can provide valuable complementary information on fragment length and overlaps; (c)

combination substitution and cleavage schemes employing simultaneous di- and mononucleotide cleavages or two different simultaneous mononucleotide cleavages can provide unambiguous information on sequence order.

In the foregoing descriptions, it has been assumed that the modified nucleotide is selectively more susceptible to chemical cleavage under appropriate conditions than the three unmodified nucleotides. However, an alternative approach to effecting mononucleotide cleavage is to use three modified nucleotides that are resistant to cleavage under chemical or physical conditions sufficient to induce cleavage at an unmodified, natural nucleotide. Thus, in another aspect of the present invention, mononucleotide cleavage may be effected by selective cleavage at an unmodified nucleotide. One chemical modification of nucleotides which has been shown to make them more stable to fragmentation during mass spectrometric analysis is the 2'-fluoro modification. (Ono, T., et al., Nucleic Acids Research, 1997, 25: 4581-4588.) The utility of 2'-fluoro substituted DNA for extending the accessible mass range for Sanger sequencing reactions (which is generally limited by fragmentation) has been recognized, but it is an aspect of the present invention that this chemistry also has utility in effecting nucleotide specific cleavage by fully substituting three modified nucleotides that are resistant to a specific physical or chemical cleavage procedure. Another chemical modification that has been shown to increase the stability of nucleotides during MALDI-MS is the 7-deaza analog of adenine and guanine. (Schneider, K. and Chait, B. T., Nucleic Acids Research, 1995, 23: 1570-1575.)

In another aspect of this invention, cleavage-resistant modified nucleotides may be used in conjunction with cleavage-sensitive modified nucleotides to effect a heightened degree of selectivity in the cleavage step.

III. Applications to genotyping

As DNA sequence data accumulates from various species there is increasing demand for accurate, high throughput, automatable and inexpensive methods for determining the status of a specific nucleotide or nucleotides in a biological sample, where variation at a specific nucleotide (either polymorphism or mutation) has previously been discovered. This procedure - the determination of the nucleotide at a particular location in a DNA sequence - is referred to as genotyping.

Genotyping is in many respects a special case of DNA sequencing (or variance detection where only one position is being queried), but the sequence of only one nucleotide position is determined. Because only one nucleotide position must be assayed, genotyping methods do not entirely overlap with DNA sequencing

5 methods. The methods of this invention provide the basis for novel and useful genotyping procedures. The basis of these methods is polymerization of a polynucleotide spanning the polymorphic site. The polymerization may be either by the PCR method or by primer extension, but is preferably by PCR. The polymerization is performed in the presence of three natural nucleotides and one

10 chemically modified nucleotide, such that the chemically modified nucleotide corresponds to one of the nucleotides at the polymorphic or mutant site. For example if an A/T polymorphism is to be genotyped the cleavable nucleotide could be either A or T. If a G/A polymorphism is to be genotyped the cleavable nucleotide could be either A or G. Conversely the assay could be set up for the complementary

15 strand, where T and C occur opposite A and G. Subsequently the polymerization product is chemically cleaved by treatment with acid, base or other cleavage scheme. This results in two products from the two possible alleles, one longer than the other as a result of the presence of the cleavable nucleotide at the polymorphic site in one allele but not the other. A mass change, but not a length change, also

20 occurs on the opposite strand. One constraint is that one of the primers used for producing the polynucleotide must be located such that the first occurrence of the cleavable nucleotide after the end of the primer is at the polymorphic site. This usually requires one of the primers to be close to the polymorphic site. An alternative method is to simultaneously incorporate two cleavable nucleotides, one

25 for a polymorphic nucleotide on the (+) strand, one for a polymorphic site on the (-) strand. For example, one might incorporate cleavable dA on the (+) strand (to detect an A-G polymorphism) and cleavable dC on the (-) strand (to positively detect the presence of the G allele on the (+) strand. In this case, it may be advantageous to have both primers close to the variant site. The two allelic products of different

30 size can be separated by electrophoretic means, such as, without limitation, capillary electrophoresis. They could also be separated by mass using, without limitation, mass spectrometry. In addition, a FRET assay can be used to detect them, as

described below. Any of these three assay formats is compatible with multiplexing by means known in the art.

- One way to perform a FRET detection for the presence or absence of the allelic cleavage product is to introduce a probe with a fluor or a quencher moiety such that the probe hybridizes differentially to the cleaved strand (representing one allele) vs the non-cleaved strand (representing the other allele; see Fig. 2 for illustration of several possible schemes). Such differential hybridization is readily achievable because one strand is longer than the other by at least one, and often several nucleotides. If a fluor or quenching group is also placed on the primer used to produce the cleavable polynucleotide (by PCR or primer extension) such that an appropriate FRET interaction between the moiety on the probe and the moiety on the primer exists, i.e., the absorbing and emitting wavelengths of the two moieties are matched, and the distance and orientation between the two moieties is optimized by methods known to those skilled in the art, then a powerful signal will be present with one allele but not the other when the probe and primer are heated at the temperature that affords maximal hybridization discrimination. Ideally the probe is synthesized in a manner that takes maximal advantage of the different length of the cleaved and non-cleaved alleles. For example the primer should hybridize to the region that is removed by cleavage in one allele but is present in the other allele.
- When selecting primers for the PCR or primer extension one experimental design consideration would be to locate the primer so as to maximize the length difference between the two alleles. Other means of maximizing the discrimination would include the use of a "molecular beacon" strategy where the ends of the probe are complementary, and form a stem, except in the presence of the non-cleaved allele where the non-cleaved segment is complementary to the stem of the probe and therefore effectively competes with the formation of intramolecular stems in the probe molecule (Figs. 32 and 33).

- The above FRET methods can be performed in a single tube, for example, as follows: (1) PCR; (2) addition of cleavage reagent (and heat if necessary); (3) addition of the probe; and (4) temperature ramping if necessary in an instrument such as the ABI Prism which is capable of excitation and fluorescence detection in 96 wells.

Another way to produce a FRET signal that discriminates the two variant alleles is to incorporate a nucleotide with a dye that interacts with the dye on the primer. The key to achieving differential FRET is that the dye modified nucleotide must first occur (after the 3' end of the primer) beyond the polymorphic site so that, after cleavage, the nucleotide dye of one allele (cleaved) will no longer be in within the requisite resonance producing distance of the primer dye while, in the other (uncleaved) allele, the proper distance will be maintained and FRET will occur. The only disadvantage of this method is that it requires a purification step to remove unincorporated dye molecules that can produce a background signal which might interfere with the FRET detection. A non-limiting example of the experimental steps involved in carrying out this method are: (1) PCR with dye-labeled primer and either a cleavable modified nucleotide with also carrier a dye or one cleavable modified nucleotide and one dye-labeled nucleotide. The dye can be on the cleavable nucleotide if the cleavage mechanism results in separation of the dye from the primer as, for instance, in the case of 5'-amino substitution which results in cleavage proximal to the sugar and base of the nucleotide; (2) cleavage at the cleavable modified nucleotide; (3) purification to remove free nucleotides; and (4) FRET detection.

As noted earlier in this disclosure, we have demonstrated that polynucleotides containing 7-nitro-7-deaza-2'-deoxyadenosine in place of 2'-deoxyadenosine may be specifically and completely cleaved using piperidine/TCEP/Tris base. There are many other examples of chemistries where such PCR amplification and chemical cleavage may be possible. In a putative genotyping assay, a PCR reaction is carried out with one cleavable nucleotide analogue along with three other nucleotides. The PCR primers may be designed such that the polymorphic base is near one of the primers (P) and there is no cleavable base between the primer and the polymorphic base. If the cleavable base is one of the polymorphic bases, the P-containing cleavage product from this allele is expected to be shorter than the product from the other allele. The schematic presentation (Fig 27) and experimental data (Figs. 28 to 31) are examples of this arrangement. If the cleavable base is different from either of the polymorphic bases, the P-containing fragment would have the same length, but different molecular weight for the two alleles. In this case,

Mass Spectrometry would be the preferred analytical tool; although we had observed that oligonucleotides with one single base difference may migrate differently when analyzed by capillary electrophoresis. In one specific example, a 82bp fragment of Transferrin Receptor gene was amplified by PCR using 7-nitro-7-deaza-2'-deoxyadenosine in place of 2'-deoxyadenosine. The polymorphic base pair is A:T to G:C. The PCR amplification generated fully substituted product in similar yields to that of natural DNA (Figure 28). MALDI-TOF Mass Spectrometry analysis revealed the polymorphism in two regions of the spectra. The first between 7000 Da and 9200 Da and the second between 3700 Da and 4600 Da (Figure 30, panel A). The first region demonstrated the difference in primer-containing fragments of different lengths (Figure 30, panel B). The second region showed the opposite strand of DNA containing the polymorphism that have the same length but different mass (Figure 30, panel C). The common fragments between the two alleles may serve as mass references. Capillary electrophoresis analysis may also be used (Fig. 31). Mobility difference between the two fragments of different length was easily detected in the test sample, as expected. In addition, mobility difference between two polymorphic fragments (11nt) of same length but one different base (C vs. T) was observed, providing supporting evidence from the opposite strand. Fig. 32 illustrates schemes for FRET detection of the same polymorphic site.

b. Full substitution, full extension and complete cleavage at dinucleotides

In another aspect of the present invention, two of the four nucleotides of which the subject polynucleotide is composed are completely replaced with modified nucleotides (either on one strand using primer extension, or on both strands using a DNA amplification procedure) and substantially complete cleavage is then effected preferentially at the site of dinucleotides involving the two different modified nucleotides. Generally, given the steric constraints of most cleavage mechanisms, the two modified nucleotides will be cleaved only when they occur in a specific order. For example if T and C are modified, the sequence 5' TpC 3' would be cleaved but 5' CpT 3' would not (5' and 3' indicate the polarity of the polynucleotide strand and p indicates an internal phosphate group).

The rationale for dinucleotide cleavage is that mononucleotide cleavage is not ideally suited to the analysis of polynucleotides longer than 300 to 400 nucleotides because the number of fragments that must be detected and resolved by the mass spectrometer may become limiting and the likelihood of coincidental occurrence of two or more cleavage fragments with the same mass increases and begins to limit the efficiency of the method. This latter problem is especially acute with respect to the occurrence of mono-, di-, tri- and tetranucleotides of the same composition which can mask the appearance or disappearance of fragments because MS is not quantitative. In contrast, capillary electrophoresis, while not providing mass and thereby nucleotide content, is a quantitative method that allows detection of variation in the numbers of di-, tri- and tetranucleotides.

Cleavage at modified dinucleotides should result in fragments averaging sixteen nucleotides in length. This is because the abundance of any dinucleotide, given four nucleotides, is 4^2 , which equals 16, assuming nucleotide frequencies are equal and there is no biological selection imposed on any class of dinucleotides (i.e. their occurrence is random). Neither of these assumptions is completely accurate, however, so there will in actuality be a wide size distribution of cleavage masses, with considerable deviation in the average size mass depending on which nucleotide pair is selected for substitution and cleavage. However, available information concerning the frequency of various dinucleotides in mammalian, invertebrate and prokaryotic genomes can be used to select appropriate dinucleotides. It is well known, for example, that 5' CpG 3' dinucleotides are underrepresented in mammalian genomes; they can be avoided if relatively frequent cleavage intervals are desired.

25 I. Applications to variance detection

If the sequence of the analyte polynucleotide is known, then an optimal dinucleotide cleavage scheme can be selected based on analysis of the masses of predicted cleavage fragments. For example, cleavage fragments that fall within the size range optimal for analysis by mass spectrometry can be selected by analysis of the fragment sizes produced by all possible dinucleotide cleavage schemes. Further, the theoretical efficiency of variance detection associated with all possible dinucleotide cleavage schemes can be determined as described above for full

mononucleotide substitution and cleavage – that is, by determining the detectability of every possible nucleotide substitution in the entire analyte fragment. In some cases two or more independent dinucleotide cleavage reactions may produce complementary results, or a second dinucleotide cleavage experiment may be run to provide corroboration.

Given the length of dinucleotides (16mers on the average), it will often not be possible to determine with precision the location of a variant nucleotide based on one dinucleotide cleavage experiment. For example, if a 15 Dalton mass difference between samples is detected in a 14mer then there must be a C <-> T variance (Table 2) in the 14mer, with the heavier alleles containing T at a position where the lighter alleles contain C. However, unless there is only one C in the lighter variant fragment, or only one T in the heavier variant fragment, it is impossible to determine which, C or T, is the variant one. This ambiguity regarding the precise nucleotide which varies can be resolved in several ways. First, a second mono- or dinucleotide substitution and cleavage experiment, or a combination of such cleavage experiments, may be designed so as to divide the original variant fragment into pieces that will allow unambiguous assignment of the polymorphic residue. Second, an alternative sequencing procedure may be used as an independent check on the results, such as Sanger sequencing or sequencing by hybridization.

20 ii. **Applications to DNA sequencing**

As a stand alone procedure, dinucleotide substitution and cleavage can provide useful information concerning nucleotide content of DNA fragments averaging about 16 nucleotides in length, but ranging up to 30, 40 or even 50 or more nucleotides. However, as described above, the main applications of dinucleotide cleavage to DNA sequencing occur in conjunction with mononucleotide cleavage. The comparatively large DNA fragments produced by dinucleotide cleavage can be very useful in assorting the smaller fragments produced by mononucleotide cleavage into sets of fragments which must fit together. The additional constraints imposed by these groupings can be sufficient to allow complete sequence to be determined from even relatively large fragments.

In Example 4 the steps required to infer a nucleotide sequence from a 20mer using four mononucleotide substitution and cleavage reactions are shown. The

procedures described in Example 4 could be carried out on a series of 10 - 30mers, the sequence content of which was initially defined, or at least constrained, by a dinucleotide cleavage procedure. Thereby, the sequence of a much larger fragment can be obtained. Note that as nucleotide length increases the relationship between fragment mass and sequence content becomes more ambiguous; that is, there are more and more possible sequences that could produce the given mass. However, if the number of nucleotides comprising the mass are known the number of possible nucleotide contents falls significantly (Pomerantz, S.C., et al., J. Am. Soc. Mass Spectrom., 1993, 4: 204-209). Further, sequence constraints, such as the lack of internal dinucleotide sequences of a particular type, further reduce the number of possible nucleotide contents as illustrated in Table 4 for mononucleotide sets.

- c. **Full substitution with modified nucleotide and partial cleavage**
- Partial substitution with modified nucleotide and full cleavage**
- Partial substitution with modified nucleotide and partial cleavage**

These applications provide partially cleaved polynucleotides by different strategies; each of these procedures has utility in specific embodiments of the invention. However, full substitution with a modified nucleotide and partial cleavage is the preferred method of producing partial cleavage products for mass spectrometric analysis. The reason is that with full substitution one can vary the degree of partial cleavage over a very wide spectrum, from cleavage of 1 in 100 nucleotides to cleavage of 99 in 100 nucleotides. Partial substitution, even with full cleavage, does not allow this range of cleavage completeness. However, for modified nucleotides which are not efficiently incorporated by polymerases, lesser degrees of substitution are preferred. As the completeness of cleavage is reduced the relationship between cleavage fragments over a longer and longer range becomes evident. On the other hand as the completeness of cleavage is increased the ability to obtain precise mass data and unambiguous assignment of nucleotide content is increased. The combination of slight, intermediate and substantial cleavage provides an integrated picture of an entire polynucleotide, whether the application is variance detection or sequencing. The small polynucleotides of defined nucleotide content can be joined into larger and larger groups of defined order.

Partial substitution with full cleavage and partial substitution with partial cleavage are useful for the preparation of sequencing ladders. If a modified nucleotide is not efficiently incorporated into polynucleotides by available polymerases then a low ratio of partial substitution may be optimal for efficient
5 production of polynucleotides containing the modified nucleotide. However a low degree of substitution may then require complete cleavage in order to produce sufficient cleavage fragments for ready detection.

Partial substitution with partial cleavage is generally a preferred approach as conditions for complete cleavage may be harsh and thereby result in some
10 nonspecific cleavage or modification to polynucleotides. Also, partial substitution at relatively high levels (i.e. at 5% or more of the occurrences of the nucleotide) allows a range of partial cleavage efficiencies to be analyzed. As with MS analysis, there are advantages to being able to test multiple degrees of cleavage. For example, it is well known in Sanger sequencing that there are tradeoffs to production of very long
15 sequence ladders: generally the beginning of the ladder, with the shortest fragments, is difficult to read as is the end of the ladder with the longest fragments. Similarly, the ability to manipulate partial cleavage conditions with the polynucleotides of this invention will allow a series of sequencing ladders to be produced from the same polynucleotide that provide clear sequence data close to
20 the primer or at some distance from the primer. As shown in Fig. 17, sequence ladders produced by chemical cleavage have a much better distribution of labeled fragments than dideoxy termination over distances up to 4 kb and beyond.

Partial cleavage may also be obtained by the substitution of cleavage-resistant modified nucleotides, described above, for all but one natural nucleotide,
25 which then provides the cleavage sites. In addition, as described previously, combinations of cleavage resistant modified nucleotides and cleavage-sensitive modified nucleotides may be used.

While any technique which permits the determination of the mass of relatively large molecules without causing non-specific disintegration of the molecules in the
30 process may be used with the methods of this invention, a preferred technique is MALDI mass spectroscopy since it is well suited to the analysis of complex mixtures of analyte. Commercial MALDI instruments are available which are capable of

measuring mass with an accuracy on the order of 0.1% to .05%. That is, these instruments are capable of resolving molecules differing in molecular weight by as little as one part in two thousand under optimal conditions. Advances in MALDI MS technology will likely increase the resolution of commercial instruments in the next
5 few years. Considering the smallest difference that can occur between two strands containing a variance (an A-T transversion, a molecular weight difference of 9; see Table 5), and given a MALDI apparatus with a resolution of 2,000 (that is, a machine capable of distinguishing an ion with an m/z (mass/charge) of 2,000 from an ion with an m/z of 2,001), the largest DNA fragment which the A-T transversion would be
10 detectable is approximately 18,000 Daltons (a 'Dalton' is a unit of molecular weight used when describing the size of large molecules; for all intents and purposes it is equivalent to the molecular weight of the molecule). In the experimental setting, the practical resolving power of an instrument may be limited by the isotopic heterogeneity of carbon; i.e., carbon exists in nature as Carbon-12 and Carbon-13,
15 as well as other factors. Assuming an approximately even distribution of the four nucleotides in the DNA fragment, this translates to detection of an A-T transversion in an oligonucleotide containing about 55 nucleotides. At the other end of the spectrum, a single C-G transversion, which results in a molecular weight difference of 40, could be detected using MALDI mass spectroscopy in an oligonucleotide
20 consisting of about 246 nucleotides. The size of an oligonucleotide in which an A-T transversion would be detectable could be increased by substituting a heavier non-natural nucleotide for either the A or the T; for example, without limitation, replacing A with 7-methyl-A, thus increasing the molecular weight change to 23. Table 5 shows the approximate size of an oligonucleotide in which each possible single point
25 mutation could be detected for mass spectrometers of different resolving powers without any modification of molecular weight.

A variety of chemical modifications of nucleotides have been described with respect to their utility in increasing the detectability of mass differences during MS analysis. A particularly useful mass modification for use with the methods of this
30 invention is the purine analog 2-chloroadenine, which has a mass of 364.5. As shown in Table 2, Panel B, this has a favorable effect on mass differences between all the nucleotides and A. Most important, it changes the T-A difference from 9 Da to

42.3 Da. Further, it has been shown that 2-chloradenine can be incorporated in polynucleotides by DNA polymerase from *Thermus aquaticus*. Full substitution on one strand has been described. (Hentosh, P. Anal. Biochem., 1992, 201: 277-281.)

E. Examples

5 1. Polymerase Development

A variety of mutant polymerases have been shown to have altered catalytic properties with respect to modified nucleotides. Mutant polymerases with reduced discrimination between ribonucleotides and deoxyribonucleotides have been extensively studied. Human DNA polymerase β mutants that discriminate against
10 azidothymidine (AZT) incorporation have been isolated by genetic selection. Thus, it is highly likely that mutant polymerases capable of incorporating any of the modified nucleotides of this invention better than natural polymerases can be produced and selected.

The following procedure can be employed to obtain an optimal polymerase
15 for incorporation of a particular modified nucleotide or nucleotides into a polynucleotide. It is understood that modifications of the following procedure will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art; such modifications are within the scope of this invention.

a. A starting polymerase is selected. Alternatively, multiple
20 polymerases that have different sequences and/or different capabilities with regard to incorporation of a modified nucleotide or nucleotides into a polynucleotide might be selected. For example, without limitation, two polymerases, one of which efficiently incorporates a nucleotide having a sugar modification and the other of which efficiently incorporates a nucleotide having a phosphate backbone
25 modification, might be selected. The coding sequences of the polymerase(s) is then cloned into a prokaryotic host.

It may be advantageous to incorporate a protein tag in the polymerase during cloning, the protein tag being selected for its ability to direct the polymerase into the periplasmic space of the host. An example, without limitation of such a tag
30 is thioredoxin. Proteins in the periplasmic space can be obtained in a semi-pure state by heat shock (or other procedures known in the art) and are less likely to be incorporated into inclusion bodies.

b. Several (preferably three or more) rounds of shuffling (Stemmer, supra) are then performed.

c. After each round of shuffling, the shuffled DNA is transformed into a host. The library of transformants obtained is then plated and pools of
5 transformants (approximately 10 – 1000 colonies per pool) are prepared from the host cell colonies for screening by sib selection. A lysate is then made from each pool. The host may be prokaryotic such as, without limitation, bacteria or a single-celled eukaryote such as a yeast. The following description assumes the use of a bacterial prokaryotic host but other possible prokaryotic hosts will be apparent to
10 those skilled in the art and are within the scope of this invention.

d. The lysates are subjected to dialysis using a low molecular weight cut-off membrane to remove substantially all natural nucleotides. This is necessary because the assay for polymerase with the desired characteristics entails polymerase extension of a primer in the presence of modified nucleotides. The
15 presence of the corresponding natural nucleotides will result in a high background in the assay which might obscure the results. An alternative procedure is degradation of all natural nucleotides with a phosphatase such as shrimp alkaline phosphatase.

e. Add the following to the dialyzed lysate: a single stranded DNA template, a single stranded DNA primer complementary to one end of the template,
20 the modified nucleotide or nucleotides whose incorporation into the DNA is desired and the natural nucleotides which are not being replaced by the modified nucleotides. If the desired polymerase is to have the capability of incorporating two contiguous modified nucleotides, then the template should be selected to contain one or more complementary contiguous sequences. For example, without limitation,
25 if a polymerase which is capable of incorporating a modified-C-modified-T sequence is desired 5' to 3', the template should contain one or more G-A or A-G sequences 3' to 5'. Following (that is, 5' to) the segment of the template strand designed to test the ability of the polymerase to incorporate the modified nucleotide or nucleotides is segment of template strand that produces a detectable sequence when copied by
30 the polymerase. The sequence can be detected in several ways. One possibility is to use a template having a homopolymeric segment of nucleotides complementary to one of the natural nucleotides. Then, if the goal is, for example, identification of a

polymerase that incorporates modified C, then detection might entail polymerization of a consecutive series of A, G or T providing, however, that the nucleotide used for detection does not occur earlier in the polymerized sequence complementary to the template sequence. The detection nucleotide could be a radiolabeled or dye-
5 labeled nucleotide that would only be incorporated by mutant polymerase that had already traversed the segment of template requiring incorporation of the modified nucleotide(s). Another way to detect the homopolymer would be to make a complementary radiolabeled or dye-labeled probe that could be hybridized to the homopolymer produced only in those pools containing a polymerase capable of
10 incorporating the modified nucleotide(s). Hybridization could then be detected by, for example, spotting the primer extension products from each pool on a nylon filter, followed by denaturing, drying and addition of the labeled homopolymeric probe which would hybridize to the complementary strand of the polymerization product. Of course, a homopolymer or other sequence not present in the host cell genome or
15 an episomes should be used to minimize background hybridization to host sequences present in all the pools.

Yet another detection procedure would be to incorporate a sequence corresponding to an RNA polymerase promoter, such as, without limitation, the T7 promoter, followed by a reporter sequence into the template. These sequences
20 should be located downstream (3' to) the primer and template sequence requiring incorporation of modified nucleotides. The T7 promoter will be inactive until it becomes double-stranded as a consequence of the polymerization; however, polymerization of the T7 promoter sequence will only occur if the mutant polymerase being tested is capable of incorporating the modified nucleotide or sequence of
25 modified nucleotides which lie upstream of the T7 promoter sequence. The reporter sequence may include a homopolymeric sequence of a nucleotide (e.g., T) the complement of which (in this case, A) is labeled with a dye or radioactive label. In this manner, high levels of T7 polymerase mediated transcription will result in large quantities of high molecular weight (i.e., capable of precipitation by trichloroacetic
30 acid), labeled polymer. An alternative reporter sequence might be a ribozyme capable of cleaving an exogenously added marker oligonucleotide which permits easy distinction of cleaved from non-cleaved products. For example, again without

limitation, one end of the oligonucleotide might be biotinylated and the other end might contain a fluorescent dye. Such systems are capable of 1000-fold or greater amplification of a signal. In this approach it would first be necessary to demonstrate that the function of the promoter is not disturbed by the presence of modified
5 nucleotide or to create a version of the promoter that lacks the nucleotide being modified.

f. Any pool of lysed bacterial colonies which contains a polymerase capable of incorporating the selected modified nucleotide or contiguous modified nucleotides will produce detectable homopolymer or will contain double-stranded T7
10 RNA polymerase promoter upstream of a marker sequence as the result of the polymerization across the modified nucleotide or contiguous nucleotides, across the T7 promoter and across the marker sequence. Addition of T7 RNA polymerase to the mixture (or, alternatively, expression of T7 RNA polymerase from a plasmid) will result in transcription of the marker sequence which then can be detected by an appropriate
15 method depending on the marker system selected. It may not be necessary to select or design a promoter which either lacks the modified nucleotide(s) or which can function effectively with the modified nucleotide(s).

g. Bacterial colonies containing a polymerase having the desired properties are then identified and purified from pools of bacterial colonies by sib
20 selection. In each round of selection the pool or pools with the desired properties are split into sub-pools and each sub-pool is tested for activity as set forth above. The sub-pool displaying the highest level of activity is selected and separated into a second round of subpools and the process repeated. This is repeated until there is only one colony remaining which contains the desired polymerase. That polymerase can then
25 be recloned into a protein expression vector and large amounts of the polymerase can be expressed and purified.

Another approach to polymerase development involves the well-known propensity for some antibiotics to kill only growing cells, e.g., penicillin and related drugs which kill by interfering with bacterial cell wall synthesis of growing cells but do not
30 affect quiescent cells.

The approach would be to introduce a modified nucleotide into bacterial cells which have been genetically altered to express one or more mutant polymerases,

preferably a library of mutant polymerases. An ideal host strain would be one in which the endogenous polymerase has been inactivated but is complemented by a plasmid-encoded polymerase. A library of polymerases could then be created on a second plasmid with a different selectable marker, e.g., antibiotic resistance. The library would then be introduced into the host cell in the presence of negative selection against the first (non-mutated) polymerase-encoding plasmid, leaving cells with only the mutant polymerases. If one or more of the mutant polymerases is capable of incorporating the modified nucleotide into the genetic material of the cells, the expression of the modified gene(s) will be altered and/or a series of host cell responses will be elicited such as the SOS response which affects cell growth. The effect sought would be reversible growth arrest, ie, a cytostatic rather than cytotoxic effect. The cells would then be treated with an antibiotic which only kills actively growing cells. The cells are then removed from the presence of the antibiotic and placed in fresh growth medium. Any cells whose growth was arrested by the incorporation of the modified nucleotide into their genetic material and therefore which were unaffected by the antibiotic would form colonies. Plasmids containing the code for the polymerase which catalyzed the incorporation of the modified nucleotide into the cells' genetic material are then isolated and the procedure repeated for additional rounds of selection. Once a sufficient number of selection rounds have been performed, the polymerase is isolated and characterized. An exemplary, but by no means limiting, experimental procedure which might be employed to accomplish the foregoing is as follows:

1. Select a polymerase or set of polymerases for mutagenesis. The starting polymerase(s) may include, without limitation, a mutant polymerase such as Klenow E710A, wild type polymerases, thermostable or thermolabile polymerases or polymerases known to complement *E. coli* DNA Pol I, etc.
2. Prepare a library of mutant polymerases using techniques such as "dirty PCR," shuffling, site-directed mutagenesis or other diversity generating procedures.
3. Clone the library into a plasmid vector.
4. Transform bacteria with the plasmid library and isolate transfectants by selection on an appropriate antibiotic. Preferably, the host strain has an inactivated chromosomal polymerase and selection can be applied to insure that only the mutant

polymerases are expressed in the host cells, as described above. The only cells harboring plasmids encoding functional polymerases will survive this step.

- 5 5. Add the modified nucleotide triphosphate to the media. It may be necessary to use a cell permeabilizing procedure such as electroporation, addition of calcium or rubidium chloride, heat shock, etc. to facilitate entrance of the modified nucleotide into the cells. The cells are then grown in the presence of the modified nucleotide triphosphate until incorporation of the modified nucleotide(s) induces arrest of cell growth in selected cells.
- 10 6. Add penicillin, ampicillin, nalidixic acid or any other antibiotic that selectively kills actively dividing cells. Continue growing the cells for a selected time.
7. Spin the cells out, suspend them in fresh LB media and plate them. Grow for an empirically determined time.
- 15 8. Select colonies, isolate the plasmids and repeat steps 4 to 7 for additional rounds of selection or, in the alternative, use a biochemical assay for incorporation of the modified nucleotide to examine individual colonies or pools of colonies. Such an assay might entail polymerization of a template in the presence of radiolabelled modified nucleotide on individual clones or on pools of clones in a sib selection scheme.
9. Further characterize the polymerase(s) determined to have the desired activity by the assay of step 8.
- 20 10. Remutagenize the polymerase(s) obtained in Step 8 and repeat the selection procedure from Step 3.
11. When an acceptable level of ability to incorporate the modified nucleotide is achieved, isolate and characterize the polymerase.

- Another method for selecting active polymerases for incorporation of modified
- 25 nucleotide involves use of a bacteriophage which has been described for selection of an active enzyme (Pedersen et. al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1998, 95:10523-8). A modification of that procedure might be used for mutant polymerase selection. That is, oligonucleotides which are covalently attached to phage surfaces can be extended by mutant polymerases expressed on the surface of the phage. Dye-labeled modified
 - 30 nucleotides would be used for primer extension. After removal of unincorporated nucleotides, the phage bearing dye modified nucleotide could be identified using fluorescence activated cell sorting procedures. Alternatively, using an appropriate

template design, the fluorescence label can be attached to another nucleotide which would only be incorporated downstream of a stretch of modified nucleosides.

Yet another approach to identifying active polymerases for modified nucleotide incorporation would use available X-ray crystal structures of polymerases bound to
5 template DNA and nucleotide substrate. Based on observed or predicted interactions within the polymerase/substrate complex, rational amino acid changes could be created to accommodate the structural deviation of a given modified nucleotides. For example, based on the structural information on a complex of T7 polymerase and its substrates for which the X-ray crystal structure shows the amino acids that are in the polymerase
10 active site (Doublié et. al., *Nature*, 1998, 391:251-258), site-directed mutagenesis might be designed for structurally similar protein Klenow to increase its specific activity for incorporation of ribonucleotides (rNTPs) and/or 5'-amino-nucleotides (5'-aminodNTPs).

The E710A mutant of Klenow (Astatke et. al., *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1998, 95:3402-3407) has an increased capacity to incorporate rNTPs as compared to wild
15 type Klenow, probably because the mutation removes the steric gate against the 2'-hydroxyl group of rNTPs. This mutation, however, decreased the mutant's activity for incorporation of natural dNTPs and 5'-aminodNTPs. In this case, use of the E710S mutation might lead to improved activity because E710S might possibly H-bond with the 2'-OH of rNTPs substrates. The E710A or E710S mutation might also be used in
20 combination with Y766F, a previously described mutant which by itself has little effect on polymerase activity (Astatke et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1995, 270: 1945-54). The crystal structure of Y766 reveals that its hydroxyl forms hydrogen bonds with the side chain of E710, which might affect polymerase activity when E710 is truncated to Ala. On the other hand, E710 mutations in combination with F762A might improve activity by
25 holding the sugar ring in a defined position. Similarly, better incorporation of the 5'-amino-analogs might be achieved by relaxing the binding of the polymerase on the nucleotide substrate since the 5'-nitrogen changes the conformation of the nucleotide and thus the alignment of the alpha-phosphorous atom. Initially, the focus could be on mutagenesis on a limited number of residues that engage the sugar and phosphates of
30 the nucleotide substrate such as residues R668, H734, and F762. The H881 residue might also work. Although it is further from the dNTP binding site, an Ala substitution at this position influences the fidelity of dNTP incorporation (Polesky et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*,

1990, 265:14579-91). These residues could be targeted for cassette mutagenesis to ascertain the amino acid residue with maximized effect, followed by selection for active polymerases as described. R668K substitution is particularly interesting, because it should eliminate contact to the dNTP while preserving the minor groove interaction with the primer 3'-NMP. On the other hand, Although R754 and K758 contact the beta and alpha phosphates, changes at these positions are likely to severely impair catalysis. Histidine or lysine at these positions could preserve interactions with the phosphates and might retain activity.

Another method for selecting active polymerases for incorporation of modified nucleotides involves use of the phage display system, which allows foreign proteins to be expressed on the surface of bacteriophage as fusions with phage surface proteins. Kay, B. K., Winter, J. and J. McCafferty (Editors) Phage Display of Peptides and Proteins : A Laboratory Manual. Academic Press, 1996. Establishing an experimental system for detection of a mutant polymerase would entail expressing mutant polymerases on the surface of a library of phage, and subsequently isolating phage bearing polymerases with the desired polymerase activity. Aspects of such a system have been described for selection of an active enzyme nuclease (Pedersen et. al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 1998, 95:10523-8). A modification of that procedure might be used for mutant polymerase selection. That is, oligonucleotides which are covalently attached to proteins on the phage surface can be extended by mutant polymerases expressed on the surface of the same phage. The oligonucleotides must fold up to provide a primer-template complex recognizable by the polymerase, or alternatively a primer complementary to the oligonucleotide can be provided separately. In either event, the portion of the oligonucleotide serving as a template for polymerization will contain nucleotides complementary to the modified nucleotide(s) for which an efficient polymerase is being sought. The template oligonucleotide may also be designed so that the extension product is easily detectable as a result of templated incorporation of a labeled nucleotide which occurs only after polymerization across the segment of template requiring incorporation of the modified nucleotide(s). One method for selectively enriching phage bearing polymerases with the desired catalytic properties involves use of a fluorescence activated cell sorter (FACS). Dye-

labeled modified nucleotides would be used for incorporated in a primer extension reaction only after incorporation of the test modified nucleotide(s). After removal of unincorporated nucleotides, the phage bearing with attached dye modified nucleotides (which must encode mutant polymerases capable of incorporating the modified nucleotide or nucleotides) could can be identified enriched in one or more rounds using fluorescence activated cell sorting procedures (Daugherty P.S., et al., Antibody affinity maturation using bacterial surface display. *Protein Eng* 11:825-32, 1998). Alternatively, the modified nucleotide(s) themselves can be labelled with dye and detection will similarly be accomplished by FACS sorting of dye labeled phage.

10 This procedure has the disadvantage that the dye may interfere with polymerization; however one skilled in the art will recognize that the dye can be attached to the modified nucleotide via a linkage that is unlikely to inhibit polymerization. using an appropriate template design, the fluorescence label can be attached to another nucleotide which would only be incorporated downstream of a stretch of modified

15 nucleosides.

Yet another approach to identifying active polymerases for modified nucleotide incorporation would be to use available X-ray crystal structures of polymerases bound to template DNA and nucleotide substrate. Based on observed or predicted interactions within the polymerase/substrate complex, rational amino acid changes could be created to accommodate the structural deviation of a given modified nucleotides. For example,

20 based on the structural information on a complex of T7 polymerase and its substrates for which the X-ray crystal structure shows the amino acids that are in the polymerase active site (Doublie et. al., *Nature*, 1998, 391:251-258), site-directed mutagenesis might be designed for structurally similar protein Klenow to increase its specific activity for

25 incorporation of ribonucleotides (rNTPs) and/or 5'-amino-nucleotides (5'-aminodNTPs).

The E710A mutant of Klenow (Astatke et. al., *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA*, 1998, 95:3402-3407) has an increased capacity to incorporate rNTPs as compared to wild type Klenow, probably because the mutation removes the steric gate against 2'-hydroxyl group of rNTPs. This mutation, however, decreased the mutant's activity for

30 incorporation of natural dNTPs and 5'-aminodNTPs. In this case, use of the E710S mutation might lead to improved activity because E710S might possibly H-bond with the 2'-OH of rNTPs substrates. The E710A or E710S mutation might also be used in

combination with Y766F, a previously described mutant which by itself has little effect on polymerase activity (Astatke et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1995, 270: 1945-54). The crystal structure of Y766 reveals that its hydroxyl forms hydrogen bonds with the side chain of E710, which might affect polymerase activity when E710 is truncated to Ala. On the other hand, E710 mutations in combination with F762A might improve activity by holding the sugar ring in a defined position. Similarly, better incorporation of the 5'-amino-analogs might be achieved by relaxing the binding of the polymerase on the nucleotide substrate since the 5'-nitrogen changes the conformation of the nucleotide and thus the alignment of the alpha-phosphorous atom. Initially, the focus could be on mutagenesis on a limited number of residues that engage the sugar and phosphates of the nucleotide substrate such as residues R668, H734, and F762. The H881 residue might also work. Although it is further from the dNTP binding site, an Ala substitution at this position influences the fidelity of dNTP incorporation (Polesky et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 1990, 265:14579-91). These residues could be targeted for cassette mutagenesis to ascertain the amino acid residue with maximized effect, followed by selection for active polymerases as described. R668K substitution is particularly interesting, because it should eliminate contact to the dNTP while preserving the minor groove interaction with the primer 3'-NMP. On the other hand, Although R754 and K758 contact the beta and alpha phosphates, changes at these positions are likely to severely impair catalysis. Histidine or lysine at these positions could preserve interactions with the phosphates and might retain activity.

One skilled in the art will recognize that the collection of preferred amino acid modifications to Klenow polymerase described above may be applied to other polymerases to produce useful mutant versions of those polymerases. This can be accomplished by aligning the amino acid sequences of the other polymerases with that of Klenow polymerase to determine the location of the corresponding amino acids in the other polymerases, and/or, where crystal structures are available, comparing three dimensional structures of other polymerases with that of Klenow polymerase to identify orthologous amino acids. Methods for performing site directed mutagenesis and expressing mutant polymerases in procaryotic vectors are known in the art (Ausubel, F. M., et al., Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons, 1998).

In addition to producing and screening for mutant polymerases capable of incorporating modified nucleotides it may also be useful in some instances to screen for other polymerase properties. In general the additional desirable polymerase properties described below are more difficult to assay than incorporation of modified nucleotides, so assays for these additional properties may be conducted as a second screen of mutant polymerases with demonstrated capacity to incorporate modified nucleotides. One aspect of this invention is that cleavage at modified nucleotides may be caused or enhanced by contact between the modified nucleotides and a polymerase (see Example and Figures 20-26). This is a preferred cleavage mode as it obviates a separate cleavage step. Thus it is useful to assay mutant polymerases for cleavage-enhancing properties. One simple assay for such properties is a primer extension where the extension sequence following the primer includes the cleavable nucleotide(s) followed by the first occurrence of a different nucleotide which is detectably labeled. In the event of polymerase assisted cleavage the labeled molecule will be separated from the primer resulting in a smaller labeled molecule, which can be detected by electrophoretic or other methods. A second useful property of mutant polymerases is the ability to recognize a modified nucleotide or nucleotides in a template strand and catalyze incorporation of the appropriate complementary nucleotide (natural or modified) on the nascent complementary strand. This property is a necessary condition for a polymerase to be used in a cycling procedure such as PCR, where newly synthesized polynucleotides serve as templates in successive rounds of amplification. A simple assay for such properties is a short primer extension where the template strand is synthesized with the modified nucleotide or nucleotides occurring shortly after the end of the primer, such that a primer extension reaction will soon encounter the modified nucleotide(s). Successful polymerization across the template, indicating use of the modified nucleotide(s) as templates, will result in a longer extension product than failure to utilize the modified nucleotides as templates. The extension product can be made easily detectable by synthesizing the template so as to cause templated incorporation of a labeled nucleotide only after traversing the modified nucleotide(s). The sequence of the extension product can subsequently be determined to confirm that the nucleotides incorporated on the extension strand opposite the modified nucleotides

are correct. Still other attractive properties of polymerases include high fidelity, thermostability and processivity. Assays for these properties are known in the art.

Example 2. Variance Detection by Mononucleotide Restriction

The following procedure is an example of nucleotide sequence variance
5 detection in a polynucleotide without the necessity of obtaining the complete sequence
of the polynucleotide. While the modified nucleotide used in this example is 7-
methylguanine (7-methylG) and the polynucleotide under analysis is a 66 base-pair
fragment of a specific DNA, it is understood that the described technique may be
employed using any of the modified nucleotides discussed above or any other modified
10 nucleotides which, as noted above, are within the scope of this invention. The
polynucleotide may be any polynucleotide of any length that can be produced by a
polymerase.

A 66 base pair region of the 38 Kda subunit of replication factor C (RFC)
cDNA was amplified by PCR (polymerase chain reaction). Three primers were used
15 in two separate amplification reactions. The forward primer (RFC bio) was
biotinylated. This allows the isolation of a single-stranded template using
streptavidin-coated beads which can then be extended using the Klenow exo-
fragment of E. Coli DNA polymerase to incorporate the 7-methylG. This also permits
cleanup of the modified 7-methylG DNA after extension and prior to cleavage.

20 Two reverse primers were used in a separate amplification reaction; one
matched the natural sequence for the RFC gene (RFC), the other (RFC mut)
introduced a base mutation (T to C) into the 66 base pair RFC sequence. The
primers and corresponding products are also labelled RFC 4.4 and RFC 4.4 Mut in
some of the Figures herein.

25 Using PCR and the above two primers, 66 base pair fragments were
produced (Fig. 1). The two fragments differ at one position, a T to C change in the
biotinylated strand and an A to G change in the complementary strand (encoded by
the two reverse primers). The PCR products were purified using streptavidin
agarose and the non-biotinylated strand from each PCR product was eluted and
30 used as a template for primer extension. The biotinylated primer RFC bio was
extended on these templates in the presence of dATP, dCPT, dTTP and 7-methyl
dGTP.

The streptavidin agarose-bound single-stranded DNA was then incubated with piperidine for 30 minutes at 90° C to cleave at sites of incorporation of 7-methylG into the modified DNA fragment. This treatment also resulted in the separation of the biotinylated fragment from streptavidin. The reaction mixture was
5 subjected to centrifugation and the polynucleotide-containing supernatant was transferred to a new tube. The DNA was dried in a speed vac and re-suspended in deionized water. This sample was then subjected to MALDI mass spectrometry.

Figure 2 shows the molecular weights of the expected fragments of interest as a result of the cleavage of the biotinylated DNA strand at each site of
10 incorporation of 7-methylG. These fragments and their molecular weights are: a 27-mer (8772.15), a 10-mer (3069.92), an 8-mer (2557.6), and one of the following 10-mers depending on the reverse primer used in the PCR reaction, RFC (3054.9) or RFC mut (3039.88). The biotinylated 20-mer primer is also present because it was provided in excess in the extension reaction. The 10-mer fragments for RFC and
15 RFC mut, which differ by 15 daltons, are the ones which should be detected and resolved by mass spectrometry, thus revealing the point mutation.

Figure 3 shows a denaturing polynucleotide sequencing gel analysis of the RFC and RFC mut Klenow polymerase extension fragments before and after
cleavage with piperidine. All the expected fragments were present in both cases.
20 Most of the additional minor bands are the result of incomplete cleavage of the DNA strand by piperidine. Complete cleavage may be achieved through two cycles of piperidine treatment using freshly distilled piperidine for 30 minutes at 90° C with each cycle being followed by drying and washing of the samples (data not shown). The band from the RFC mut cleavage (lane 4 of Fig. 3) which runs between the 8-
25 mer and the 10-mer is the only band not explained by complete or incomplete cleavage.

Figure 4 is the RFC mass spectrogram of the RFC sample. The peak on the far right is the biotinylated primer band which was used as a standard to calculate the molecular weights of all other bands. The left side of the spectrogram reveals all
30 three expected cleavage bands (two 10-mers and an 8-mer). The insert in Figure 4 is a magnified view of the region surrounding the two 10-mers and the 8-mer. The molecular weights in this region were all uniformly off by about 20 daltons because

the primer used for calibration was off by 20 daltons. However, the mass differences between the peaks were all exactly as predicted.

Figure 5 shows the mass spectrogram and a magnified portion thereof from the RFC mut sample. Two peaks should remain the same between the RFC and RFC mut samples, one of the 10-mers (3089.67) and the 8-mer (2576.93). The molecular weight of the remaining 10-mer should be decreased in the RFC-mut 10-mer by 15.02 Da (from 3054.9 to 3039.88) due to the single T to C switch and the mass difference between it and the unchanged RFC 10-mer should be 30.04 (3039.88 vs. 3069.92). However, the mass difference actually obtained from the RFC mut was 319.73 Da. This might be due to a deletion of a C from the 10-mer corresponding to nucleotides 57 - 66. This would also explain the anomolous 9-mer on the RFC mut sequencing gel (Figure 3). For this to be so, the commercially obtained primer used in the amplification reaction would have to have been missing a G. The expected molecular weights for the RFC primer, the RFC mut primer and the RFC mut primer with a single G deletion are shown in Table 6. To test the hypothesis that an error had occurred in the synthesis of RFC mut oligonucleotide primer, the RFC and RFC mut oligonucleotides were then combined and subjected to mass spectrometry. As can be seen from the mass differences obtained (Fig. 6 and Table 6), the hypothesis was correct, the RFC mut primer was indeed missing one G.

The power of the method of this invention is dramatically revealed in the above experiment. What began as a controlled test of the method using a known sequence and a known nucleotide variance actually detected an unknown variance in an unexpected place – the RFC mut primer.

25 **Example 3. Variance Detection by Dinucleotide Restriction**

A restriction enzymes that has a four base pair recognition site will cleave DNA specifically with a statistical frequency of one cleavage every 256 (4^4) bases, resulting in fragments that are often too large to be analyzed by mass spectrometry (Figure 19A). Our chemical dinucleotide restriction strategy, on the other hand, 30 would result in much smaller fragments of the same polynucleotide. The average size of the fragments obtained is 16 (2^4) bases (Figure 19B) which is quite amenable to mass spectrometry analysis.

An example of this chemical restriction principle is illustrated in Figure 20. Depicted in this figure is a dinucleotide pair having a ribonucleotide and 5'-aminonucleotides connected in 5' to 3' orientation, thereby positioning the 2'-hydroxyl group of the ribonucleotide in close proximity to the phosphoramidate linkage. The chemical lability of the phosphoramidate linker is enhanced since the hydroxyl group can attack the phosphorous atom to form a 2', 3'-cyclic phosphate, resulting in the cleavage of DNA at this particular dinucleotide site.

Shown in Figure 21 is an actual application of this approach. A 5'-³²P labeled 20nt primer was extended with a mixture of Klenow (exo-) and E710A Klenow (exo-) polymerases using a 87nt single stranded template in a Tris buffer at pH9. The primer extension was performed with riboGTP (lane 1), 5'-aminoTTP (lane 3), or riboGTP/5'-aminoTTP (lane 5) in place of the corresponding natural nucleotides. After the extension, the reaction mixtures were purified on a G25 column. The riboG-containing extension product was cleaved with aqueous base to generate a G sequencing ladder (lane 2). The 5'-aminoT-containing product was, on the other hand, acid labile and was cleaved to afford a T sequencing ladder (lane 4). Under the conditions of the extension reaction with riboGTP/5'-aminoTTP (lane 5), a 64nt product was obtained instead of the expected 87nt. Interestingly, the 64nt fragment is one of the dinucleotide cleavage products expected for GT restriction and the only one which should be visible by autoradiography. Acid cleavage of this product produced a T ladder (lane 6) whereas base cleavage generated a G ladder (lane 7), indicating the successful incorporation of both riboGTP and 5'-aminoTTP into the polynucleotide. From these results it can be concluded that GT restriction cleavage had occurred during the extension and/or workup procedures, most likely due to the synergized lability of the two modified nucleotides.

In order to visualize all three expected restriction fragments, the same extension-cleavage experiment was performed in the presence of α -³²P-dCTP. As shown in Figure 22, three GT restriction fragments were observed with the expected relative mobility and specific radioactivity.

The versatility of this dinucleotide restriction approach is demonstrated by AT restriction of the same DNA. Specific AT restriction was observed by polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE) analysis (Figure 23). A similarly generated non-

radioactive product was analyzed by MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry (Figure 24). All the expected restriction fragments were observed except for a 2nt fragment which is lost during G25 column purification.

5 The general applicability of this technology is further demonstrated when a longer, different DNA template was used (Figures 25 and 26). Primer extension with riboATP and 5'-aminoTTP followed by AT restriction generated expected oligonucleotides as observed by PAGE analysis (Figure 25) or MALDI-TOF mass analysis (Figure 26).

Example 4. Genotyping by Complete Substitution/Complete Cleavage

10 The following genotyping procedure by chemical restriction is an attractive alternative to other genotyping methods with many advantages including increased accuracy and speed. In general, this method involves PCR amplification of genomic DNA using chemically modified nucleotides followed by chemical cleavage at the modified bases with the resulting amplicons. Shown in Figure 27 is a schematic
15 presentation of this technique. One of the primers (Primer 1) is designed to be close to the polymorphic site of interest so that one of the polymorphic bases (e.g., A) may be selected as the first cleavable nucleotide. After PCR amplification with the chemically modified nucleotide (supplemented with the other three natural nucleotides), only one of the two alleles would be cleavable at the polymorphic site.
20 Treatment with chemical reagents would afford cleavage products comprising Primer 1, whose length can reveal the genotype of the sample. Analysis by either mass spectrometry or electrophoresis can be implemented for identifying the expected length difference. Furthermore, mass spectrometry analysis may unmask the single base difference on the complementary strand of DNA that contains the
25 polymorphism, providing a built-in redundancy and higher accuracy.

Illustrated in Figure 28 to 31 are the chemical cleavage and analysis
procedures utilized to genotype transferrin receptor (TR) gene. A 82bp DNA
sequence of TR gene was selected based on the location of polymorphism and
efficiency of amplification (Figure 28). The polymorphic base (A or G) is positioned 3
30 bases from the 3' end of Primer 1. For A allele it is the first modified nucleotide to be incorporated; for G allele, the first cleavable base is 6 bases from the primer. As a result, fragments of different lengths are produced from chemical cleavage. The

PCR amplification reactions (50 μ l each) were carried out in standard buffer with polymerase AmpliTaq Gold (0.1 unit/ μ l) (MJ Research PTC-200) using 35 cycles of amplification (1 min denaturation, 1.5 min annealing, and 5 min extension).

- 5 Analysis of the PCR products on a 5% non-denaturing polyacrylamide gel (stained with Stains-All from Sigma) showed that 7-deaza-7-nitro-dATP can replace dATP for efficient PCR amplification (Figure 28).

- To the PCR products from 7-deaza-7-nitro-dATP were directly added piperidine, tris-(2-carboxylethyl)phosphine (TCEP), and Tris base to a final concentration of 1 M, 0.2 M, and 0.5 M, respectively, in a total volume of 100 μ l. After
10 incubation at 95° C for 1 hour, 1 ml of 0.2 M triethylammonium acetate (TEAA) was added to each reaction mixture and the resulting solution purified on an OASIS column (Waters). The eluted products were concentrated to dryness on Speedvac and the residue analyzed by mass spectrometry or electrophoresis. Figure 29 shows the sequences of selected fragments expected from cleavage at 7-deaza-7-
15 nitro-dA. The sequences are grouped according to lengths and molecular weights. The first group contains longer fragments that are extended from primers. The 22nt is an invariant fragment which may be used as an internal reference. The 25nt or 28nt fragment is expected from A or G allele, respectively. The shaded group of sequences are from the complementary strand of DNA, including invariant 13nt and
20 11nt fragments that can be used as internal references and a pair of 11nt fragments expected from two allelic forms of TR gene with a 15 Da mass difference. Shown in figure 30(a) is a MALDI-TOF spectrum of chemically cleaved products from a 82bp heterozygote TR DNA sample. Highlighted in the spectrum are the two regions that contain fragments depicted in Figure 29.

- 25 Each purified cleavage sample was mixed with 3-hydroxypicolinic acid and subjected to MALDI-TOF analysis on a Perceptive Biosystems Voyager-DE mass spectrometer. Mass spectra in the region of 7000-9200 daltons were recorded and the results for the three TR genotypes are shown in Figure 30 (b). The spectra were aligned using the peak representing invariant 22nt fragment (7189 Da). Two
30 additional peaks were observed for AG heterozygote sample with one corresponding to A allele (8057 Da) and the other G allele (9005 Da). As expected, only one additional peak was observed for GG or AA homozygote samples, each with the

molecular weight of cleavage fragments from G or A allele. Figure 31 (a) shows a mass spectrum of AG heterozygote sample in the region of 3700-4600 Da. With 3807 Da and 4441 Da fragments as internal references, the genotype of this sample was confirmed through the observation of two peaks in the middle of the spectrum with 15 Da mass difference. The molecular weights observed by mass spectrometry indicated that phosphate-deoxyribose-TCEP adducts were uniformly formed during the cleavage reaction, resulting in fragments that are modified at 3' end (Figure 31 (b)). The data shown in Figure 30 and Figure 31 also illustrated that the combination of chemical restriction with mass spectrometry can provide corroborating genotyping information from both strands of DNA, thereby assuring the accuracy of the analysis.

Alternatively, the chemically restricted samples may be analyzed by electrophoresis to detect the diagnostic length difference resulting from the two alleles. Capillary electrophoresis (CE) analyses were performed using a homemade instrument with a UV detector and a capillary containing denaturing linear polyacrylamide gel. Figure 32 (a) shows the CE chromatogram obtained from TR samples of various genotypes. As predicted, each genotype showed distinguished elution pattern corresponding with the lengths of expected cleavage products. Whereas AA homozygote produced a 25nt fragment and GG homozygote generated a 28nt fragment, AG heterozygote sample afforded both 25nt and 28nt products. After being labeled at 5' end by ^{32}P , the cleavage samples were subjected to PAGE analysis. The resulting autoradiogram in Figure 32 (b) demonstrates that the cleavage is specific with little or no background and the genotyping results are unambiguous.

Another alternative detection method involves the application of fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET). FRET has been successfully applied for polymorphism detection by TaqMan assays (Todd J.A. et al. 1995, Nature Genetics, 3:341-342) and Molecular Beacons (Tyagi, S. et al. 1998, Nature Biotechnology, 16:49-53). However, when longer probes are necessary to achieve their hybridization to target sequences (e.g., AT rich sequences), it becomes increasingly difficult to distinguish the vanishingly small difference resulted from a single nucleotide mismatch. The advantage of chemical restriction in this regard is illustrated in Figure 33. Similar to the aforementioned example, a modified

nucleotide analog of one of the polymorphic base (e.g., A) is used in place of its natural counterpart in the PCR amplification. Primer 1 is designed to be close to the polymorphic site so that the polymorphic base A would be the first cleavable nucleotide for A allele. Primer 1 is also labeled with a fluorescent group (F1) positioned close to 3' end (Figure 33 (a)). After amplification and chemical restriction, a probe covalently attached to another fluor F2 (shown in Figure 3 (b)) can be added and the FRET effect between the two fluorophores measured. Because one of alleles was cleaved closer to the 3' end of primer 1 than the other, the difference between them in hybridization is expected to be greater than a single nucleotide mismatch, and may be exploited to distinguish the two allelic targets. As depicted in Figure 33 (c), the experimental temperature can be attenuated so that only the longer fragment from G allele can hybridize with the probe, resulting in FRET. Since in this system a "NO FRET" result could be interpreted either as allele A or failed PCR amplification, it is necessary to measure the fluorescence of each sample at various temperatures to ensure the positive detection of the shorter fragment from allele A at a lower temperature. Alternatively, this positive detection may be achieved through the use of a hairpined probe depicted in Figure 33 (d). The probe has a 5' end tail that folds back to form a hairpin, in addition to a fluoro F3 at the 5' end. With the short cleavage fragment from A allele, the hairpin probe can form a bridging duplex as depicted, generating detectable FRET between F1 and F3. Only with the longer fragment from G allele can the inter-strand hybridization compete with the stability of the hairpin and result in loss of FRET between F1 and F3.

Example 5. Complete Sequencing by Partial Substitution/Partial
25 Cleavage

Using the following procedure, it is entirely possible to sequence, in one set of sequencing reactions, a polynucleotide consisting of 10,000, 20,000 or even more bases by polymerization in the presence of modified nucleotides, enzymatic restriction of polymerization products, purification of restriction fragments and chemical degradation to produce sequence ladders from each fragment. The procedure is limited only by the size of the template and the processivity (the ability to continue the polymerization reaction) of the polymerase used to extend the

primer. Unlike a shotgun cloning library in which there is a normal distribution of sequence inserts requiring highly redundant sequencing, using the method describe herein results in each nucleotide being sampled once and only once. Repeating the procedure using a second or even a third restriction enzyme cocktail will provide the

5 sequence information needed to reassemble the sequences determined from the initial restriction in the proper order to reconstruct the full length polynucleotide sequence while also supplying the redundancy necessary to ensure the accuracy of the results. In the description which follows a variety of options for carrying out each step are provided. As before, it is understood that other modifications to the

10 procedure described will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art; such other modifications are within the scope of this invention.

TABLE 6

	<u>Primer</u>	<u>Molecular Weight</u>	<u>Mass Difference</u>
	RFCC	6099.6	
15	RFC mut	6115.9	+16
	RFC mut	5786.7	-313.2

a. Anneal primer and template

The template used may be a small or a large insert cloning vector or

20 an amplification product such as a PCR fragment; it may also be single- or double-stranded. For example, without limitation, the template may be a plasmid, phagemid, cosmid, P1, PAC, BAC or YAC clone. The template is ideally rendered linear before extension to ensure that all extension products terminate at the same place. This can be accomplished by restricting the template with a restriction

25 endonuclease. For example, the templates may be prepared in a vector that has restriction sites for one or more rare cutters on either side of the cloning site so that a linear template can be routinely prepared by restriction using the rare cutter enzyme (i.e., an enzyme that cleaves, for example, a 7 or 8 nucleotide motif). Many plasmid vectors such as, without limitation, Bluescript (Stratagene, Inc.) have these

30 features. A primer can be selected which will anneal to a sequence in the vector, for example, the M13 universal primer sequences. This allows the sequencing of a library of clones using only one or two primers (one from each side of the insert).

Alternative, a series of insert-specific primers may be used (at approximately 5-20 kb intervals) in a version of primer walking.

- b. Extend primer in presence of all four natural deoxyribonucleotides and a modified nucleotide corresponding to one of the natural nucleotides.
- 5

The procedures discussed above are used to extend the primer over the entire length of the template using one of the modified nucleotides described above or any other modified nucleotide which is capable of imparting selective cleavage properties to the modified polynucleotide. In general, the ratio of modified nucleotide to its natural counterpart can vary over a considerable range from very little (approximately 1%) to complete ($\geq 99\%$) substitution. The controlling factor is the efficiency of the subsequent chemical cleavage reaction. The more efficient the cleavage reaction, the lower the level of incorporation can be. The goal is to have approximately one modified nucleotide per restriction fragment so that, after

10

15

cleavage, each molecule in the reaction mixture contributes to the sequencing ladder. Figure 7 shows one such modified polynucleotide, a linearized, single-stranded M13 template extended to 87 nucleotides in the presence of the modified nucleotide, 5'-amino dTTP using the exo-minus Klenow fragment of E. coli DNA polymerase. Figure 9 shows a 7.2 Kb extension product, again produced from an M13 template in the presence of 5'-amino-dTTP and dTTP at a molar ratio of 100:1 (Panel A, extension product).

20

- c. Purify the full length primer extension product (optional)

In order to eliminate prematurely terminated (i.e., less than full length) polymerase extension products, thereby assuring a homogeneous sequencing

25

ladder on electrophoresis after cleavage, it may be desirable to purify the full length or substantially full length extension products. It is noted, however, that the purification of the restriction fragments after digestion (step f, below) achieves essentially the same goal and, in most instances, is likely to suffice. In any event, the elimination of short extension products can be accomplished by numerous

30

procedures known in the art such as spun column chromatography or high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC). Figure 8 shows a purified full length extension product before (Panel A) and after (Panel B) chemical cleavage with acid.

d. Cleave the primer extension product with one or more restriction enzymes.

As noted previously, the optimal size for DNA sequencing templates (in this case, of restriction products) is approximately 300 to about 800 nucleotides when gel electrophoresis is to be used for the creation of the sequencing ladder. Thus restriction endonucleases must be employed to reduce the full length extension product of 10 Kb or more to manageable size. Numerous such endonucleases are known in the art. For example, many four-base restriction endonucleases are known and these will generally yield restriction products in the desired range. Shorter restriction fragments; e.g., less than 300 nucleotides, can also be sequenced, but to make the most efficient use of gel runs, it is desirable to separate the restriction fragments into sets according to their length. The shorter fragments will then require relatively brief sequencing run times while the longer fragments will require a longer gel and/or longer run times. Two or more restriction endonuclease cocktails, each containing one or more restriction endonucleases and a compatible buffer, can be used to provide the overlapping sequence information necessary to re-assemble the complete sequence of the polynucleotide from the restriction fragments. Figure 9 shows an exemplary restriction endonuclease digestion of a primer/template complex extended in the presence of dTTP and the modified nucleotide 5'-amino dTTP. As can be seen in Figure 9, complete cleavage was obtained using the restriction endonuclease Msc I. Other MSC I restriction products are not seen because only the 5' end of the primer extension product was labelled with ³²P.

e. Label the restriction endonuclease products.

To visualize the DNA sequencing ladder generated by this method, it is necessary to label the restriction endonuclease products with a detectable label. Many such labels are known in the art; any of them may be used with the methods of this invention. Among these are, without limitation, radioactive labels and chemical fluorophors. For instance, ³⁵SdATP (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech, Inc) or rhodamine-dUTP (Molecular Probes) can be incorporated at the primer extension step. Alternatively, the DNA can be labeled after restriction by modification of the restriction fragments ends by, without limitation, T4 polynucleotide kinase or filling

recessed ends with a DNA polymerase and a labeled nucleotide. Such end-labeling is well known in the art (see, for example, Ausubel, F. M., et al., Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons, 1998). End labeling has the advantage of putting one molecule of label on each DNA fragment which will afford homogenous sequencing ladders. Labeling of the template strand is of no consequence since it will not be cleaved during the chemical cleavage reaction due to the absence of modified nucleotide in its sequence. Thus, no sequencing ladder will be produced for the template strand.

- 5 f. Separate the labeled restriction endonuclease products.
- 10 The restriction fragments must be separated prior to chemical cleavage. Numerous methods are known in the art for accomplishing this (see, for example, Ausubel, F. M., op. cit.). A particularly useful technique is HPLC which is rapid, simple, effective and automatable. For example, Fig 10 shows the resolution obtained by HPLC on Hae III restricted PhiX174 DNA. Ion reverse pair phase HPLC and ion exchange HPLC are two preferred methods of separation.

- 15 g. Cleave the separated labeled restriction endonuclease fragments at sites of modified nucleotide incorporation.
- Depending on the modified nucleotide incorporated, use one of the cleavage reactions previously described herein or any other cleavage reaction which will selectively cleave at the site of incorporation of the modified nucleotide, such other cleavage reactions being within the scope of this invention.

- 20 h. Determine the sequence of the fragment.
- Figure 11 shows the sequence ladder obtained from a polynucleotide in which T has been replaced with 5-amino T. This ladder, of course, only reveals where T occurs in the complete sequence of the target polynucleotide. To obtain the entire sequence, the above procedure would be repeated three more times, in each case one of the remaining nucleotides, A, C and G would be replaced with a corresponding modified nucleotide; e.g., 5'-amino-dATP, 5'-amino-dCTP or 5'-amino-dGTP. When all four individual fragment ladders are in hand, the complete sequence of the polynucleotide can easily be re-constructed by analysis and comparison of gel sequencing data.
- 25
- 30

Example 6. Complete sequencing by substantially complete substitution/substantially complete cleavage combined with mass spectrometry.

The preceding procedure for complete sequencing of a polynucleotide still
5 requires the use of gel electrophoresis for creating fragment ladders from which the
sequence is read. As noted previously, gel electrophoresis is a time and labor
intensive process which also requires a fair degree of skill to carry out in such a
manner as to have a reasonable assurance of reproducible and accurate results. It
is an aspect of this invention that the use of gel electrophoresis can be eliminated
10 completely and replaced with relatively simple to use, fast, sensitive, accurate,
automated mass spectrometry. The basis for this aspect of this invention is the
previously discussed uniqueness in the molecular weights of virtually all 2-mers
through 14-mers with the exception of the 8 fragment pairs described above (and
other fragment pairs that are based on addition of identical sets of nucleotides to the
15 8 fragment pairs. The following is an example of how this procedure would be
carried out. While the example is described in terms of human intervention and
specific analyses at each step, it will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art
that a computer program could be devised to completely automate the analytic
procedure and further increase the speed of this aspect of this invention. The use of
20 such a computer program is, therefore, within the scope of this invention.

The procedure for determining complete nucleotide sequences by mass
spectroscopy would entail the following steps:

- a. substantially complete replacement of a natural nucleotide in a
polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide to form a modified polynucleotide. This
25 would be accomplished by an amplification procedure or by primer extension
employing the polymerase reaction discussed above. Optionally, the procedure
disclosed above could be used to arrive at the optimal polymerase or set of
polymerases for preparing the desired modified polynucleotide;
- b. cleavage of the modified polynucleotide under conditions that
30 favor substantially complete cleavage at and essentially only at the points of
incorporation of the modified nucleotide in the modified polynucleotide; and,

c. determination of the masses of the fragments obtained in the preceding cleavage reaction.

The above three steps are then repeated three more times, each time a different modified nucleotide corresponding to each of the remaining natural
5 nucleotides is used. The result will be a series of masses from which all or most of the sequence of the entire original polynucleotide can be ascertained. Any sequence ambiguity which remains after the main analysis is done should be readily resolved by using one more reactions involving a contiguous dinucleotide substitution/cleavage
10 reaction or by a conventional DNA sequencing procedure. The following is an example of how the analysis of a fragment would proceed.

Given the following 20 nucleotide natural oligomer extended from a 16mer primer:

5'-primer-TTACTGCATCGATATTAGTC-3'

polymerization in the presence of dTTP, dCTP, dGTP and a modified dATP will
15 result, after substantially complete cleavage, in five fragments whose masses are shown in Table 7. Carrying out the procedure three more times for the remaining three natural nucleotides will result in three more sets of fragments, the masses of which are also shown in Table 7. From these masses, the nucleotide content (but not sequence, yet) of all the fragments can be uniquely determined. The actual
20 sequence is determined by analyzing all four cleavage results together.

For example, looking at the masses of all the fragments in Table 1, it is readily discernable that only one mass in each cleavage set comprises more than 16 nucleotides, that all the other fragments are 3' of the primer (since the fragment containing the primer must be at least 16 nt) and that there are two nucleotides after
25 the primer in the A cleavage column, three in the C column, five in the G column and none in the T column. Therefore, the sequence must begin with TT followed by an A, then a C, an unknown nucleotide and then a G. The sequence must start with 2 T residues because neither A, C nor G cleavage occurs in this initial interval. Also,
30 by adding the masses of the fragments in the different cleavage sets, it can be seen that the length the unsequenced region is 20 nucleotides. The number of nucleotides in of the four cleavage sets are also readily ascertainable - set A: (primer

+2) + 5 + 4 + 3 + 2 = 16; set C: (primer + 3) + 10 + 3 + 3 + 1 = 20; set G: (primer + 5) + 7 + 5 + 3 = 20; set T: 4 + 3 + 3 + 2 + 2 + 1 = 15. From this information it is clear that there must be overlapping fragments in the A and T sets.

Subtracting the known mass of the primer from those fragments containing
5 the primer reveals the nucleotide content of the sequence immediately following the primer. Thus, in lane A, the residual mass of 608 Daltons which, from Table 3, is seen to correspond to TT which therefore must be the first two nucleotides in the unknown fragment sequence. The sequence following the primer is thus already known to be TTAC_G. From the mass of the 5mer in the G lane (1514 Daltons), it
10 can be seen that the 5-mer contains three Ts, an A and a C. Thus, the missing nucleotide must be a T; the leading sequence is TTA^{CT}GTG.

TABLE 7

5' - primer-TTACTGCATCGATATTAGTC - 3'								
Cleave at modified:	A	Mass	C	Mass	G	Mass	T	Mass
Cleavage fragments listed in 5'-3' order	primer-TT	608+ primer	primer-TTA	921+ primer	primer-TTACT	1514+ primer	primer	Primer only
	ACTGC	1463	CTG	861	GCATC	1463	T	304
	ATCG	1174	CAT	845	GATATTA	2119	TAC	845
	AT	556	CGATATTAGT	3041	GTC	861	TGCA	1174
	ATT	860	C	289			TCGA	1174
	AGTC	1174					TA	556
							T	304
							TAG	885
							TC	532

Table 7: Nucleotide-specific cleavage patterns for the sequence shown at top, which consists of a primer of known sequence and length (not specified) followed by 20 nucleotides of 'unknown' sequence for the purposes of this example. Cleavages in this example occur via a mechanism that breaks the phosphodiester bond 5' of the modified nucleotide. Each cleavage set includes one fragment containing the primer plus however many nucleotides after the primer until the first occurrence of the modified nucleotide. The known mass of the primer can be subtracted from this (largest) mass to obtain the difference, which gives the mass and therefore the nucleotide content of the sequence immediately 3' of the primer. The masses provided in the table reflect the presence of one external phosphate group in each cleavage mass, however it should be recognized that, depending on the chemical nature of the nucleotide modification and the cleavage reaction, actual masses will likely differ from those shown in the Table. However, such differences are expected to be systematic and therefore do not invalidate the thrust of the analysis presented.

Turning now to the masses shown in the T lane of Table 7, the 906 Dalton mass must contain a T, an A and a C. Since there already is a TAC sequence known, it may tentatively be held that this is a confirming sequence, part of the overlap of the A and T cleavages. It, of course, cannot yet be ruled out that another
5 3-mer containing T, A and C exist in the fragment which is why this assignment must remain tentative at this point.

The next T cleavage fragment must, at a minimum, contain a T and a G. Two T cleavage masses permit this: 946 and 1235. Thus, the additional sequence must be either G followed by T (if the 946 mass is the next mass) or G followed by a C and an A,
10 order not known, and then T. The sequence is now known to be either TTACTGGT or TTACTG(C,A)T (the parentheses and comma between nucleotides will be used to indicate unknown order).

Going back to the A cleavage reaction, it can be seen that the next cleavage mass after the TT must contain ACTG. Two masses, 1235 Da and 1524 Da, meet this
15 criterion. If 1235 Da is correct, the seventh nucleotide in the sequence is A because cleavage has to have occurred at that nucleotide. If 1524 Da is correct, then the sequence is CA. CA is consistent with one of the two possibilities discussed above; thus the overall sequence so far is TTACTGCAT.

Looking next at the masses from the C cleavage reaction, it can be seen that the
20 first mass after the initial TTA must be CTG(C,A). Since cleavage will occur 5' of any C, the possibilities are CTG or CTGA; only the first of these is supported by the masses in the C lane. Thus the second mass fragment in the C lane must be CTG followed by another C (because cleavage has occurred at that point). The third mass in the C lane (906 Da) must contain a C, an A and a T which confirms the previous sequence of CAT.
25 This leaves only two possibilities for the remaining sequences, a C followed by the 10mer or the 10mer followed by a terminal C. However, if the former were the case, then a cleavage fragment from one of the other lanes, A, G, or T, should show a 3mer, 4mer or 5mer which contains 2 Cs. Since none of the masses permit such an oligomer, the lone C must be at the 3' end of the unknown fragment and the 10mer is next after CAT giving
30 the following sequence TTACTGCATC_____C.

Turning once again to the G cleavages, it is now known that a fragment must exist which contains at least GCATC. From the masses available this may be GCATC itself

(1524 Da) or the 7mer (2180 Da). However, if the mass of the 5mer is subtracted from the mass of the 7mer, the remaining mass, 656 Da, does not correspond to any known oligonucleotide. Thus, the 7mer cannot be next, GCATC is the correct sequence and the next nucleotide must be a G (since cleavage has occurred to give the 5mer). The

5 sequence is now TTACTGCATCG _ _ _ _ _ C.

The next mass in the T cleavage series must begin with TCG. The only T cleavage mass which permits such a combination is 1235 Da which corresponds to a TCGA sequence. This sequence must be followed by a T since cleavage has occurred at that point. The overall sequence is, therefore, TTACTGCATCGAT _ _ _ _ _ C.

10 There is only one mass among the available T cleavage series which contains a C, the 593 Da TC. Thus the nucleotide preceding the terminal C must be a T. Likewise, the only TC-containing mass in the A cleavage series that does not contain 2 Cs, which is now known to be not permissible, is 1235 or (A,G)TC. The 1235 mass has already been used once (nucleotides 8 – 11) but it is also known that there is fragment overlap since
15 the A series only accounts for a total of 16 nucleotides. The sequence is now known to be TTACTGCATCGAT _ _ _ (A,G)TC. However, if the terminal sequence is ATC, there should be a 906 Da mass among the A cleavages; there is not. On the other hand, if the terminal sequence is GTC, a mass of 922 Da should be found among the G cleavage fragments and there is. Thus, the sequence can now be established as

20 TTACTGCATCGAT _ _ _ AGTC.

There is only one available T cleavage mass containing AG but no C, the 946 Da mass consisting of T(A,G). This mass must account for the AG in positions 17 and 18. Therefore, position 16 must be a T; the sequence is now known to be TTACTGCATCGAT _ _ TAGCT.

25 Only two masses are still available in the A cleavage group, 617 (AT) and 921 (ATT). These complete the overall sequence in two ways, ATATT or ATTAT. None of the masses permits the resolution of this ambiguity. However, all 20 nucleotides in the target oligonucleotide have, in a single experiment, been unambiguously identified and 18 of the 20 have been unambiguously sequenced.

30 With regard to ambiguity generally, be it be one, as in the above example, or more than one, as might be the case when sequencing longer fragments, depending on the nature of the ambiguity and the environment in which it exists; i.e., the nucleotides on

either side of it, an additional experiment using any one of several available procedures should readily resolve the matter. For instance, an experiment using the dinucleotide cleavage method of this invention might provide the additional information necessary to resolve the ambiguity. Alternatively, some relaxation of the substantially complete

5 cleavage conditions might result in a ladder of masses in which a known mass is joined with an adjacent ambiguous mass in a manner that clarifies the position and order of the ambiguous mass with respect to the known mass. Or, low accuracy, single pass Sanger sequencing might be employed. Alone, this relatively easy and rapid version of Sanger sequencing would not provide much valuable information but, as a complement to the

10 method of this invention, it would likely provide sufficient information to resolve the ambiguity (and, to the extent the sequencing ladder obtained is unambiguously readable it would provide a partial redundancy verifying the mass spec data.

CONCLUSION

15 Thus, it will be appreciated that the method of the present invention provides versatile tools for the detection of variance in polynucleotides, for the determination of complete nucleotide sequences in polynucleotides and for genotyping of DNA.

Although certain embodiments and examples have been used to describe the present invention, it will be apparent to those skilled in the art that changes in the

20 embodiments and examples shown may be made without departing from the scope of this invention.

Other embodiments are within the following claims.

CLAIMS

WHAT IS CLAIMED:

1. A method for cleaving a polynucleotide, comprising:
 - 5 a. replacing one or more natural nucleotides at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with modified nucleotides to form a modified polynucleotide provided that, when only one natural nucleotide is being replaced, the modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide or a nucleoside α -thiotriphosphate;
 - b. contacting said modified polynucleotide with a reagent or
10 reagents that cleaves the modified polynucleotide at substantially each said point of occurrence of said one or more modified nucleotides.
2. The method of claim 1, whereby variance in nucleotide sequence in related polynucleotides is detected, further comprising:
 - 15 c. determining the masses of said fragments obtained from step b; and,
 - d. comparing the masses of said fragments with the masses of fragments expected from cleavage of a related polynucleotide of known sequence, or
 - 20 e. repeating steps a – c with one or more related polynucleotides of unknown sequence and comparing the masses of said fragments of said polynucleotide with the masses of fragments obtained from the related polynucleotides.
- 25 3. The method of claim 1, whereby the nucleotide sequence of said polynucleotide is determined, comprising:
 - c. determining the masses of said fragments obtained from step b;
 - d. repeating steps a, b and c, each time replacing a different
natural nucleotide in said polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide until each natural
30 nucleotide in said polynucleotide has been replaced with a modified polynucleotide, each modified polynucleotide has been cleaved and the masses of the cleavage fragments have been determined; and,

e. constructing said nucleotide sequence of said polynucleotide from said masses of said first fragments.

4. The method of claim 1, whereby a polynucleotide known to contain a polymorphism or mutation is genotyped, comprising:

c. using as said natural nucleotide to be replaced, a nucleotide known to be involved in said polymorphism or mutation;

d. replacing said natural nucleotide at substantially each point of occurrence by amplifying said polynucleotide using a modified nucleotide to form a modified polynucleotide;

e. cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments at substantially each point of occurrence of said modified nucleotide;

f. analyzing said fragments to determine genotype.

5. The method of claim 4, wherein said analysis of said fragments comprises using electrophoresis, mass spectrometry or FRET detection.

6. The method of claim 1, comprising:

a. replacing a first natural nucleotide at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide to form a once modified polynucleotide;

b. replacing a second natural nucleotide at substantially each point of occurrence in said once modified nucleotide with a second modified nucleotide to form a twice modified nucleotide; and,

c. contacting said twice modified polynucleotide with a reagent or reagents which cleave the twice modified polynucleotide at each point in said twice modified polynucleotide where said first modified nucleotide is followed immediately in sequence by said second modified nucleotide.

7. The method of claim 6, whereby variance in nucleotide sequence of related polynucleotides is detected, comprising:

d. determining the masses of said fragments obtained from step c;

e. comparing the masses of said fragments with the masses of fragments expected from cleavage of a related polynucleotide of known sequence, or

5 f. repeating steps a – d with one or more related polynucleotides of unknown sequence and comparing the masses of said fragments with masses of fragments obtained from cleavage of the related polynucleotides.

8. The method of claim 1, wherein variance in nucleotide sequence in related polynucleotides is detected, comprising:

- 10 a. replacing three of four natural nucleotides at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with three stabilizing modified nucleotides to form a modified polynucleotide having one remaining natural nucleotide;
- b. cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments at substantially each point of occurrence of said one remaining natural nucleotide;
- 15 c. determining the masses of said fragments; and,
- d. comparing the masses of said fragments with the masses of fragments expected from cleavage of a related polynucleotide of known sequence, or
- e. repeating steps a – c with one or more related polynucleotides of unknown sequence and comparing the masses of said fragments with masses
- 20 obtained from cleavage of the related polynucleotides.

9. The method of claim 8, further comprising replacing said one remaining natural nucleotide with a destabilizing modified nucleotide.

- 25 10. The method of claim 1, wherein variance in nucleotide sequence in related polynucleotides is detected, comprising:
- a. replacing two or more natural nucleotides at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with two or more modified nucleotides wherein each said modified nucleotide has a different cleaving characteristic from
- 30 each other of said modified nucleotides, to form a modified polynucleotide;

- b. cleaving said modified polynucleotide into first fragments at substantially each point of occurrence of a first of said two or more modified nucleotides;
- 5 c. cleaving said first fragments into second fragments at each point of occurrence of a second of said two or more modified nucleotides in said first fragments;
- d. determining the masses of said first fragments and said second fragments; and,
- 10 e. comparing the masses of said first fragments and said second fragments with the masses of first fragments and second fragments expected from the cleavage of a related polynucleotide of known sequence, or
- f. repeating steps a - d with one or more related polynucleotides of unknown sequence and comparing the masses of said first and second fragments with masses obtained from the cleavage of the related polynucleotides.
- 15
11. The method of claim 10, wherein the steps are repeated using a modified polynucleotide obtained by replacing different pairs of natural nucleotides with modified nucleotides; that is, replacing said first and a third, said second and a fourth, said first and said fourth, said second and said third or said third and said fourth natural nucleotides with modified nucleotides.
- 20
12. The method of claim 10, wherein said cleavage comprises using a mass spectrometer.
- 25
13. The method of claim 12, wherein said mass spectrometer is a tandem mass spectrometer.
14. A method for determining nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, comprising:
- 30 a. replacing a natural nucleotide at a percentage of points of occurrence in a polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide to form a modified polynucleotide wherein said modified polynucleotide is not a ribonucleotide;

- b. cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments at substantially each point of occurrence of said modified nucleotide;
- c. repeating steps a and b, each time replacing a different natural nucleotide in said polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide; and,
- 5 d. determining the masses of said fragments obtained from each cleavage reactions; and,
- e. constructing said sequence of said polynucleotide from said masses, or
- f. analyzing a sequence ladder obtained from the fragments in step c.
- 10
15. A method for determining nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, comprising:
- a. replacing a natural nucleotide at a first percentage of points of occurrence in a polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide to form a modified
- 15 polynucleotide wherein said modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide or a nucleoside α -thiotriphosphate;
- b. cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments at a second percentage of said points of occurrence of said modified nucleotide such that the combination of said first percentage and said second percentage results in
- 20 partial cleavage;
- c. repeating steps a and b, each time replacing a different natural nucleotide in said polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide;
- d. determining the masses of said fragments obtained from each cleavage reaction; and,
- 25 e. constructing said sequence of said polynucleotide from said masses or,
- f. analyzing a sequence ladder obtained from said fragments in steps a and b.
- 30
16. The method of claim 1, wherein nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, is detected, comprising:

- a. replacing two or more natural nucleotides at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with two or more modified nucleotides to form a modified polynucleotide;
 - b. separating said modified polynucleotide into two or more
5 aliquots, the number of said aliquots being the same as the number of natural nucleotides replaced in step a; and,
 - c. cleaving said modified polynucleotide in each said aliquot into fragments at substantially each point of occurrence of a different one of said modified nucleotides such that each of said aliquots contains fragments from
10 cleavage at a different modified nucleotide than each other said aliquot;
 - d. determining masses of said fragments; and,
 - e. constructing said nucleotide sequence from said masses; or,
 - f. cleaving said modified polynucleotide in each said aliquot into fragments at a percentage of points of occurrence of a different modified nucleotide
15 such that each of said aliquots contains fragments from cleavage at a different modified nucleotide than each other said aliquot; and,
 - g. analyzing a sequence ladder obtained from said fragments in step f.
17. A method for determining nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide,
20 comprising:
- a. replacing a first natural nucleotide at a percentage of points of incorporation in a polynucleotide with a first modified nucleotide, wherein said first modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide or a nucleoside α -thiotriphosphate, to form a first partially modified polynucleotide
 - 25 b. cleaving said first partially modified nucleotide into fragments using said cleaving procedure of known cleavage efficiency to form a first set of nucleotide specific cleavage products;
 - c. repeating steps a and b replacing a second, a third and a fourth natural nucleotide with a second, third and fourth modified nucleotide to form a
30 second, third and fourth partially modified polynucleotide which, upon cleavage, afford a second, third and fourth set of nucleotide specific cleavage products;

- d. performing gel electrophoresis on said first, second, third and fourth set of nucleotide specific cleavage products to form a sequence ladder; and,
- e. reading said sequence of said polynucleotide from said sequence ladder.

5

18. A method for cleaving a polynucleotide during polymerization, comprising:

mixing together four different nucleotides, one or two of which are modified nucleotides; and,

10

two or more polymerases, at least one of which produces or enhances cleavage at points where said modified nucleotide is being incorporated or, if two modified nucleotides are used, at points wherein one said modified nucleotide is followed immediately in sequenced by the other said modified nucleotide.

15

19. The method of claim 18, wherein two modified nucleotides are used, one being a ribonucleotide and one being a 5'-amino-2',5'-dideoxynucleotide.

20

20. The method of claim 19, wherein two polymerases are used, one being Klenow (exo-) polymerase and one being mutant E710A Klenow (exo-) polymerase.

21. The method of any of claims 1, 6, 8, 10, 14, 15, 16, 17 or 18, wherein natural nucleotides not being replaced with modified nucleotides are replaced with mass-modified nucleotides.

25

22. The method of any of claims 1, 6, 8, 10, 14, 15, 16, 17 or 18, wherein said polynucleotide is selected from the group consisting of DNA and RNA.

30

23. The method of any of claims 1, 6, 8, 10, 14, 15, 16, 17 or 18, wherein said detection of said masses of said fragments comprises using mass spectrometry.

24. The method of claim 23 wherein said mass spectrometry is electrospray ionization mass spectrometry.

25. The method of claim 23 wherein said mass spectrometry is matrix
5 assisted desorption/ionization mass spectrometry (MALDI).

26. The method of claim 14, 15, or 16 wherein analyzing a sequence ladder comprises gel electrophoresis.

10 27. The method of claim 17, further comprising:

c. cleaving said first, second, third and fourth partially modified polynucleotide obtained in step a with one or more restriction enzymes to form restriction fragments;

d. labeling the ends of said restriction fragments; and,

15 e. purifying said labeled restriction fragments prior to performing step (b) of claim 17.

28. A method for cleaving a polynucleotide such that substantially all fragments obtained from the cleavage carry a label, comprising:

20 a. replacing a natural nucleotide partially or at substantially each point of occurrence in a polynucleotide with a modified nucleotide to form a modified polynucleotide;

b. contacting, in the presence of a phosphine covalently bonded to a label, said modified polynucleotide with a reagent or reagents which cleave(s) the
25 modified polynucleotide partially or at substantially each said point of occurrence.

29. The method of claim 28, wherein said phosphine is tris(carboxyethyl) phosphine.

30 30. The method of claim 28, wherein said label is selected from the group consisting of a fluorescent tag and a radioactive tag.

31. A method for detecting a variance in nucleotide sequence in a polynucleotide, for sequencing a polynucleotide or for genotyping a polynucleotide known to contain a polymorphism or mutation comprising:

- a. replacing one or more natural nucleotides in said polynucleotide
5 with one or more modified nucleotides wherein each modified nucleotide is modified with one or more modifications selected from the group consisting of a modified base, a modified sugar and a modified phosphate ester, provided that, if only one natural nucleotide is being replaced, said modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide or a nucleoside α -thiotriphosphate;
- 10 b. contacting said modified polynucleotide with a reagent or reagents which cleave the modified polynucleotide into fragments at site(s) of incorporation of said modified nucleotide;
- c. analyzing said fragments to detect said variance, to construct
15 said sequence or to genotype said polynucleotide.

32. The method of claim 31, wherein, said modified nucleotide comprises a modified base.

33. The method of claim 32, wherein said modified base comprises
20 modified adenine.

34. The method of claim 33, wherein said modified adenine is 7-deaza-7-nitroadenine.

25 35. The method of claim 34, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

30 36. The method of claim 34, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with a phosphine.

37. The method of claim 36, wherein contacting said modified polynucleotide with a phosphine comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with tris(2-carboxyethyl)phosphine.

5 38. The method of claim 32 wherein said modified base comprises modified cytosine.

39. The method of claim 38, wherein said modified cytosine comprises azacytosine.

10

40. The method of claim 38, wherein said modified cytosine is a cytosine substituted at the 5-position with an electron withdrawing group.

41. The method of claim 40, wherein said electron withdrawing group is
15 selected from the group consisting of nitro and halo.

42. The method of claim 39, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

20

43. The method of claim 42, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with tris(2-carboxyethyl)phosphine.

25 44. The method of claim 32, wherein said modified base comprises modified guanine.

45. The method of claim 44, wherein said modified guanine is 7-methyl-guanine.

30

46. The method of claim 45, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

5 47. The method of claim 44, wherein said modified guanine is N²-allylguanine.

48. The method of claim 47, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with an
10 electrophile.

49. The method of claim 48, wherein said electrophile is iodine.

50. The method of claim 32, wherein said modified base is selected from
15 the group consisting of modified thymine and modified uracil.

51. The method of claim 50, wherein said modified thymine or said modified uracil is 5-hydroxyuracil.

20 52. The method of claim 51, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises:
a. contacting said polynucleotide with a chemical oxidant; and, then
b. contacting said polynucleotide with chemical base.

25 53. The method of claim 31, wherein said modified nucleotide comprise a modified sugar provided that, when only one type of modified nucleotide is being used, it is not a ribonucleotide or a nucleoside α -thiophosphate.

54. The method of claim 53, wherein said modified sugar comprises a 2-
30 ketosugar.

55. The method of claim 54, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

5 56. The method of claim 53, wherein said modified sugar comprises arabinose.

57. The method of claim 56, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical
10 base.

58. The method of claim 53, wherein said modified sugar comprises a 4-hydroxymethyl group.

15 59. The method of claim 58, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

60. The method of claim 53, wherein said modified sugar comprises
20 hydroxycyclopentane.

61. The method of claim 60, wherein said hydroxycyclopentane comprises 1-hydroxy- or 2-hydroxycyclopentane.

25 62. The method of claim 60, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

63. The method of claim 53, wherein said modified sugar comprises an
30 azidosugar.

64. The method of claim 63, wherein said azidosugar comprises 2'-azido, 4'-azido or 4'-azidomethyl sugar.

5 65. The method of claim 63, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said polynucleotide with tris(2-carboxyethyl)-phosphine (TCEP).

10 66. The method of claim 53, wherein said modified sugar comprises a group capable of photolyzing to form a free radical.

67. The method of claim 66, wherein said group capable of photolyzing to form a free radical is selected from the group consisting of phenylselenyl and t-butylcarboxy.

15 68. The method of claim 66, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with ultraviolet light.

20 69. The method of claim 53, wherein said modified sugar comprises a cyanosugar.

70. The method of claim 69, wherein said cyanosugar is selected from the group consisting of 2'-cyanosugar and 2''-cyanosugar.

25 71. The method of claim 69, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

30 72. The method of claim 53, wherein said modified sugar comprises an electron withdrawing group.

73. The method of claim 72, wherein said electron withdrawing group is selected from the group consisting of fluorine, azido, methoxy and nitro.

74. The method of claim 73, wherein said electron withdrawing group is
5 located at the 2', 2" or 4' position of the modified sugar.

75. The method of claim 72, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical
base.
10

76. The method of claim 53, wherein said modified sugar comprises an electron-withdrawing element in the sugar ring.

77. The method of claim 76, wherein said electron-withdrawing element
15 comprise nitrogen.

78. The method of claim 77, wherein said nitrogen replaces the ring oxygen of said modified sugar.

79. The method of claim 77, wherein said nitrogen replaces a ring carbon
20 of said modified sugar.

80. The method of claim 78, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical
25 base.

81. The method of claim 79, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical
base.
30

82. The method of claim 53, wherein said modified sugar comprise a mercapto group.

83. The method of claim 82, wherein said mercapto group is located in the 2' position of the sugar.

5 84. The method of claim 82, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

10 85. The method of claim 53, wherein said modified sugar is selected from the group consisting of a 5'-methylene-sugar, a 5'-keto-sugar and a 5',5'-difluoro-sugar.

15 86. The method of claim 85, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

20 87. The method of claim 31, wherein said modified nucleotide comprises a modified phosphate ester provided, when only one type of modified nucleotide is used, it is not a nucleoside α -thiotriphosphate.

 88. The method of claim 87, wherein said modified phosphate ester comprises a phosphorothioate.

25 89. The method of claim 88, wherein the sulfur atom of said phosphorothioate is not covalently bonded to a sugar ring.

 90. The method of claim 89, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises:

- 30 a. contacting said sulfur of said phosphorothioate with an alkylating agent; and,
 b. then contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

91. The method of claim 90, wherein said alkylating agent is methyl iodide.
92. The method of claim 89, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide
5 into fragments comprises contacting said sulfur of said phosphorothioate with β -mercaptoethanol in a chemical base.
93. The method of claim 92, wherein said chemical base comprises
sodium methoxide in methanol.
10
94. The method of claim 88, wherein the sulfur atom of said
phosphorothiolate is covalently bonded to a sugar ring.
95. The method of claim 94, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide
15 into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical
base.
96. The method of claim 87, wherein said modified phosphate ester
comprises a phosphoramidate.
20
97. The method of claim 96, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide
into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with acid.
98. The method of claim 87, wherein said modified phosphate ester
25 comprises a group selected from the group consisting of alkyl phosphonate and alkyl
phosphorotriester.
99. The method of claim 98, wherein said alkyl is methyl.
- 30 100. The method of claim 96, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide
into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with acid.

101. The method of claim 31, comprising replacing a first and a second natural nucleotide with a first and a second modified nucleotide such that said polynucleotide can be specifically cleaved at sites where said first modified nucleotide is followed immediately in sequence by said second modified nucleotide.

5

102. The method of claim 101, wherein:

said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to a sulfur atom of a phosphorothioate group; and,

10 said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'hydroxy group, is contiguous to, and 5' of, said first modified nucleotide.

103. The method of claim 102, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

15

104. The method of claim 101, wherein:

said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 3' position to a sulfur atom of a phosphorothioate group; and,

20 said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'-hydroxy group, is contiguous to and 3' of said first modified nucleotide.

105. The method of claim 104 wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

25

106. The method of claim 101, wherein:

said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to a first oxygen atom of a phosphorothioate group;

30 said second modified nucleotide is substituted at its 2' position with a leaving group; and,

said second modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 3' position to a second oxygen of said phosphorothioate group.

107. The method of claim 106, wherein said leaving group is selected from the group consisting of fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine.

5 108. The method of claim 106, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

10 109. The method of claim 108, wherein said chemical base comprises sodium methoxide.

15 110. The method of claim 101, wherein:
 said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to a first oxygen atom of a phosphorothioate group;
 said second modified nucleotide is substituted at its 4' position with a leaving group; and,
 said second modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 3' position to a second oxygen of said phosphorothioate group.

20 111. The method of claim 110, wherein said leaving group is selected from the group consisting of fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine.

25 112. The method of claim 110, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with chemical base.

 113. The method of claim 112, wherein said chemical base comprises sodium methoxide.

30 114. The method of claim 101, wherein:
 said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to a first oxygen atom of a phosphorothioate group;

said second modified nucleotide is substituted at its 2' position with one or two fluorine atoms; and,

said second modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 3' position to a second oxygen of said phosphorothioate group.

5

115. The method of claim 114, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises:

- a. contacting said modified polynucleotide with ethylene sulfide or β -mercaptoethanol; and then,
- 10 b. contacting said modified polynucleotide with a chemical base.

116. The method of claim 115, wherein said chemical base comprises sodium methoxide.

15 117. The method of claim 101, wherein:

said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to a first oxygen atom of a phosphorothioate group;

said second modified nucleotide is substituted at its 2' position with a hydroxy group; and,

20 said second modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 3' position to a second oxygen of said phosphorothioate group.

118. The method of claim 117, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises:

- 25 a. contacting said modified polynucleotide with a metal oxidant; and then,
- b. contacting said modified polynucleotide with a chemical base.

119. The method of claim 118, wherein said metal oxidant is selected from
30 the group consisting of Cu^{II} and Fe^{III} .

120. The method of claim 118, wherein said chemical base is selected from the group consisting of dilute hydroxide, piperidine and dilute ammonium hydroxide.

121. The method of claim 101, wherein:

- 5 said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to a nitrogen atom of a phosphoramidate group; and,
 said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'-hydroxy group, is contiguous to and 5' of said first modified nucleotide.

- 10 122. The method of claim 121, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with acid.

123. The method of claim 101, wherein:

- 15 said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 3' position to a nitrogen atom of a phosphoramidate group; and,
 said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'-hydroxy group, is contiguous to and 3' of said first modified nucleotide.

- 20 124. The method of claim 123, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with acid.

125. The method of claim 101, wherein:

- 25 said first modified nucleotide is covalently bonded at its 5' position to an oxygen atom of an alkylphosphonate or an alkylphosphorotriester group; and,
 said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'-hydroxy group, is contiguous to said first modified nucleotide.

- 30 126. The method of claim 125, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with acid.

127. The method of claim 101, wherein:

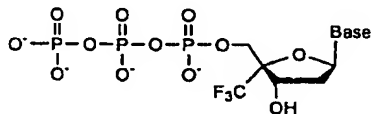
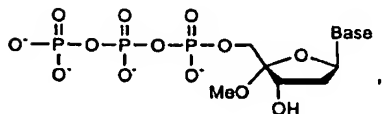
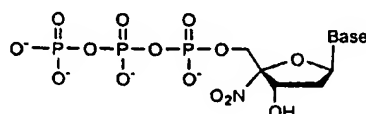
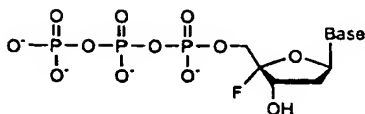
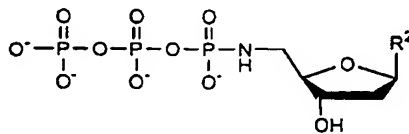
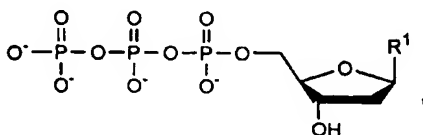
said first modified nucleotide has an electron-withdrawing group at its 4' position; and,

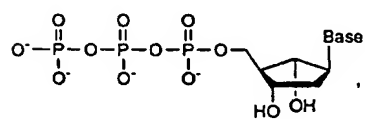
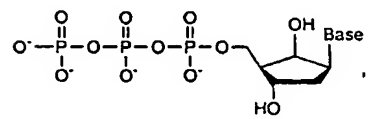
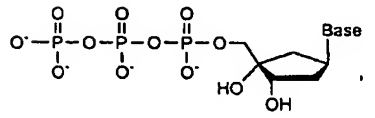
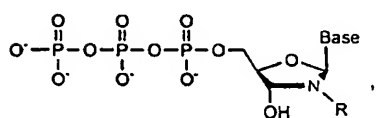
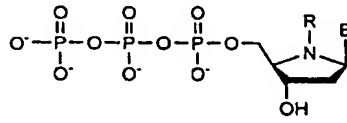
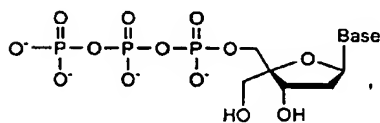
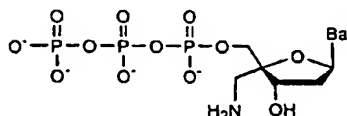
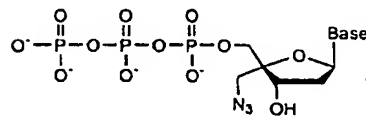
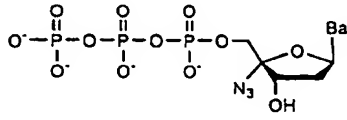
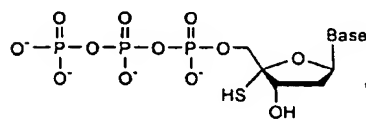
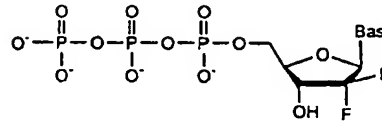
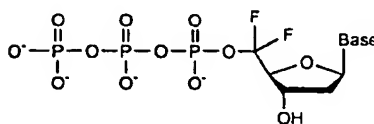
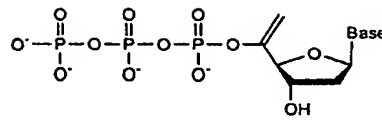
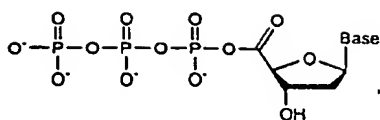
5 said second modified nucleotide, which is modified with a 2'-hydroxy group, is contiguous to and 5' of said first modified nucleotide.

128. The method of claim 127, wherein cleaving said modified polynucleotide into fragments comprises contacting said modified polynucleotide with acid.

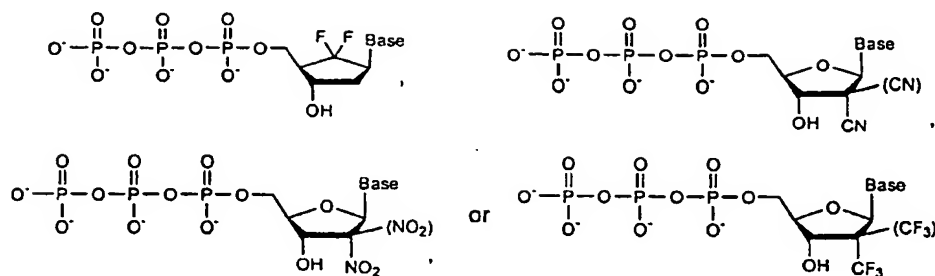
10

129. A compound having the chemical structure:

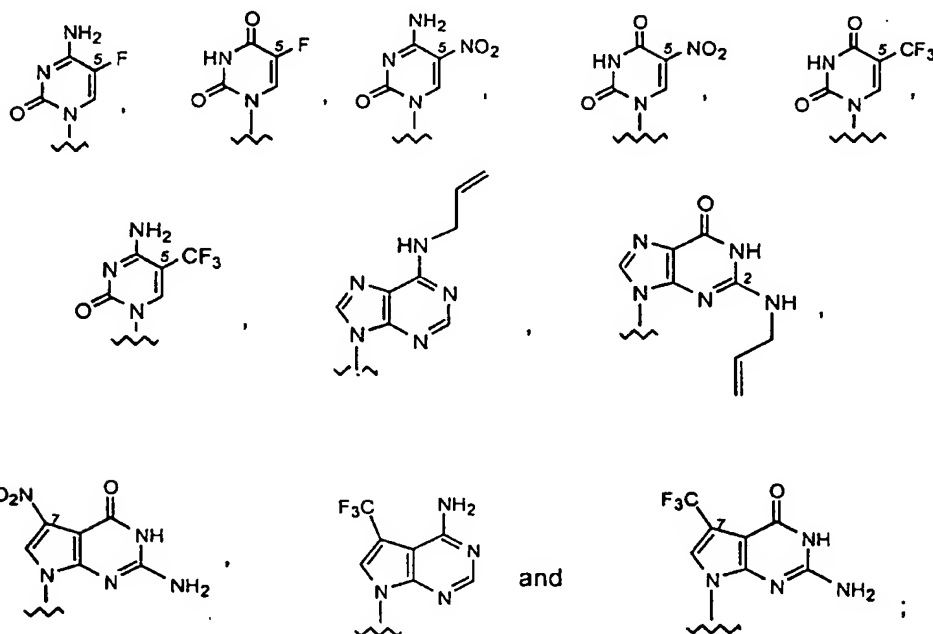




217



wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:

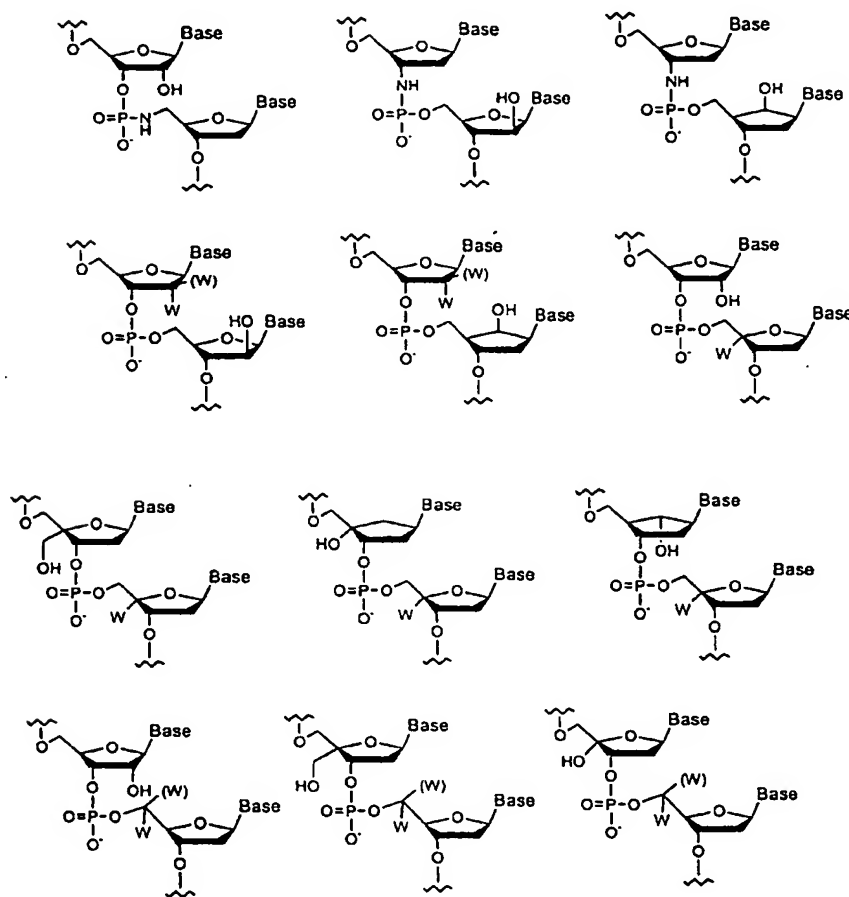


5

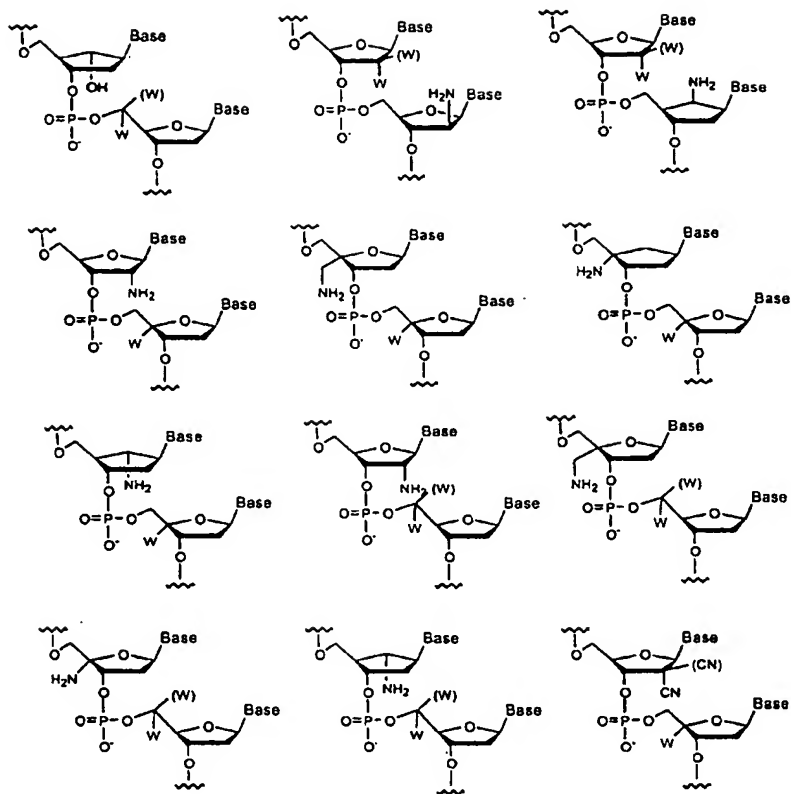
R² is selected from the group consisting of cytosine, guanine, inosine and uracil;
and, "Base" is selected from the group consisting of cytosine, guanine, inosine,
thymine and uracil.

10

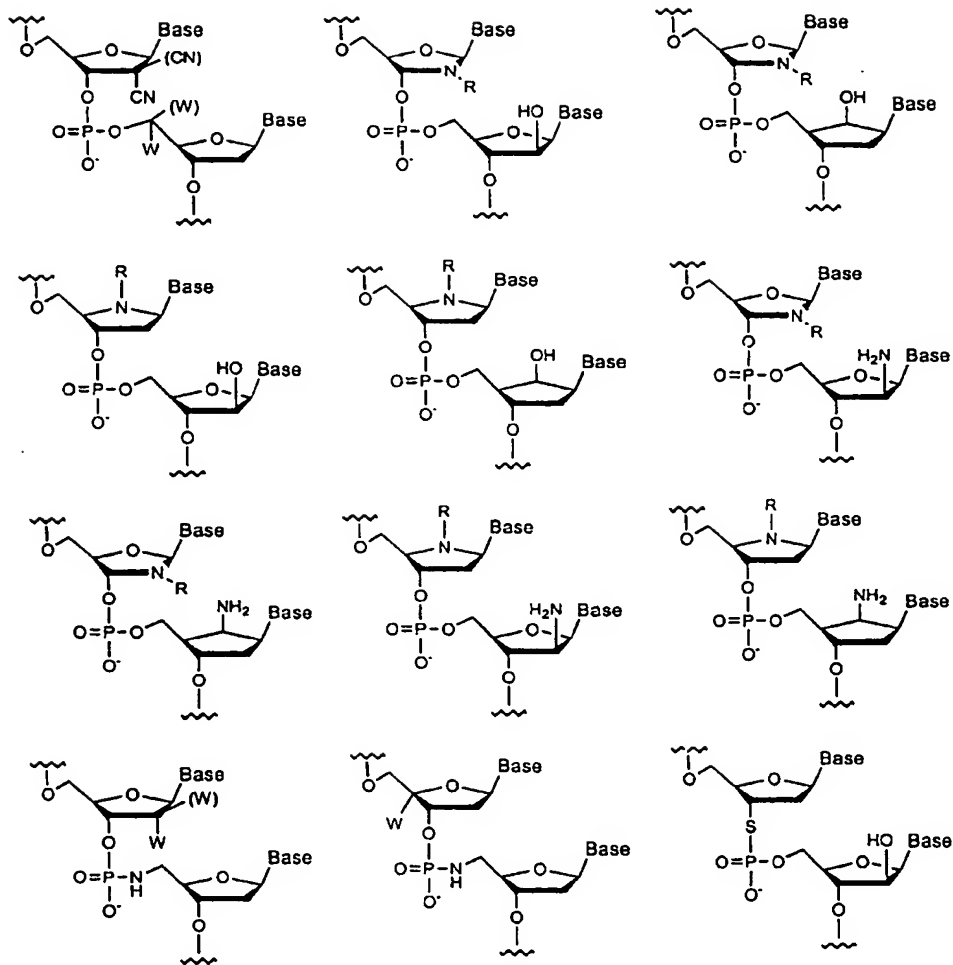
130. A polynucleotide comprising a dinucleotide sequence selected from the group consisting of:



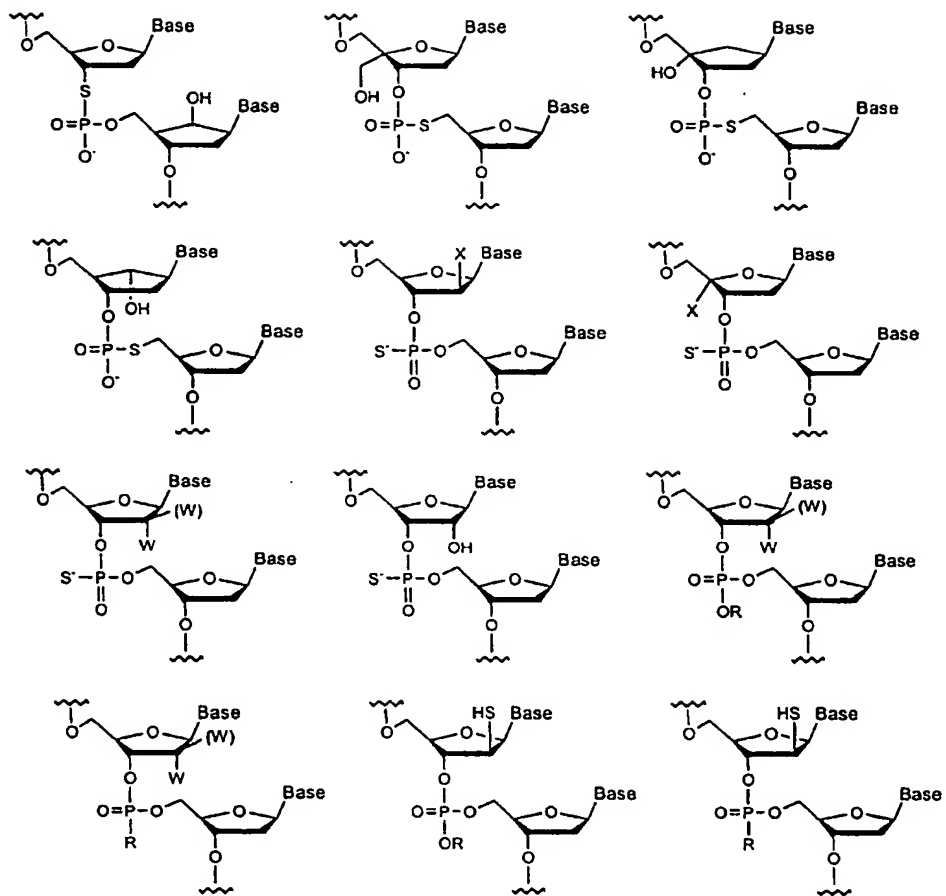
5



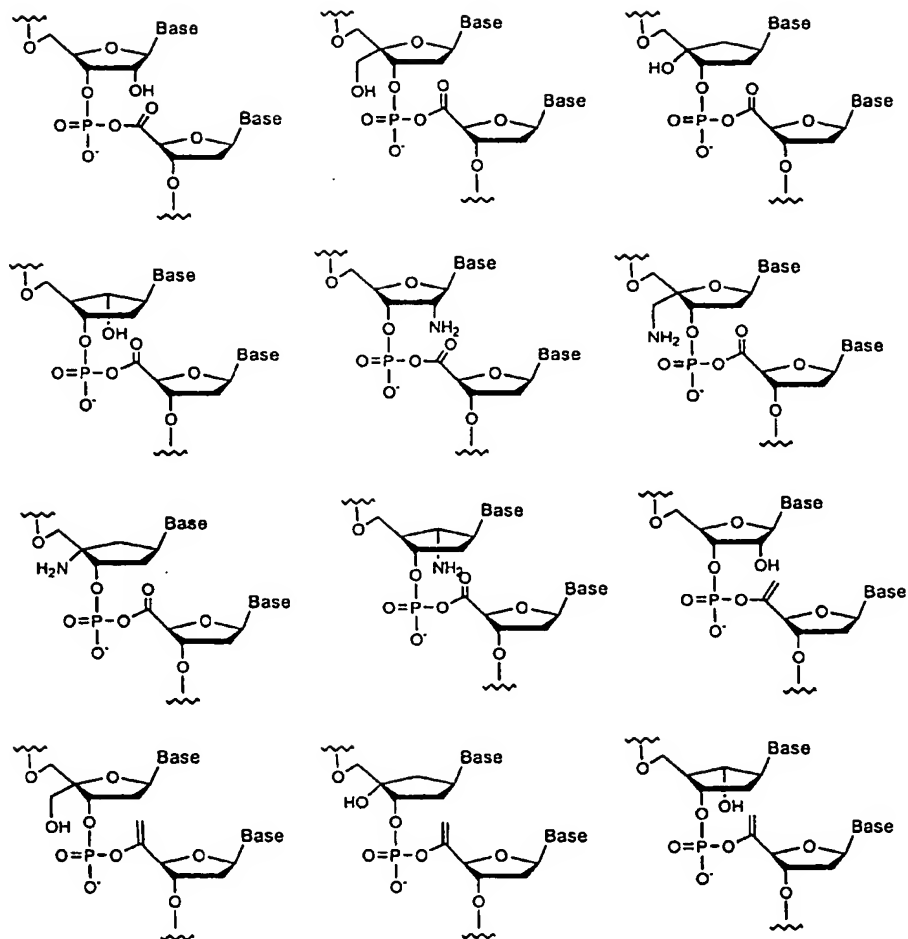
10

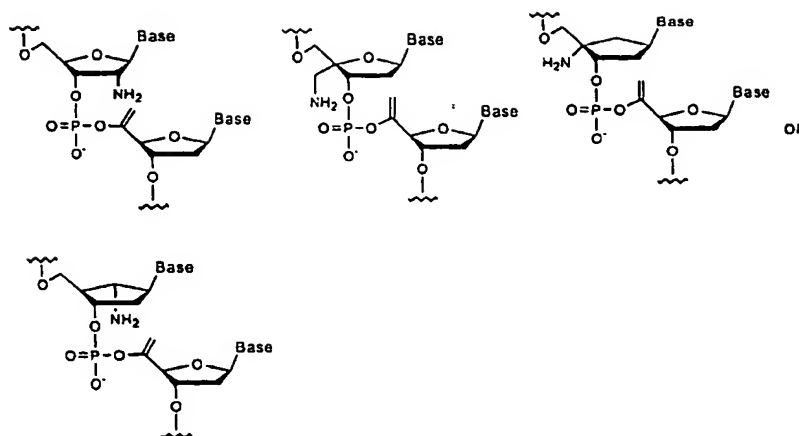


5



5





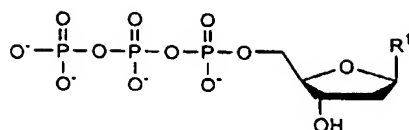
wherein

- 5 each "Base" is independently selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine, guanine and thymine;
 W is an electron withdrawing group;
 X is a leaving group; and,
 R is a lower alkyl group; wherein,
 10 a second W or X shown on the same carbon atom represents that a single W or X can be in either position or both Ws or Xs can exist simultaneously;

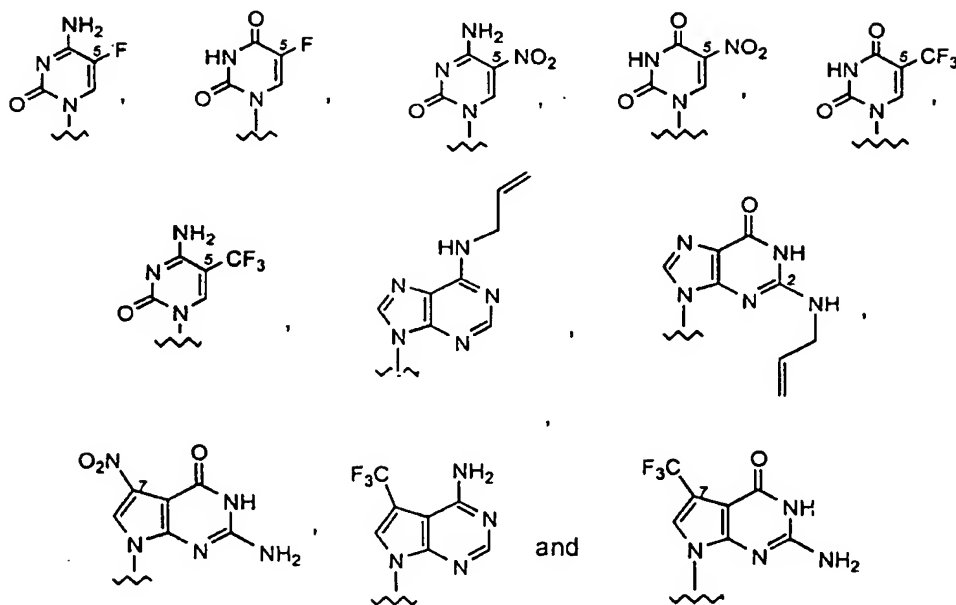
131. The compound of claim 130, wherein said electron withdrawing group is selected from the group consisting of F, Cl, Br, I, NO₂, C≡N, -C(O)OH and OH.
 15

132. The compound of claim 130, wherein said leaving group is selected from the group consisting of Cl, Br, I and OTs.

133. A method for synthesizing a polynucleotide comprising mixing a
 20 compound having the chemical structure:



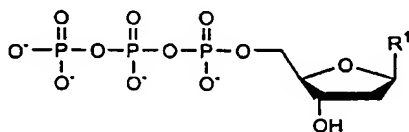
wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:



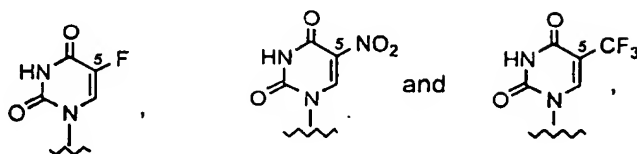
5

with adenosine triphosphate, guanosine triphosphate, and thymidine or uridine triphosphate in the presence of one or more polymerases.

134. A method for synthesizing a polynucleotide comprising mixing a
10 compound having the chemical structure:



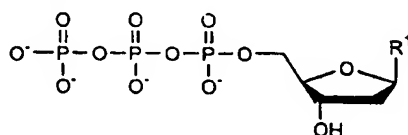
wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:



with adenosine triphosphate, cytidine triphosphate and guanosine triphosphate in the presence of one or more polymerases.

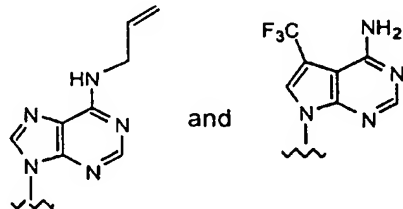
5

135. A method for synthesizing a polynucleotide, comprising mixing a compound having the chemical structure:



wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:

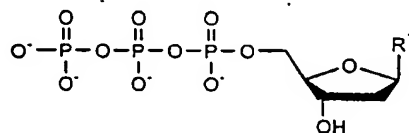
10



with cytidine triphosphate, guanosine triphosphate, and thymidine triphosphate in the presence of one or more polymerases.

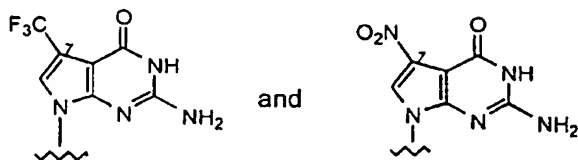
15

136. A method for synthesizing a polynucleotide, comprising mixing a compound having the chemical structure:



5

wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:



with adenosine triphosphate, cytidine triphosphate and thymidine triphosphate in the presence of one or more polymerases.

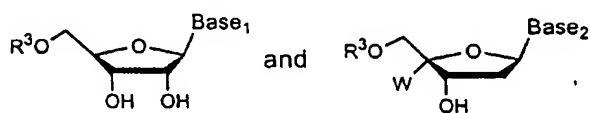
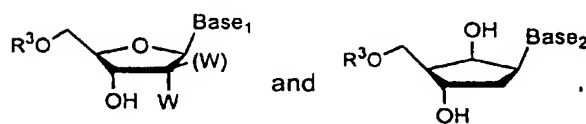
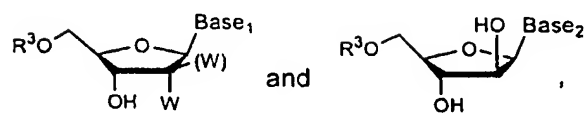
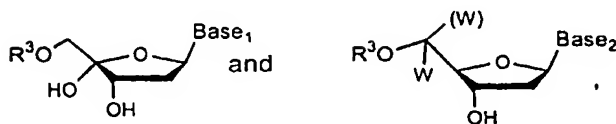
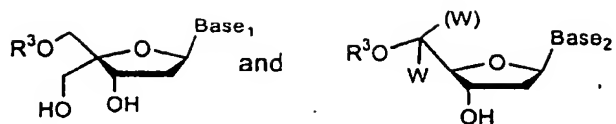
10

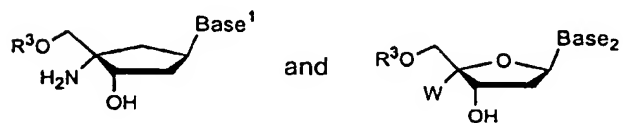
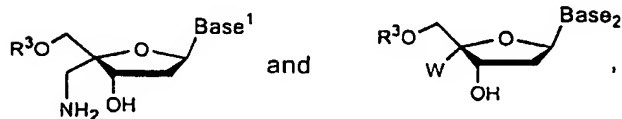
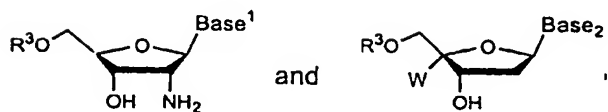
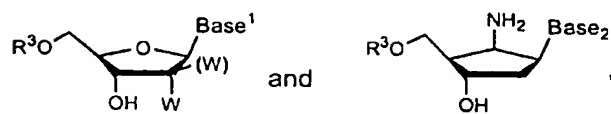
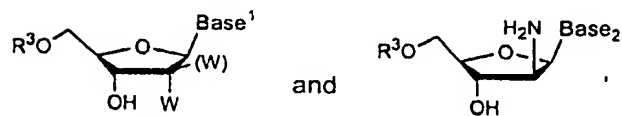
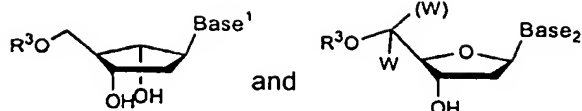
137. A method for synthesizing a polynucleotide, comprising mixing a compound of claim 129 with whichever three of the four nucleoside triphosphates, adenosine triphosphate, cytidine triphosphate, guanosine triphosphate and thymidine triphosphate, do not contain a base (or its substitute) present in the compound of claim 129 used, in the presence of one or more polymerases.

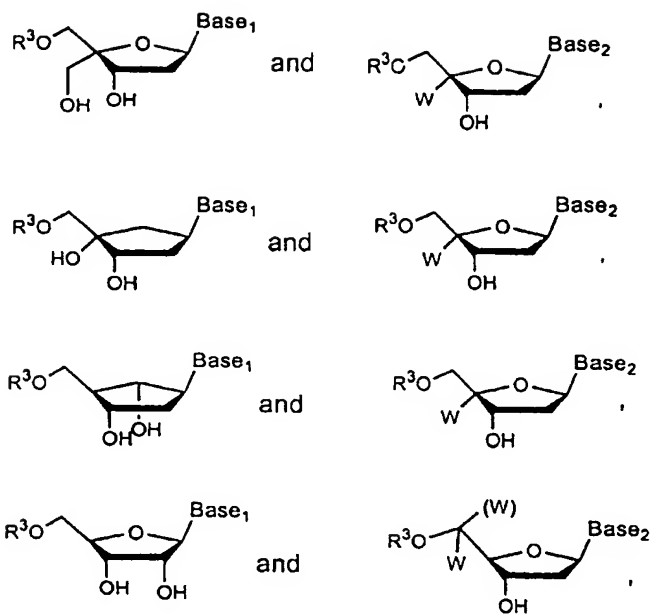
15

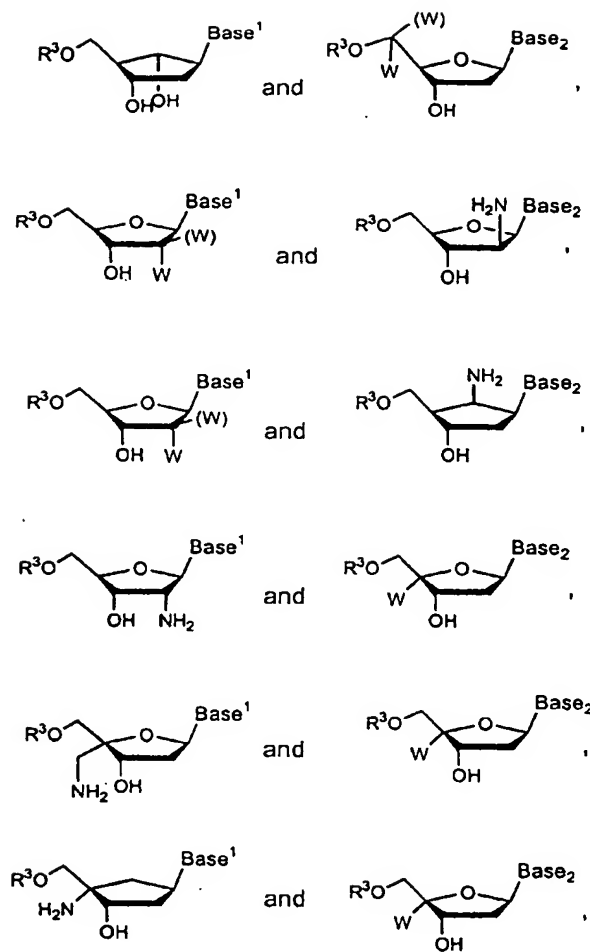
138. A method for synthesizing a polynucleotide, comprising mixing one of the following pairs of compounds:

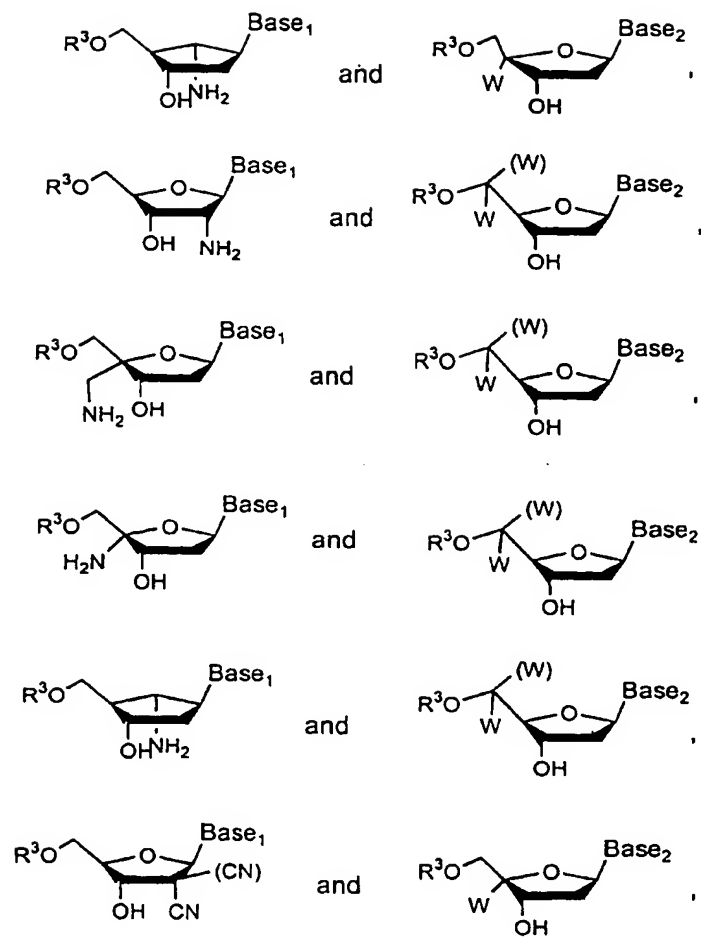
20

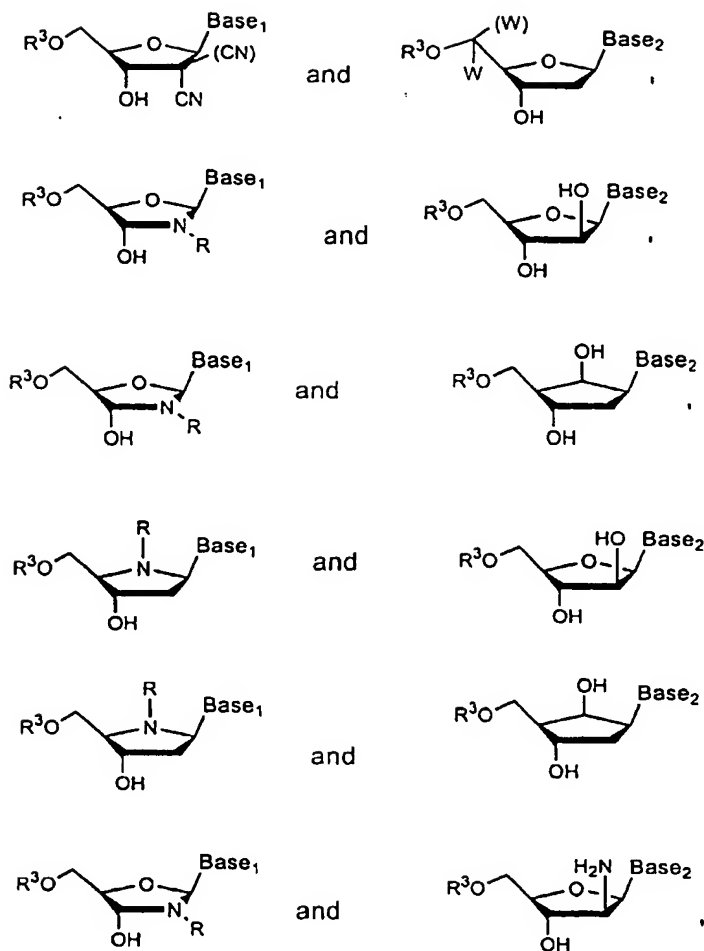


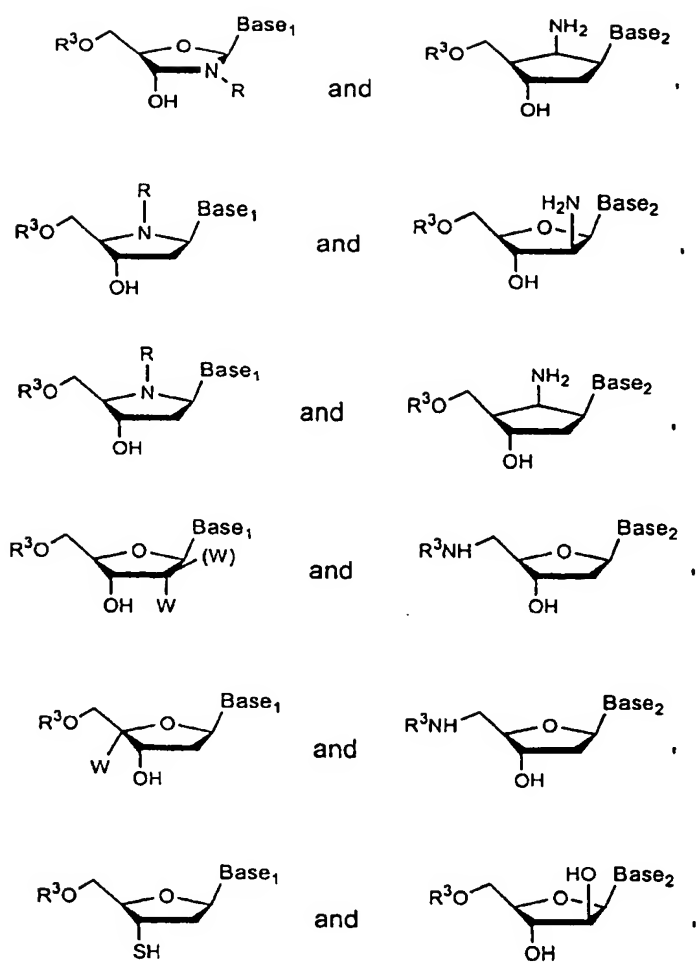


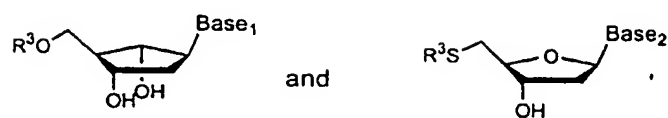
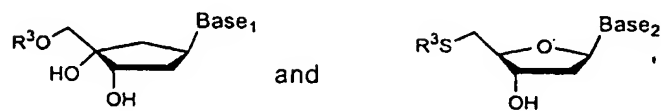
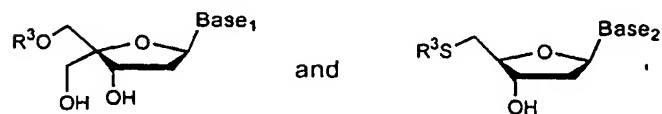
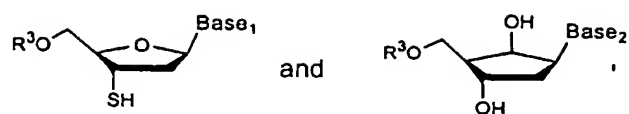


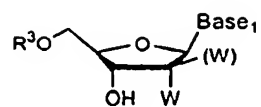




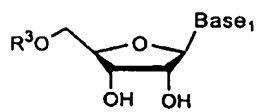
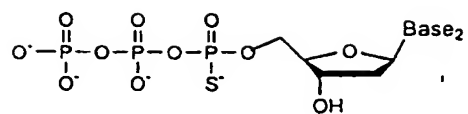




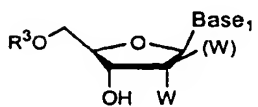
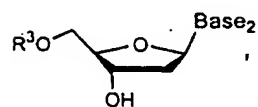




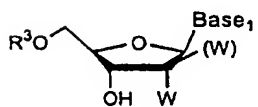
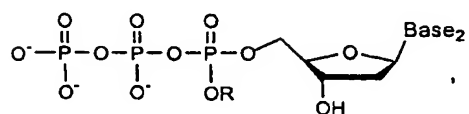
and



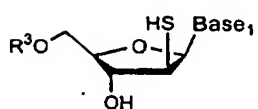
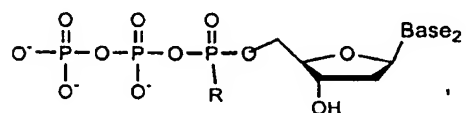
and



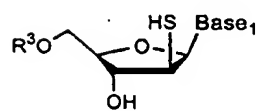
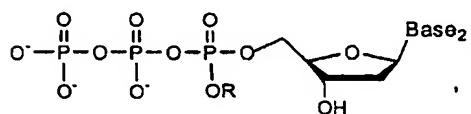
and



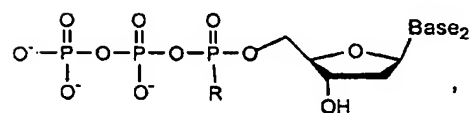
and

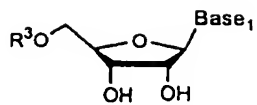


and

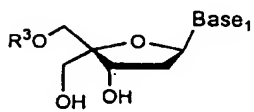
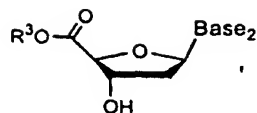


and

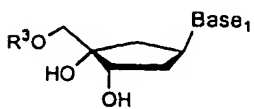
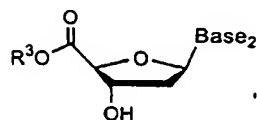




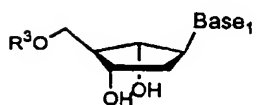
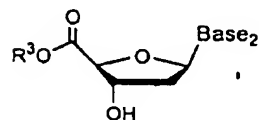
and



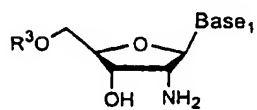
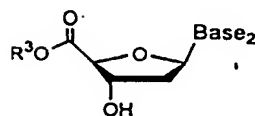
and



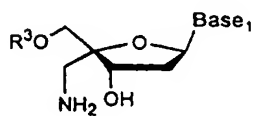
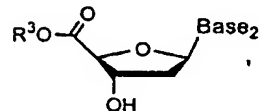
and



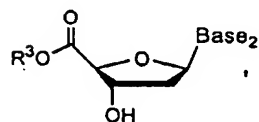
and

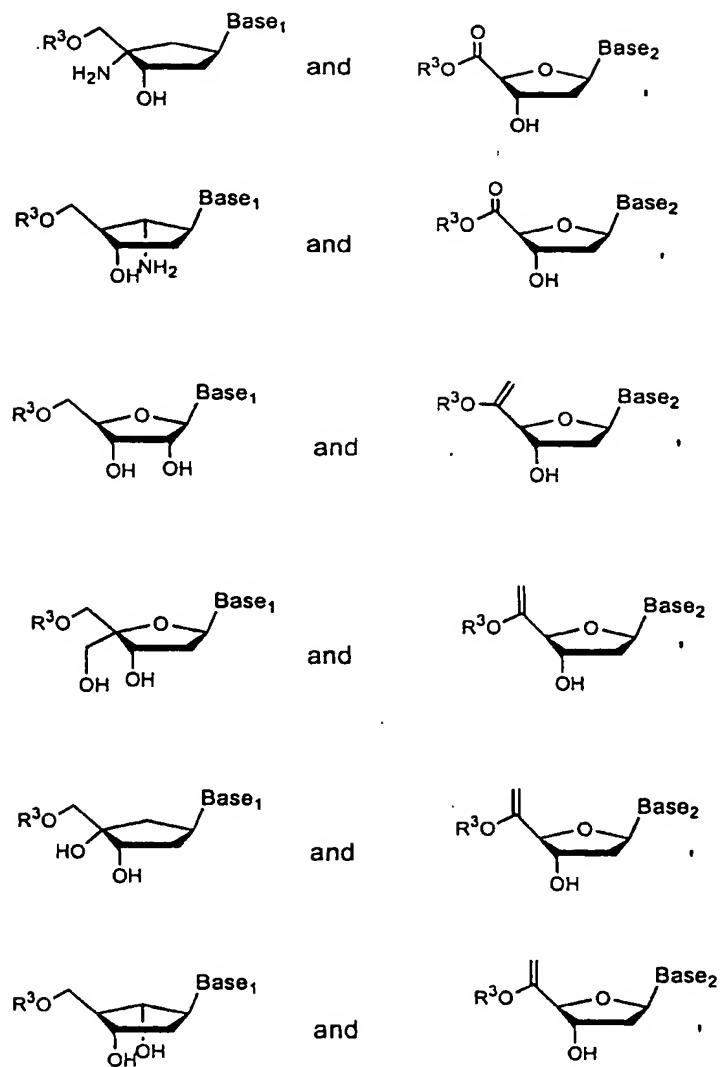


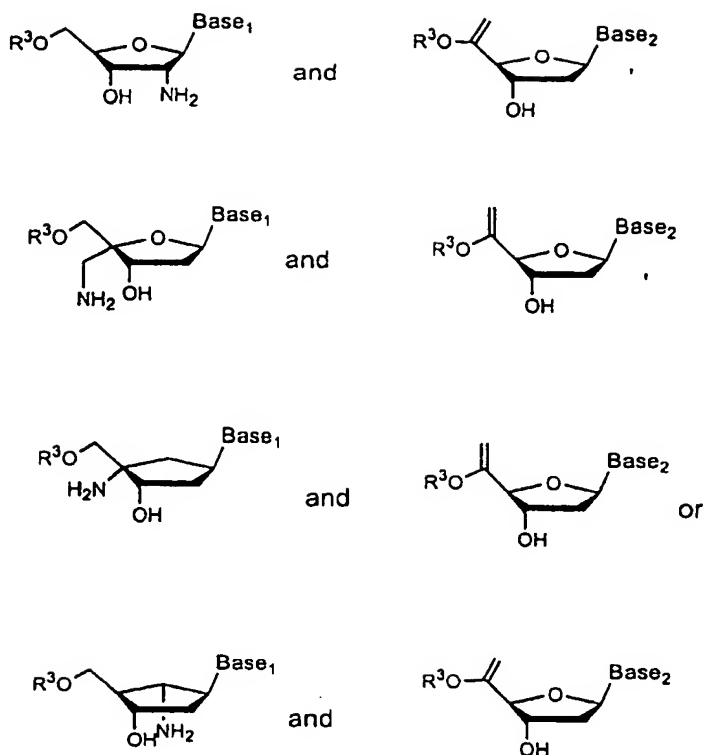
and



and







wherein:

Base₁ is selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine, guanine or inosine,
 5 and thymine or uracil;

Base₂ is selected from the group consisting of the remaining three bases which are
 not Base₁;

R³ is O⁻-P(=O)(O⁻)-O-P(=O)(O⁻)-O-P(=O)(O⁻)-O-;

R is a lower alkyl group;

10 W is an electron-withdrawing group;

X is a leaving group; wherein

a second W or X shown on the same carbon atom represents that a single W
 or X can be in either position or both Ws or Xs can exist simultaneously;

with whichever two of the four nucleoside triphosphates, adenosine triphosphate, cytidine triphosphate, guanosine triphosphate and thymidine triphosphate, do not contain base-1 or base-2 (or their substitutes), in the presence of one or more polymerases.

5

139. A mutant polymerase which is capable of catalyzing the incorporation of a modified nucleotide into a polynucleotide wherein said modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide by a process comprising DNA shuffling.

10

140. The polymerase of claim 139, wherein said DNA shuffling process comprises:

15

- a. selecting one or more known polymerase(s);
- b. performing DNA shuffling;
- c. transforming shuffled DNA into a host cell;
- d. growing host cell colonies;
- e. forming a lysate from said host cell colony;
- f. adding a DNA template containing a detectable reporter sequence, the modified nucleotide or nucleotides whose incorporation into a polynucleotide is desired and the natural nucleotides not being replaced by said modified nucleotide(s); and,
- g. examining the lysate for the presence of the detectable reporter.

20

141. The polymerase of claim 139, wherein said DNA shuffling process comprises:

25

- a. selecting a known polymerase or two or more known polymerases having different sequences or different biochemical properties or both;
- b. performing DNA shuffling;
- c. transforming said shuffled DNA into a host to form a library of transformants in host cell colonies;
- d. preparing first separate pools of said transformants by plating said host cell colonies;
- e. forming a lysate from each said first separate pool host cell colonies;

30

- f. removing all natural nucleotides from each said lysate;
- g. combining each said lysate with:
 - i. a single-stranded DNA template comprising a sequence corresponding to an RNA polymerase promoter followed by a reporter sequence;
 - ii. a single-stranded DNA primer complementary to one end of said template;
 - iii. the modified nucleotide or nucleotides whose incorporation into said polynucleotide is desired;
 - iv. each natural nucleotide not being replaced by said modified nucleotide or nucleotides;
- h. adding RNA polymerase to each said combined lysate;
- i. examining each said combined lysate for the presence of said reporter sequence;
- j. creating second separate pools of transformants in host cell colonies from each said first separate pool of host cell colonies in which the presence of said reporter is detected;
- k. forming a lysate from each said second separate pool of host cell colonies;
- l. repeating steps g, h, i, j, k and l to form separate pools of transformants in host cell colonies until only one host cell colony remains which contains said polymerase; and,
- m. recloning said polymerase from said one host cell colony into a protein expression vector.

142. A mutant polymerase which is capable of catalyzing the incorporation of a modified nucleotide into a polynucleotide, wherein said modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide obtained by a process comprising cell senescence selection.

143. The polymerase of claim 142, wherein said cell senescence selection comprises:

- a. mutagenizing a known polymerase to form a library of mutant polymerases;
- b. cloning said library into a vector;
- c. transforming said vector into host cells selected so as to be
- 5 susceptible to being killed by a selected chemical only when said cell is actively growing;
- d. adding a modified nucleotide;
- e. growing said host cells;
- f. treating said host cells with said selected chemical;
- 10 g. separating living cells from dead cells; and,
- h. isolating said polymerase or polymerases from said living cells.
144. The polymerase of claim 143, wherein steps d to g are repeated one or more times.
- 15
145. The polymerase of claim 142, wherein said process comprises:
- a. mutagenizing a known polymerase to form a library of mutant polymerases;
- b. cloning said library of mutant polymerases into a plasmid vector;
- 20 c. transforming with said plasmid vector bacterial cells that, when growing, are susceptible to an antibiotic,
- d. selecting transfectants using said antibiotic;
- e. introducing a modified nucleotide, as the corresponding nucleoside triphosphate, into the bacterial cells;
- 25 f. growing the cells;
- g. adding an antibiotic which will kill bacterial cells that are actively growing;
- h. isolating said bacterial cells;
- i. growing said bacterial cells in fresh medium containing no
- 30 antibiotic;
- j. selecting live cells from growing colonies;
- k. isolating said plasmid vector from said live cells;

- l. isolating said polymerase; and,
- m. assaying said polymerase.

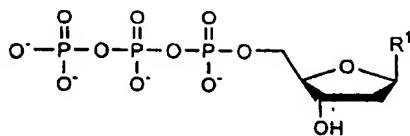
146. The polymerase of claim 145, wherein steps c to k of the process are
5 repeated one or more additional times before proceeding to step l.

147. The polymerase of claim 139, wherein said polymerase is a heat stable polymerase.

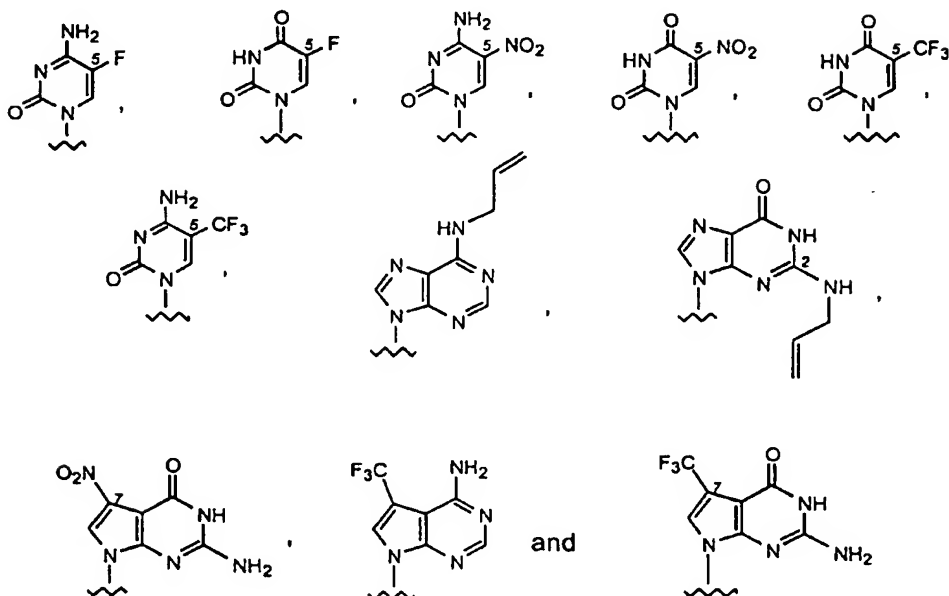
10 148. A mutant polymerase which is capable of catalyzing the incorporation of a modified nucleotide into a polynucleotide, wherein said modified nucleotide is not a ribonucleotide obtained by a process comprising phage display.

149. The mutant polymerase of claim 148, wherein said phage display
15 comprises:
 (a) selecting a DNA polymerase;
 (b) expressing said polymerase in a bacteriophage vector as a fusion to a bacteriophage coat protein;
 (c) attaching an oligonucleotide to the surface of said phage;
20 (d) forming a primer template complex either by addition of a second oligonucleotide complementary to the oligonucleotide of (c) or by formation of a self-priming complex using intramolecular complementarity of the oligonucleotide of (c);
 (e) performing a primer extension in the presence of a modified nucleotide or nucleotides and those natural nucleotides that are not being replaced by said
25 modified nucleotide(s), one of said natural nucleotides being labeled with a detectable reporter; and,
 (f) sorting the phage with detectable reporter from the phage without detectable reporter.

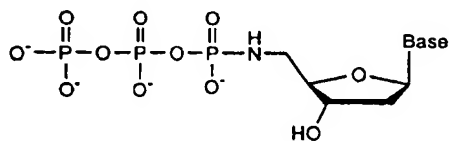
30 150. The polymerase of claim 139, 142 or 148, wherein said modified nucleotide is selected from the group consisting of:
 a compound having the chemical structure:

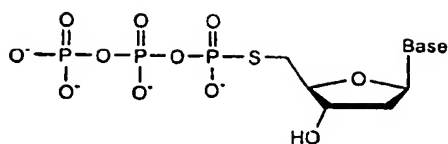


wherein R¹ is selected from the group consisting of:



a compound having the chemical structure:

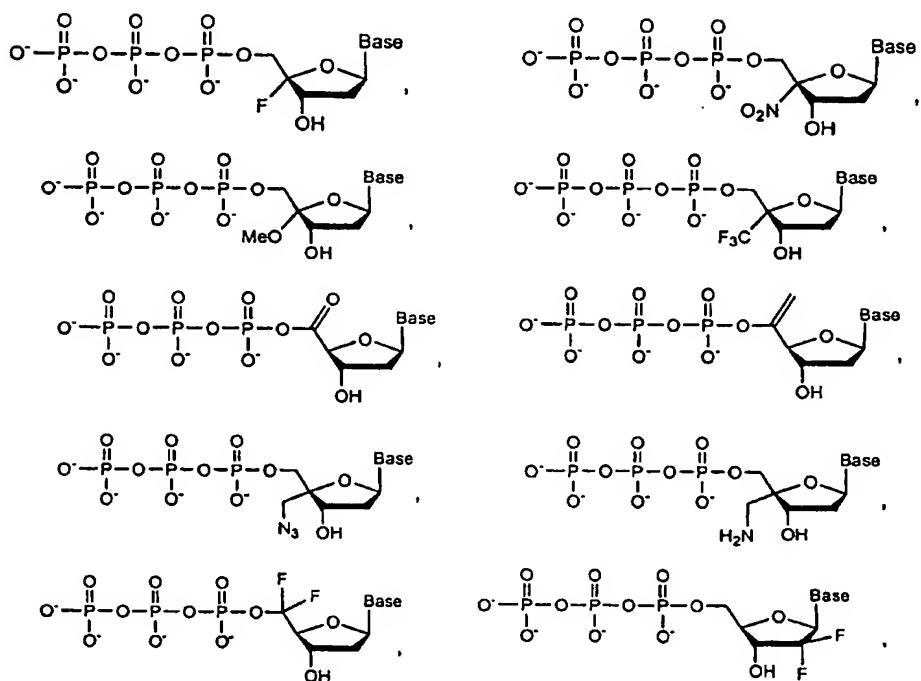


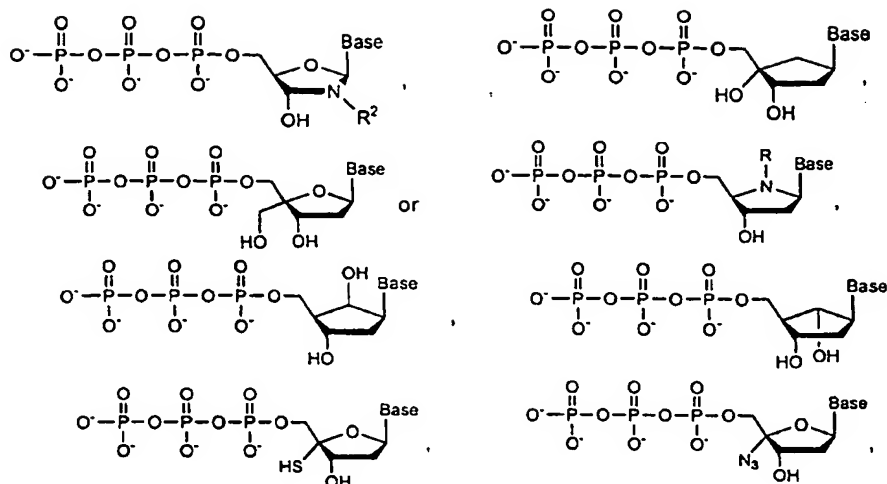


wherein said "Base" is selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine, guanine, inosine and uracil;

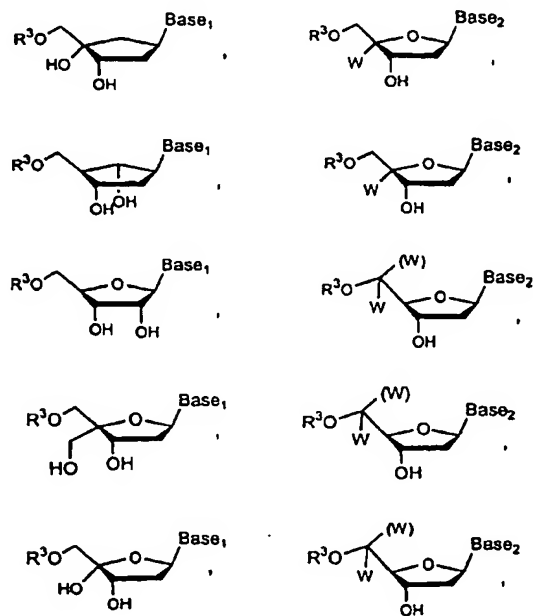
5

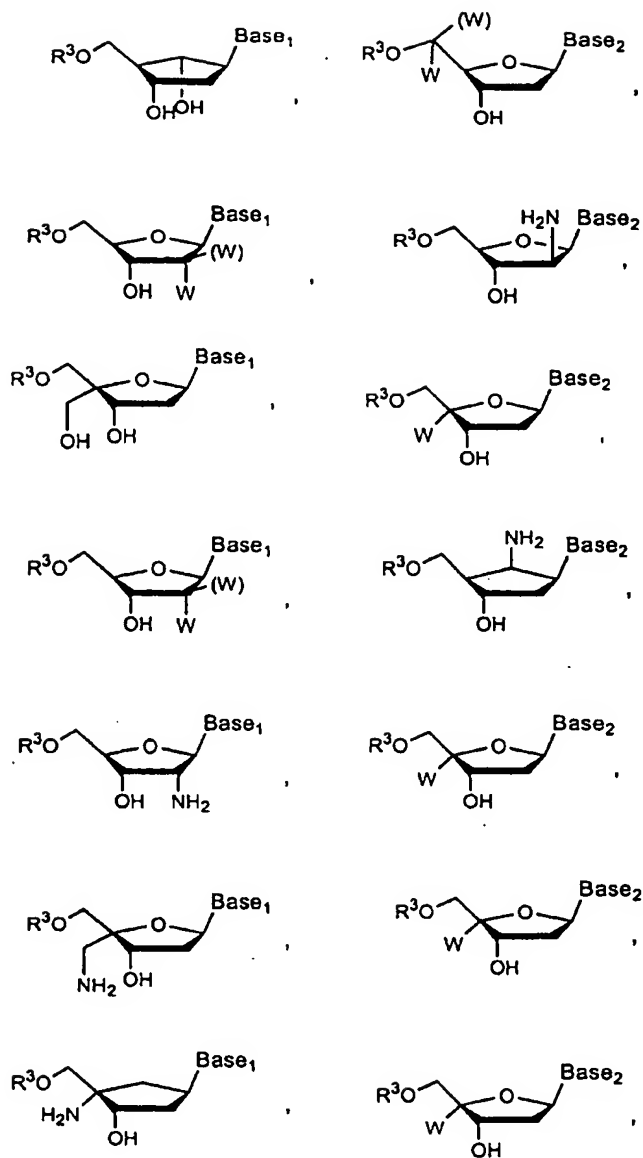
a compound having the chemical structure:

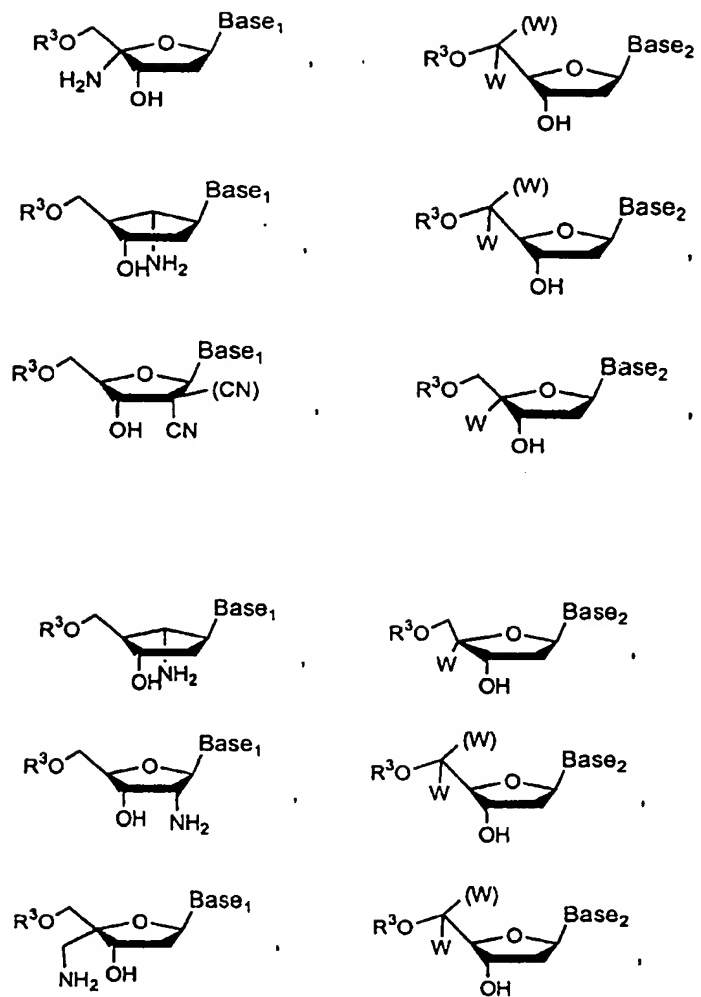


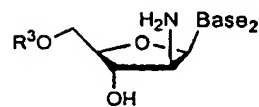
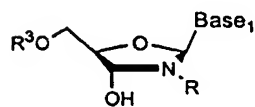
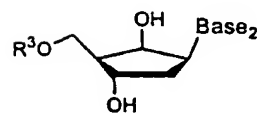
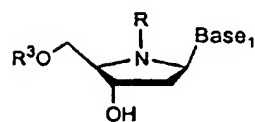
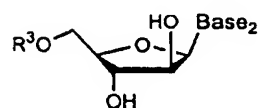
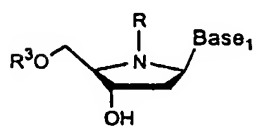
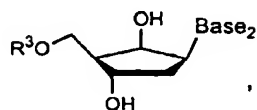
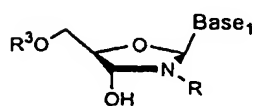
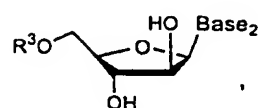
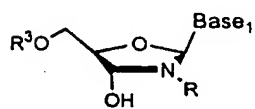
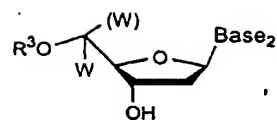
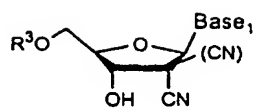


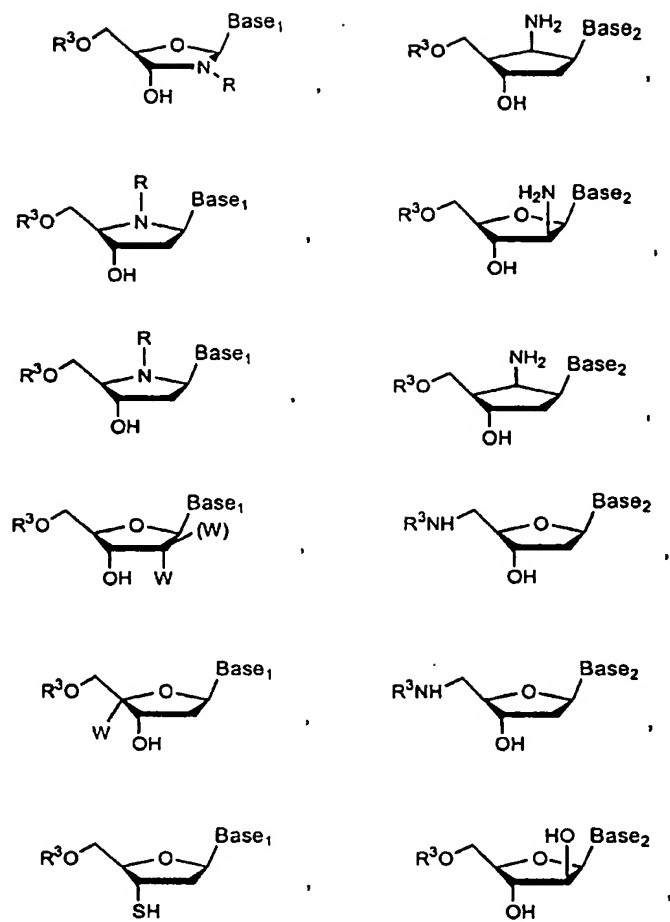
- wherein said "Base" is selected from the group consisting of adenine, cytosine,
 5 guanine, inosine, thymine and uracil; and,
 a compound having the chemical structure:

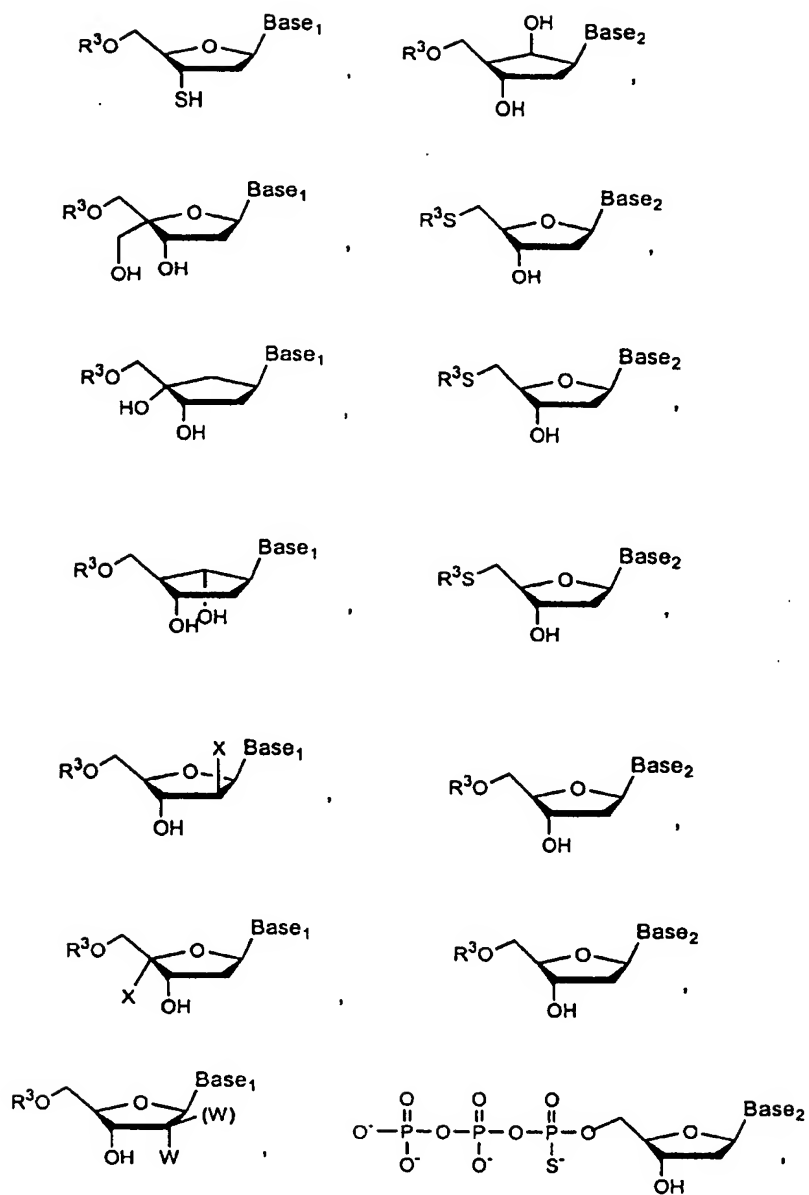


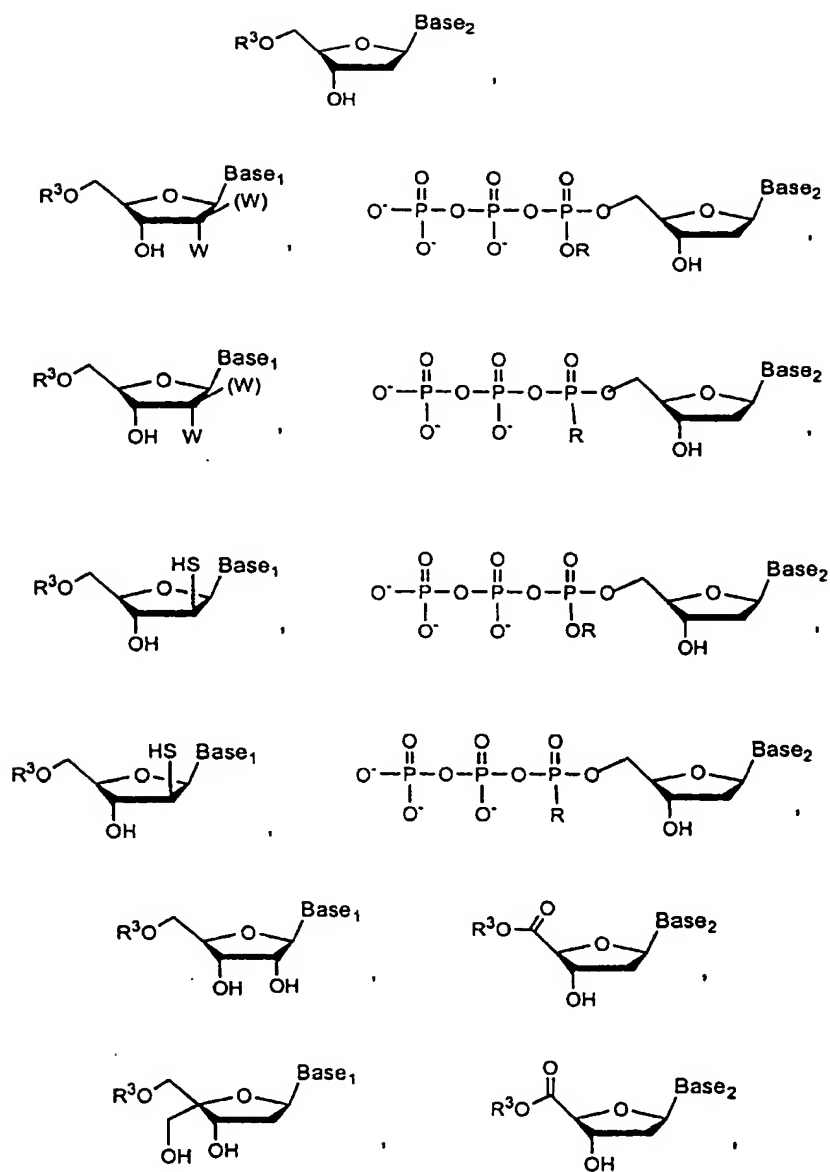


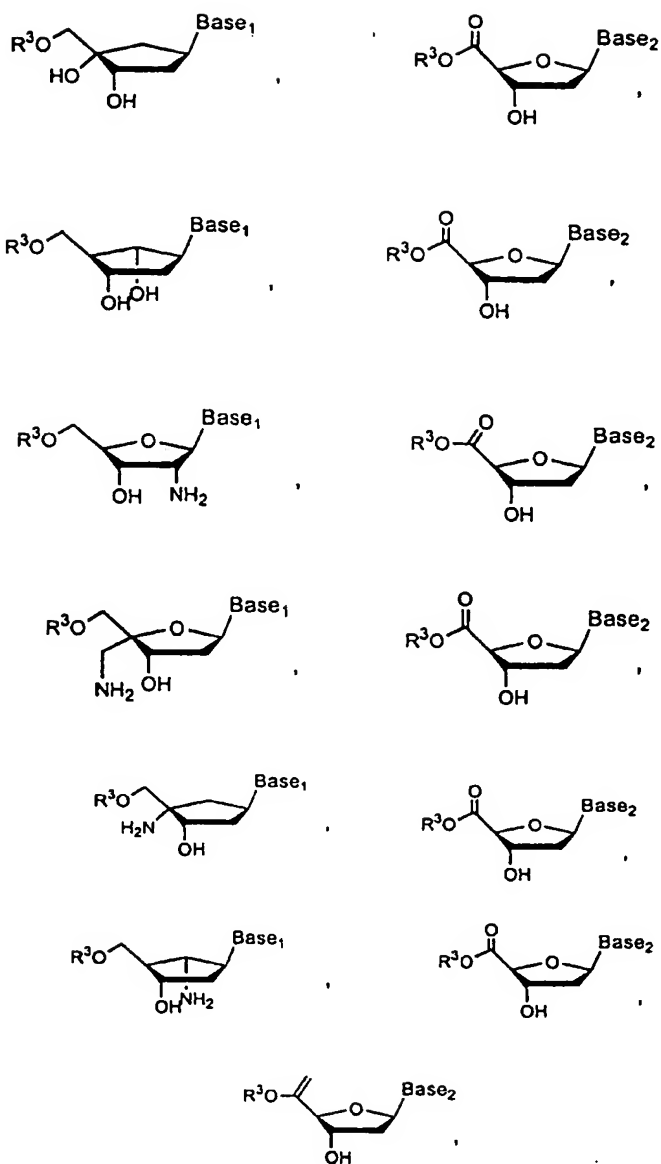


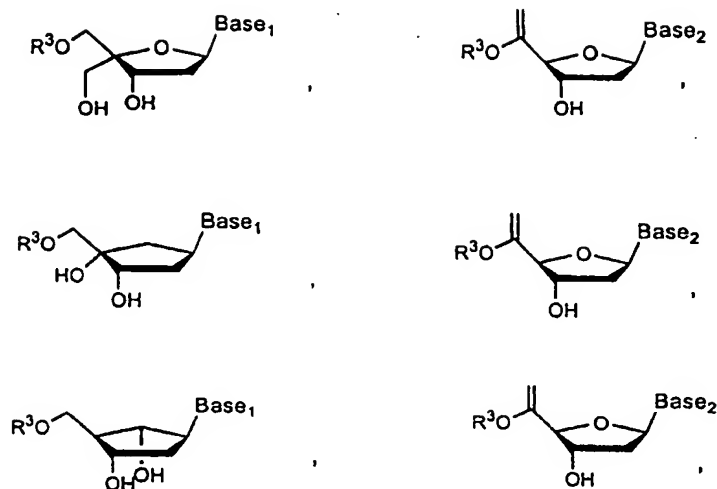












5

151. A kit, comprising:

one or more modified nucleotides;

one or more polymerases capable of incorporating said one or more modified nucleotides in a polynucleotide to form a modified polynucleotide;

10 a reagent or reagents capable of cleaving said modified polynucleotide at each point of occurrence of said one or more modified nucleotides in said polynucleotide.

15

Figure 1 & 2

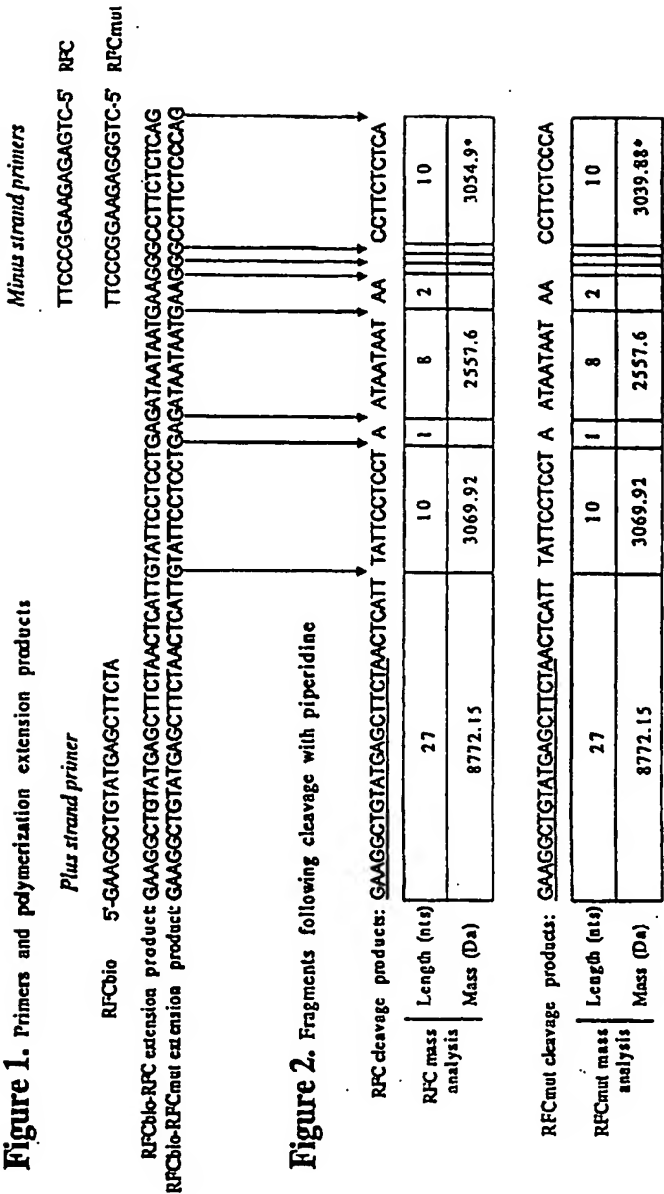


Figure 2. Fragments following cleavage with piperidine

Figure 1, top, shows one plus strand primer and two minus strand primers used to produce 66 nucleotide (nt) PCR products from the human Replication Factor C (RFC) gene (38 kDa subunit), using genomic DNA as a template. One set of primers (RFCbio + RFC) amplifies the RFC sequence in GenBank, while RFCbio + RFCmut amplifies a mutant sequence, which differs from the GenBank sequence at one nucleotide, located 4 nts from the 5' end of RFCmut (the RFCmut primer was synthesized so as to introduce the variant nucleotide). The variant nt, G in RFCmut vs. A in RFC, is shown in bold type in the primers and extension products. The minus strands of the two PCR products were used as templates for primer extension in the presence of dATP, dCTP, dTTP and 7-methyl-dUTP, resulting in the two extension products shown. Figure 2 shows the length and masses of cleavage products anticipated to result from cleavage of the extended products with piperidine, which results in cleavage at 7-methyl-dU residues and loss of the G nucleobase. The top panel shows the expected results for RFCbio - RFC, while the bottom panel shows the results for the RFCbio - RFCmut product. Note that only one fragment is expected to change in mass (marked with asterisk); the 3' terminal 10mer is either 3054.9 (RFC) or 3039.88 (RFCmut). The first 20 nucleotides of each extension product are formed by the RFCbio primer (underlined). This sequence is not substituted with 7-methyl-dU and therefore is not expected to be cleaved.

Figure 3

Figure 3. Polyacrylamide gel analysis of primer extension products fully substituted with modified dGTP and cleaved. The RFCbio primer, labeled at the 5' end with 32 P, was extended using Klenow DNA polymerase in the presence of 7-methyl-dGTP, dATP, dCTP, dTTP and template. Two templates were prepared, one from RFCbio-RFC PCR product (lanes 1 & 2), and one from RFCbio-RFCmut PCR product (lanes 3 & 4). Single stranded DNA complementary to RFCbio was isolated from each PCR product. Primer extension products were analyzed on a 10% polyacrylamide gel both before (lanes 1 & 3) and after (lanes 2 & 4) treatment with piperidine for one hour at 90°C. The piperidine-induced cleavage products (lanes 2 & 4) correspond to those predicted to occur in Figure 2, albeit the two 10mers overlap and cleavage, particularly of the 10mers, is incomplete, possibly due to partial cleavage at the three consecutive G residues adjacent to the variant 10mer (see Fig. 2). Note the presence of a 9mer cleavage product in lane 4 (RFCmut) that is absent from lane 2 (RFC).

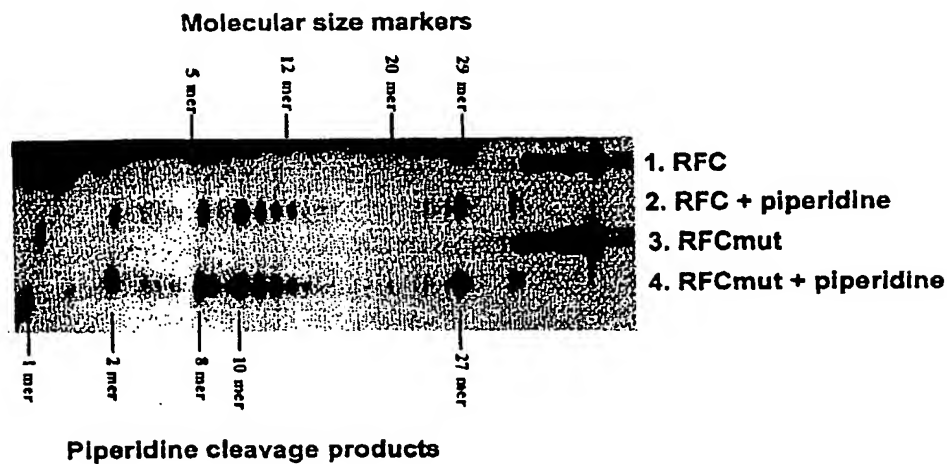


Figure 4

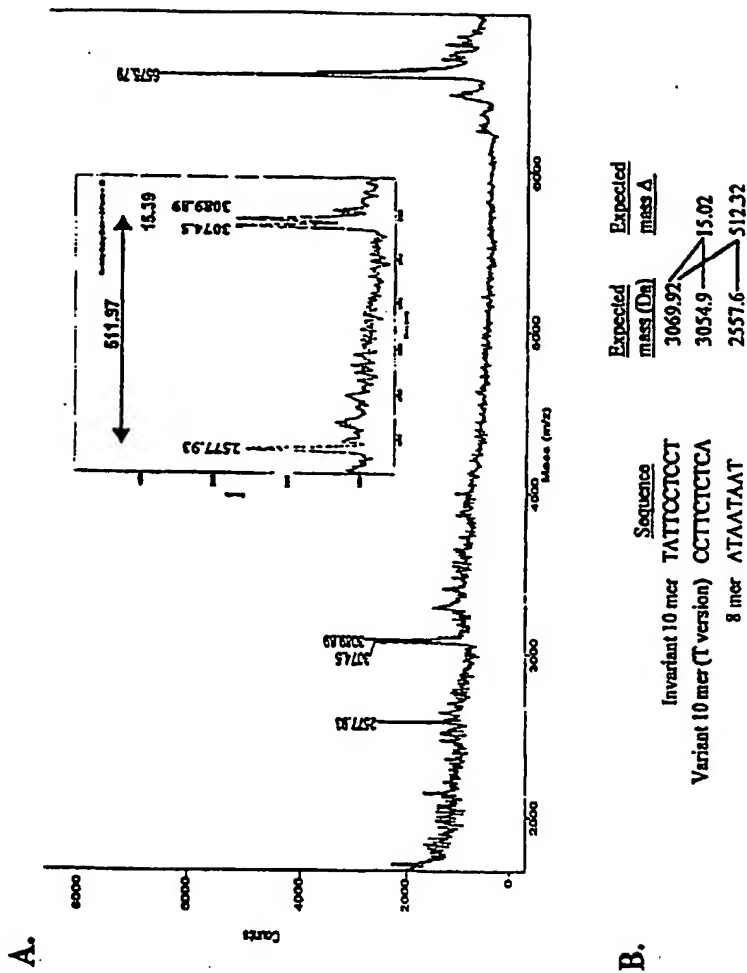


Figure 4. Panel A: MALDI-TOF analysis of 7-methyl-G substituted primer extension product from RFCbio - RFC template after cleavage with piperidine. The primer mass appears at the right of the spectrum (6575.79) while the two 10mers and the 8mer appear at the left and in the inserted blow up. The experimentally determined mass of each fragment, inferred from the mass/charge ratio, is shown above its peak. Panel B: Expected size of two 10mers and 8mer (see Figure 2 for identity of all cleavage products). Note that the mass accuracy of the fragments is consistently off by ~20 Da (there is no internal standard), but the mass differences are very close to expected values: 511.97 for the difference between the 8mer and the invariant 10mer, vs. 512.32 predicted, and 15.39 for the difference between the two 10mers, vs. 15.02 predicted.

Figure 5

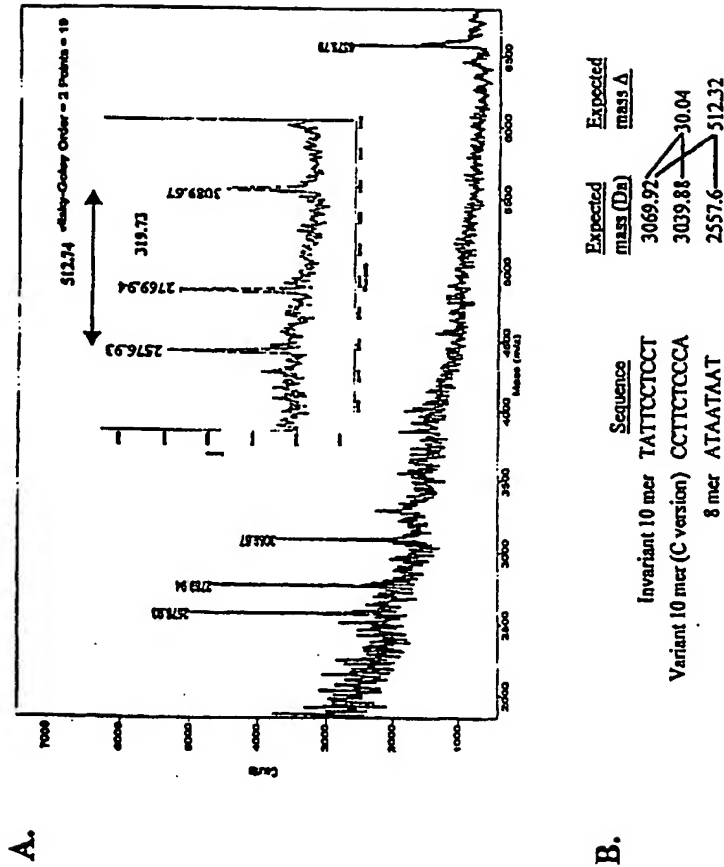


Figure 5. Panel A: MALDI-TOF analysis of 7-methyl-G substituted primer extension product from RFCmut template after cleavage with piperidine. The primer mass appears at the right of the spectrum (6575.79) while the two 10mers and the 8mer appear at the left and in the inserted blow up. The experimentally determined mass of each fragment, inferred from the mass/charge ratio, is shown above its peak. Panel B: Expected size of two 10mers and 8mer (see Figure 2 for identity of all cleavage products). Note that the mass difference between the invariant 10mer and the 8mer is very close to predicted: 512.74 observed vs. 512.32 predicted, however the mass difference between the variant 10mer and the invariant 10mer is not even close to expected values: 30.04 expected vs. 319.73 observed. See Figure 6 and specification for explanation.

Figure 6

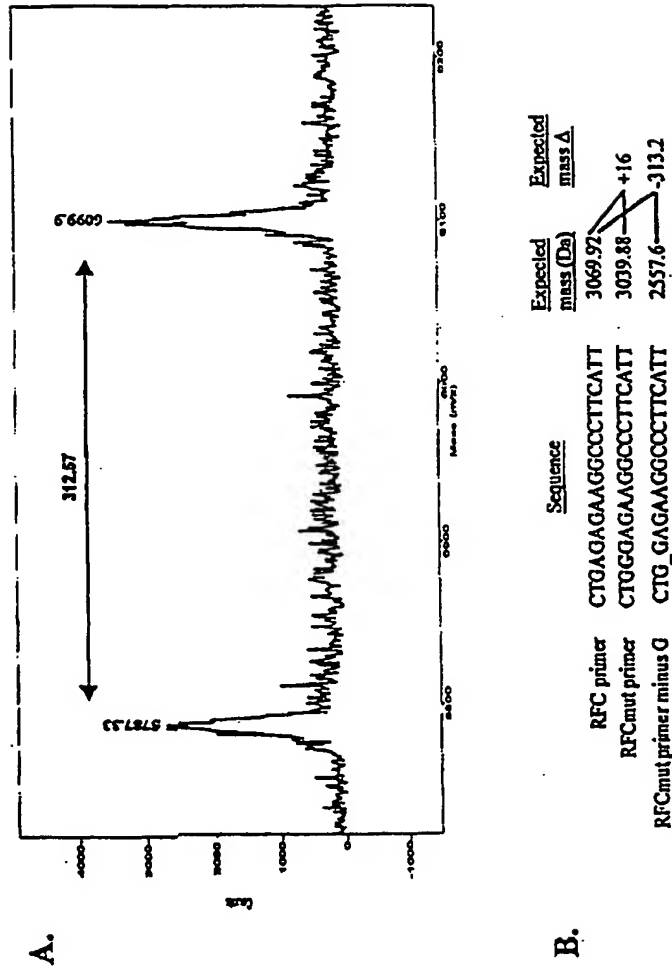
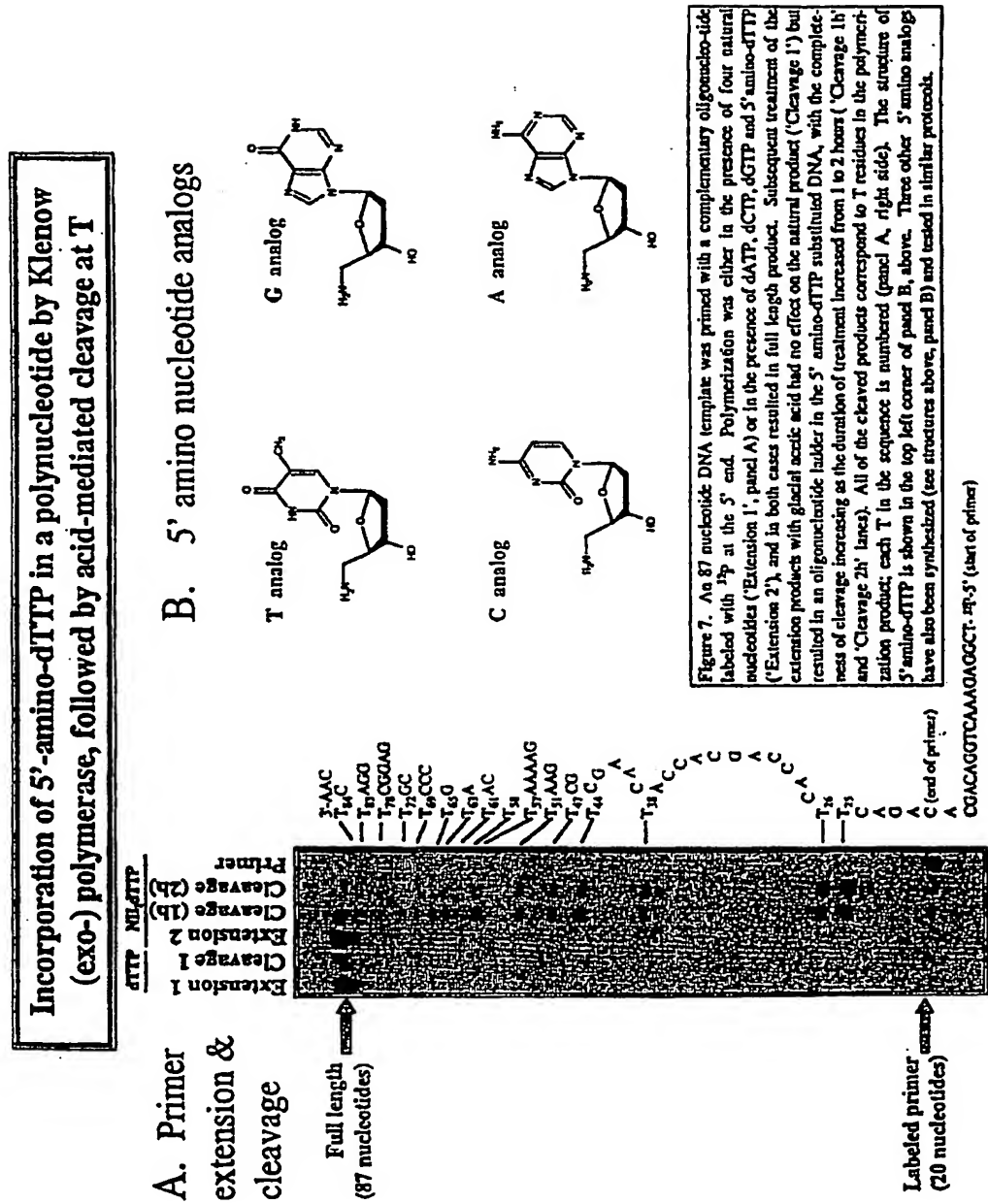


Figure 6. Panel A: MALDI-TOF analysis of primers RFC and RFCmut, used to produce data shown in Figures 3 - 5. These two primers are supposed to differ only by an A vs. G substitution, associated with a 16 Da mass difference. In fact they differ by the mass of a G nucleotide. Panel B: Expected mass of primers RFC and RFCmut, and expected mass difference. Also shown is the predicted mass of a RFCmut primer in which one G is omitted during synthesis. The data in panel A show that the RFCmut primer received from a commercial oligonucleotide synthesis laboratory was in fact not the primer ordered, but instead (based on mass analysis) lacks one G, possibly at the site shown by an underline in panel B. This error by the oligonucleotide synthesis laboratory explains the unexpected results obtained in Figures 3 and 5. See specification for full explanation.

Figure 7



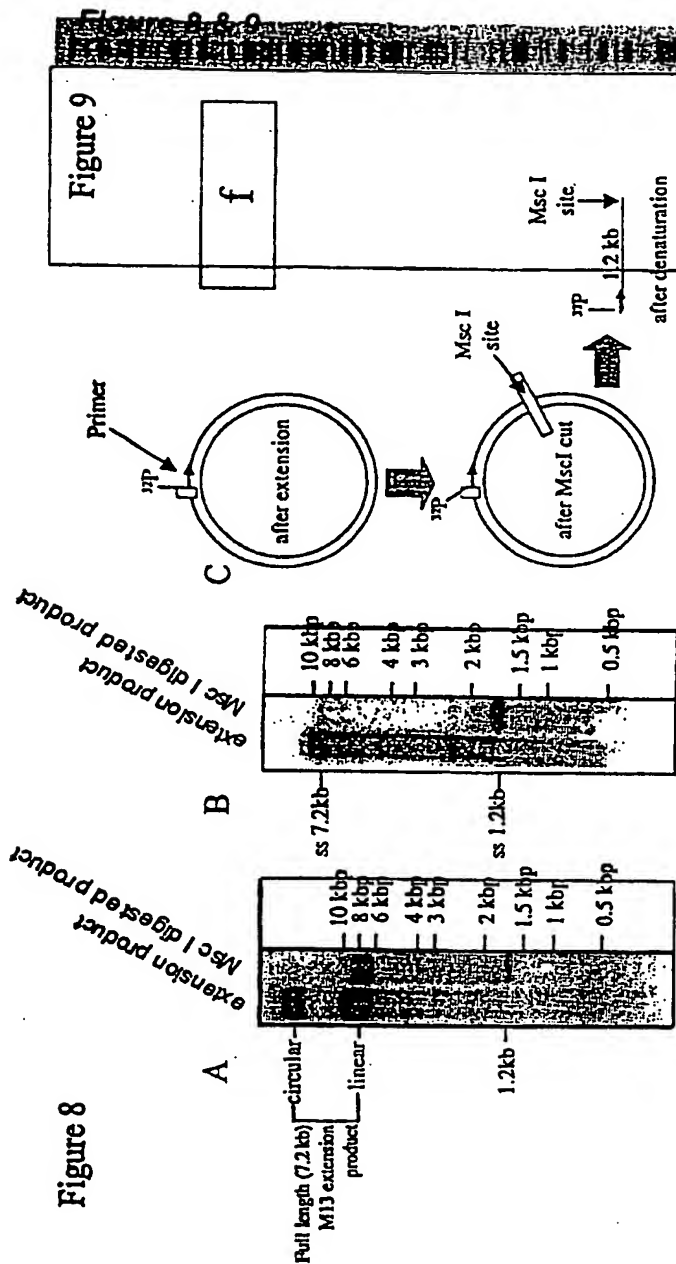


Figure 8: Figure 8 shows primer extension on a 7.2 kb M13 template in the presence of a modified nucleotide followed by endonuclease digestion of the extension product. The experiment was performed as follows: (1) An M13 universal primer was ligated with xp, then used to prime extension of a circular single stranded M13 template. Polymerization was carried out at 37°C using Klenow exo- DNA polymerase, dATP, dCTP, dGTP and 1:100 mixture of dTTP and 5'-amino-dTTP. The extension product was run on a 0.6% nondenaturing agarose gel before (Figure 8 A, left lane) and after (Figure 8 B, left lane) heat denaturation. The Figure shows that virtually all of the product was full length. (The location of 1kb and .1kb molecular weight marker ladders is indicated to the right of panels A and B.) (2) The extended product was cut with Msc I (New England Biolabs, Beverly, MA) which has a unique cleavage site 1207 bp from the universal primer. Again, the cut product was run before and after heat denaturation. As shown in panel A (right lane), before denaturation the cut product is still mostly 7.2kb, but after denaturation the 1.2kb fragment is released (panel B, right lane), by a mechanism shown in panel C. These results show that polymerization of long templates and restriction cutting are possible with modified nucleotides. Figure 9 shows an autoradiogram of the 1.2 kb MscI restriction product of Figure 8 after treatment with acetic acid and resolution of the cleavage products by denaturing acrylamide gel electrophoresis. Cleavage has occurred at sites of 5'-amino-T incorporation.

Figure 10

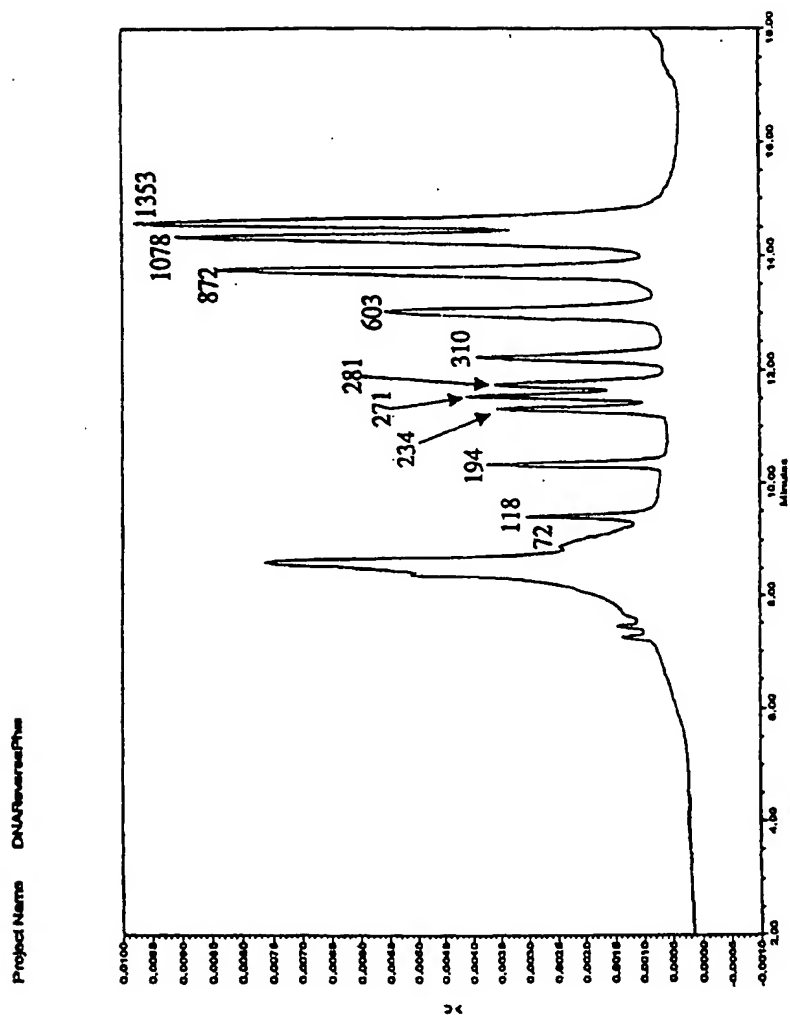


Figure 10. Ion pair reverse phase HPLC separation of Hae III DNA restriction fragments from PhiX174. The length (in nucleotides) of each DNA fragment is shown above the peaks. Fragments were resolved on a Micro Scientific (Northbrook, IL) NTS C18 1.5um HPLC column (part # 06460DS3E1.5) at 63°C. Buffer A: 0.1 M TEAA, pH 8.3; Buffer B: 50% CH₃CN, 0.1 M TEAA, pH 8.3. The HPLC instrument was from Waters (HPLC pump 515, Sample Manager Z700, with temperature control module)

Figure 11A

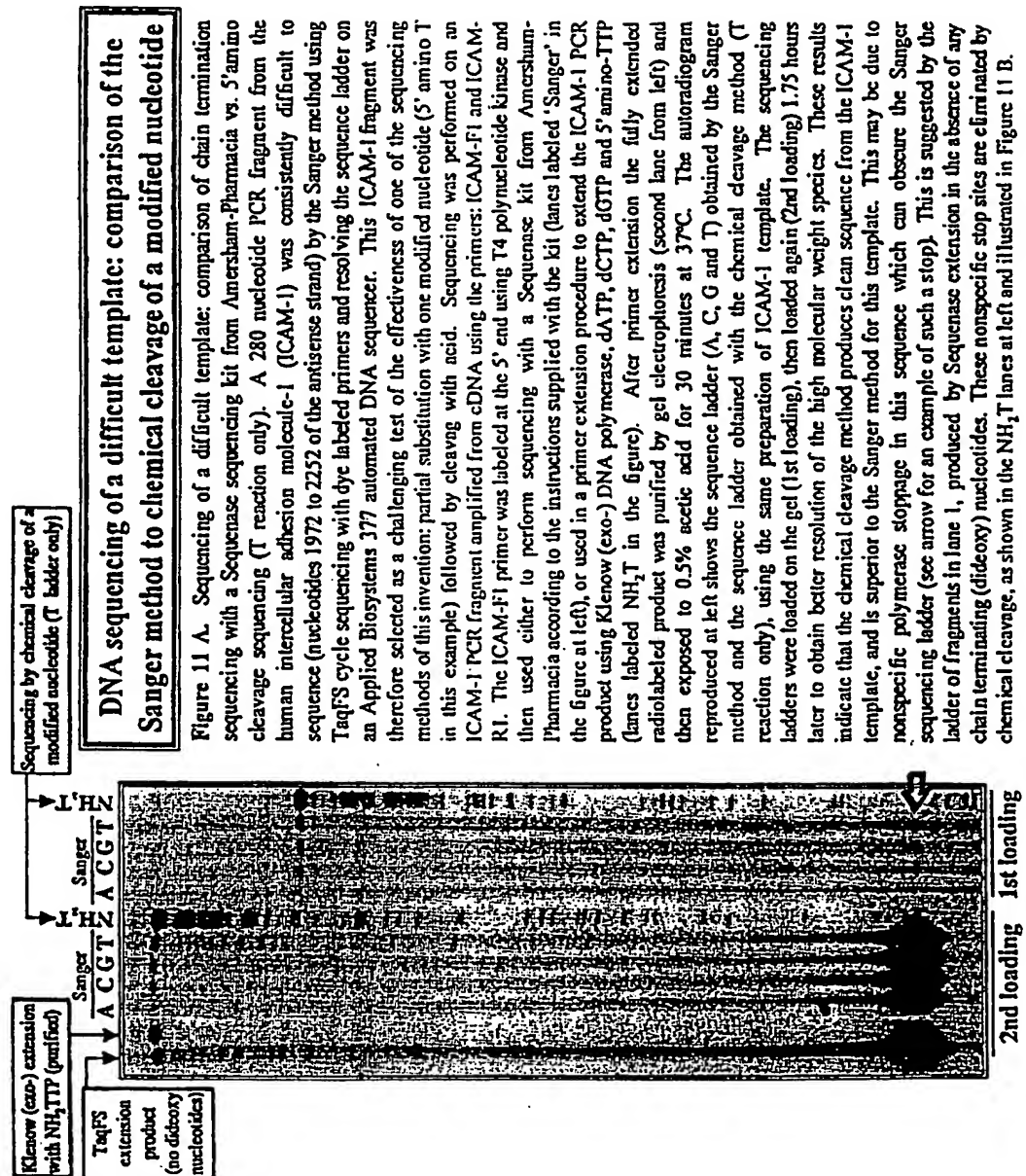


Figure 11B

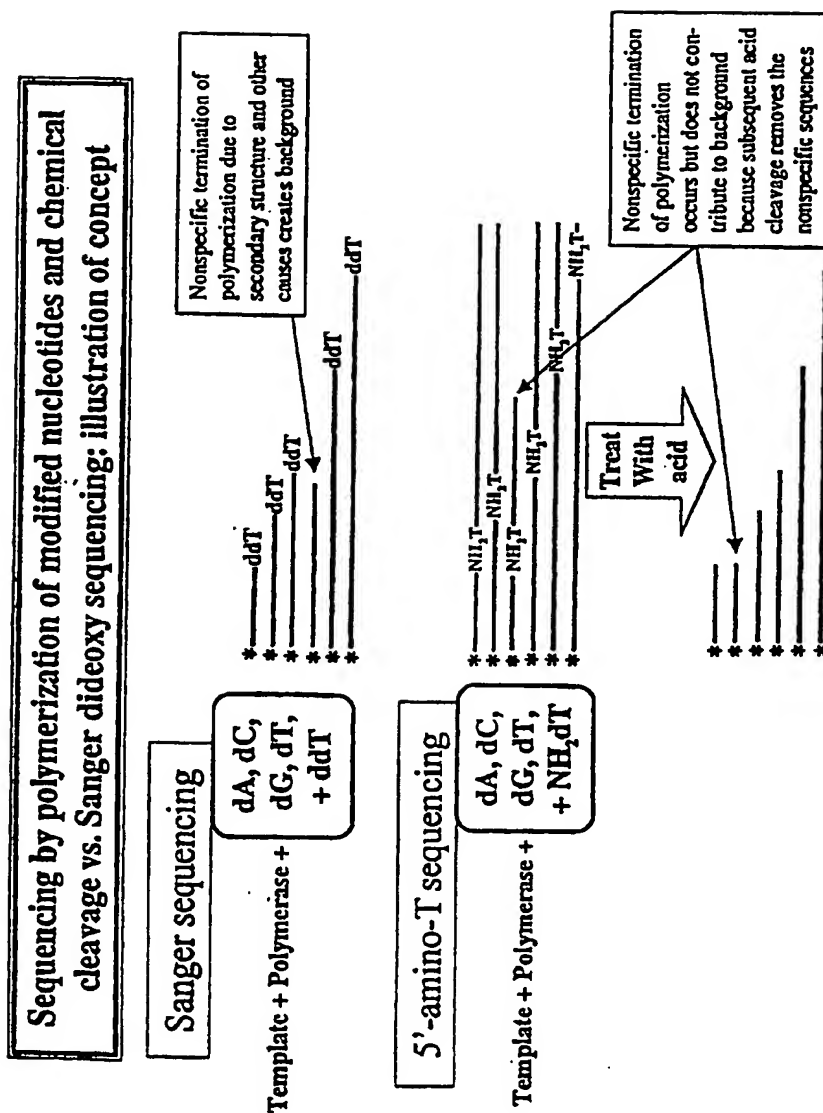


Figure 11 B. Illustration of the principal of DNA sequencing by incorporation of modified nucleotides followed by chemical cleavage, and comparison with dideoxy sequencing. As shown schematically above, and with data in Figure 11 A, one important source of error in chain termination sequencing is nonspecific (i.e. non-dideoxy mediated) termination of polymerization. In sequencing with 5'-amino nucleotides (or other polymerase-compatible, selectively cleavable nucleotides), any non-specifically terminated product will be trimmed at the chemical cleavage step to yield a molecule that becomes part of the DNA sequence ladder. This will have the combined effect of increasing signal and decreasing background. (* designates a dye or isotopic label.)

Figure 12

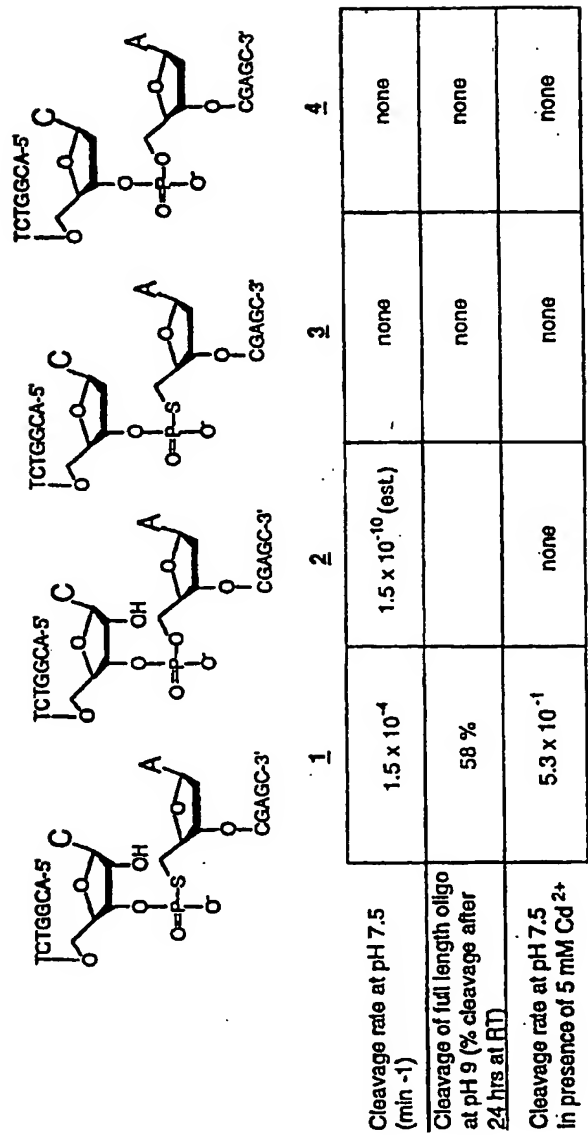


Figure 12. Preferential cleavage at modified CA dinucleotide cleavage in a ribozyme substrate. The stability of four modified oligonucleotides, shown above, was tested at various conditions of pH and in the presence or absence of various divalent cations. (Kuimelis, R.G., McLaughlin, L.W. *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 1995, 23: 4753-4760.) Cleavage results at three conditions are summarized in the table above: at pH 7.5 in the presence or absence of the divalent cation Cadmium (Cd²⁺), and at pH 9 in the absence of Cd²⁺. Highly selective cleavage of a chemically modified dinucleotide was observed in conditions that did not support nonnucleotide cleavage of either modified constituent of the dinucleotide (i.e. neither ribo-C or thio-A was cleaved efficiently when not immediately adjacent to the other). See particularly the cleavage rate for the CA dinucleotide in oligonucleotide 1 (ribo-C 5' to bridging thio-A) at pH 7.5 in the presence of 5 mM Cd²⁺ compared to the ribo-C alone (oligonucleotide 2), the bridging thio-A alone (oligonucleotide 3), or unmodified C and A nucleotides (oligonucleotide 4).

Figure 13

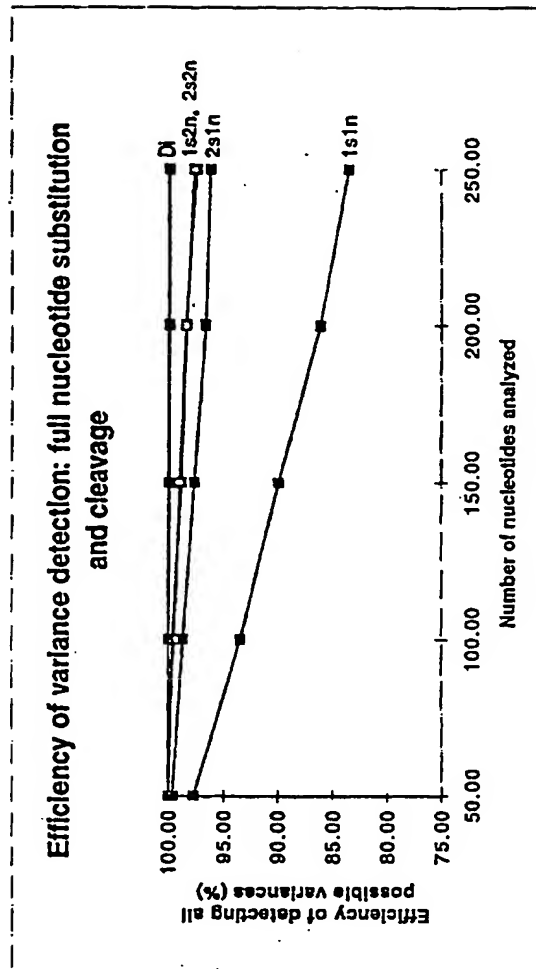
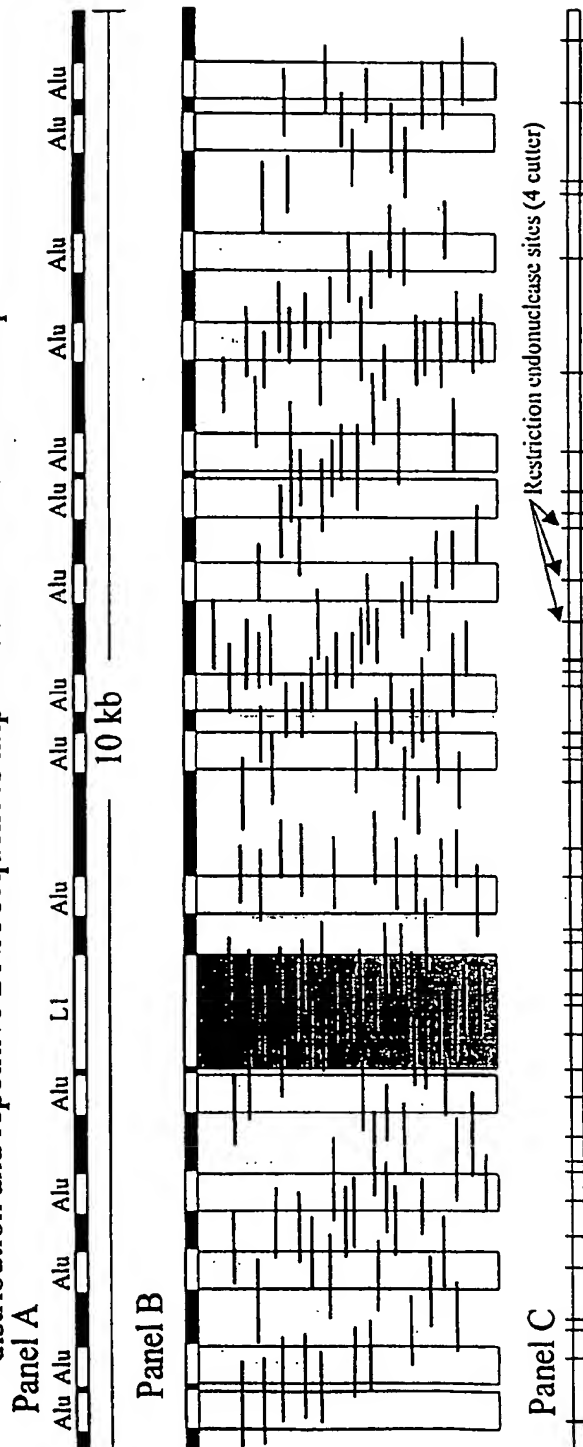


Figure 13. Efficiency of variance detection (y axis) as a function of polynucleotide length (x axis; 50, 100, 150, 200 or 250 nucleotide fragments were analyzed), strand analyzed (one strand or both), and mononucleotide cleavage vs. dinucleotide cleavage. The sequence analyzed comes from the human eIF5A gene. For each polynucleotide, every possible transition and transversion was considered, and the fraction of such transitions and transversions that could be detected by analysis of cleavage masses was determined. The analysis was performed for mononucleotide cleavage on one strand (1s1n = one modified nucleotide, one strand); mononucleotide cleavage on one strand but using two nucleotides in separate reactions (1s2n); mononucleotide cleavage on both strands (done separately on each strand, including same nucleotide on both strands [2s1n], or different nucleotides on different strands [2s2n]) and dinucleotide cleavage (all possible dinucleotide combinations [DI]). As shown in the figure, even single nucleotide substitution and cleavage on one strand is up to 85% efficient at detecting all variances in a 250-mer polynucleotide. Analysis of two separate mononucleotide cleavage reactions, either on the same strand or complementary strands, results in 96-98% efficiency of detection in a 250mer. Analysis of dinucleotide cleavage fragments is consistently capable of 100% efficiency in a 250mer.

Figure 14. Problems of sequence assembly in shotgun DNA sequencing projects: clone distribution and repetitive DNA sequences impede determination of overlaps



Panel A illustrates a hypothetical human DNA sequence modeled after data reported in Martin-Gallardo, et al. *Nature Genetics* (1992) 1:34-39. The hypothetical sequence is 10,000 nt in length and contains 15 Alu repeat elements. The consensus length of Alu is 280 nucleotides. The sequence also contains one partial L1 element ~850 nt long. (Such elements can be up to ~7,000 nt in length.) Panel B illustrates the distribution of DNA sequences obtained in a shotgun sequencing project with 7-fold redundant coverage of the 10 kb sequence. The sequences are represented as horizontal black lines, with lengths corresponding to 400, 500 or 600 nt sequence reads, totaling 70 kb (drawn to scale). The location of the repeat elements is shaded behind the sequences to illustrate the fact that many sequence reads start or end in Alu or L1 repeat sequences, hindering definitive assignment of sequence overlaps. Panel C illustrates the new approach described in this application, wherein a primer is extended across the entire 10 kb in the presence of a cleavable nucleotide analog (partial or full substitution), followed by restriction endonuclease digestion of the 10 kb, separation of fragments by HPLC or other means, end labeling of fragments (e.g. by terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase addition of labelled dideoxynucleotides or by filling a recessed endonuclease cleavage site with a labelled nucleotide such as rhodamine dUTP) followed by full or partial cleavage of isolated labelled fragments so as to produce homogeneous sequence ladders, followed by electrophoretic or MS or other separation of the ladders. Experimental execution of these steps is illustrated in Figures 15-18.

Figure 15. Sequencing 2.7 kb double stranded DNA using 5'-amino nucleoside triphosphates: illustration of an experiment performed to demonstrate the approach

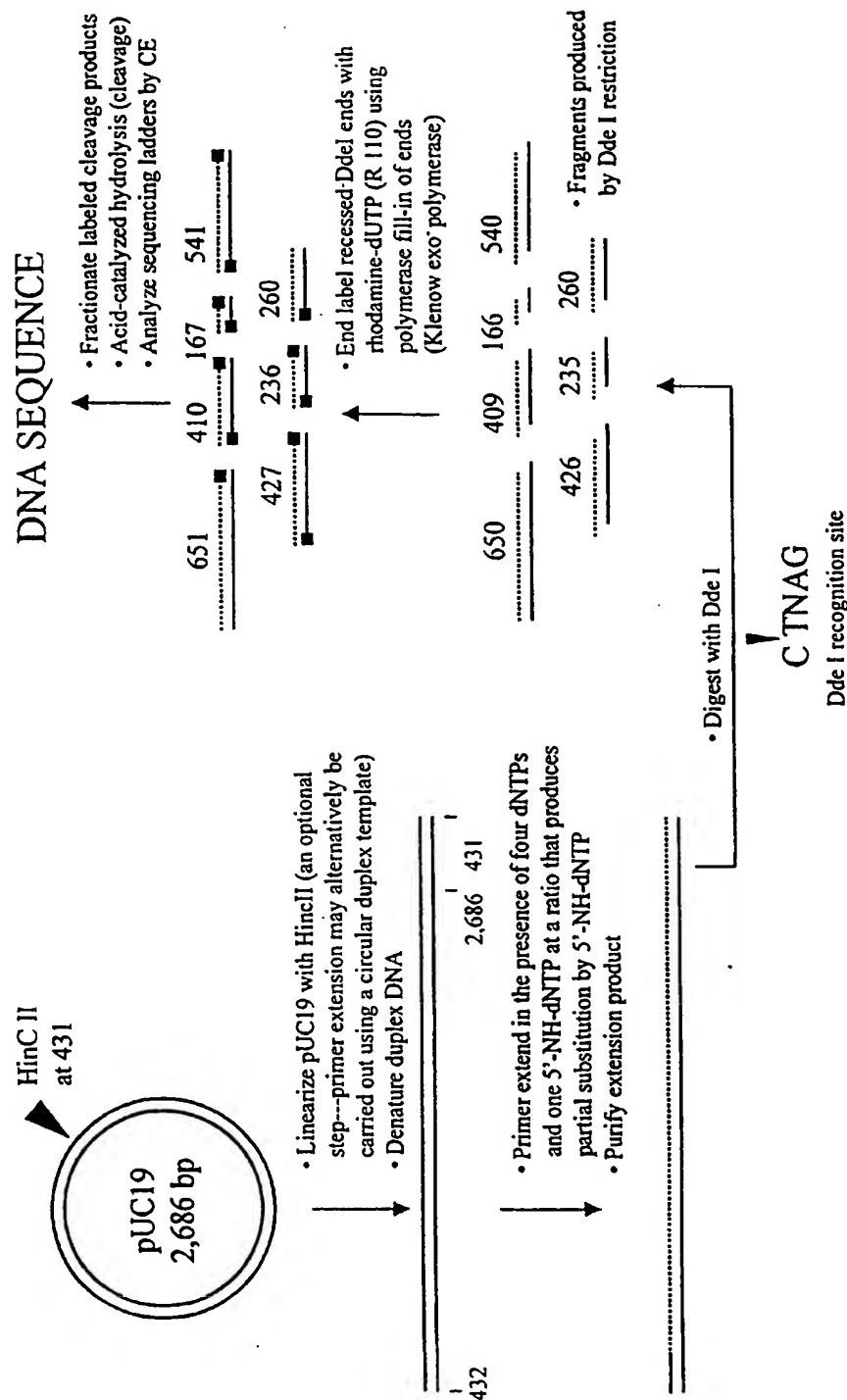


Figure 16. Separation of Dde I restriction endonuclease digested, rhodamine dUTP end-labeled pUC19 DNA fragments by HPLC

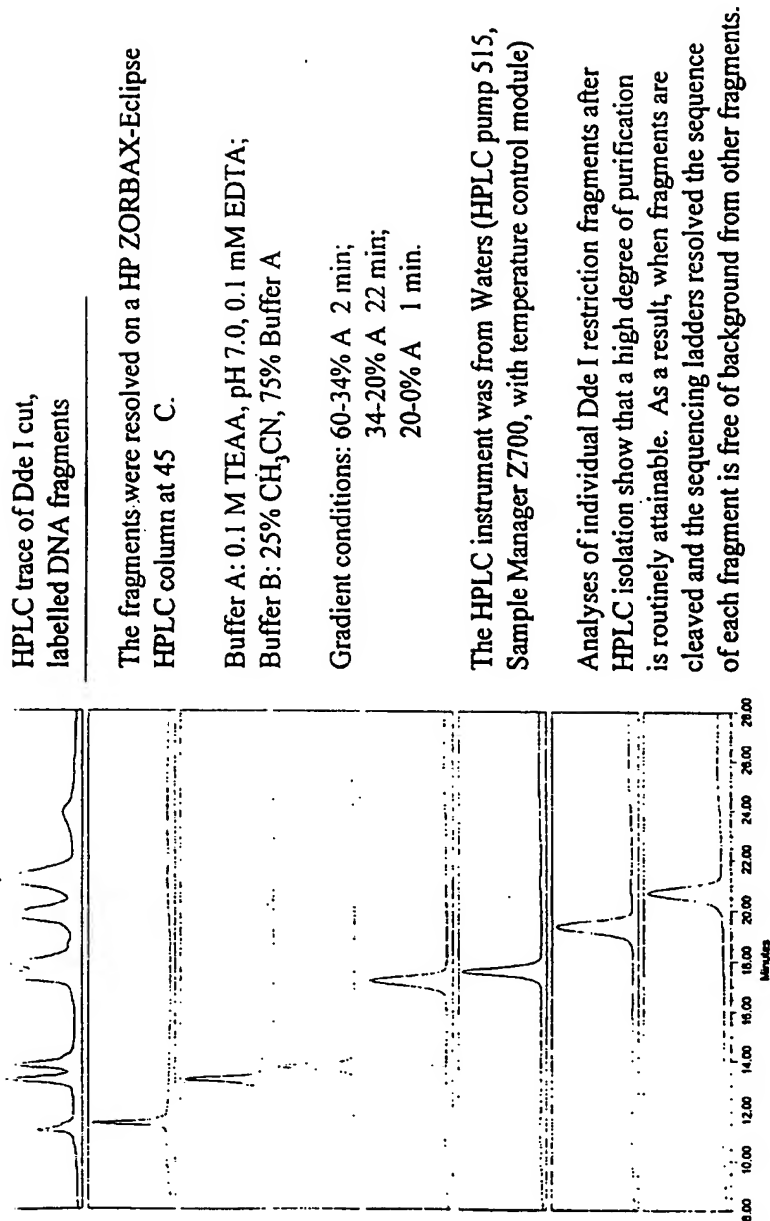
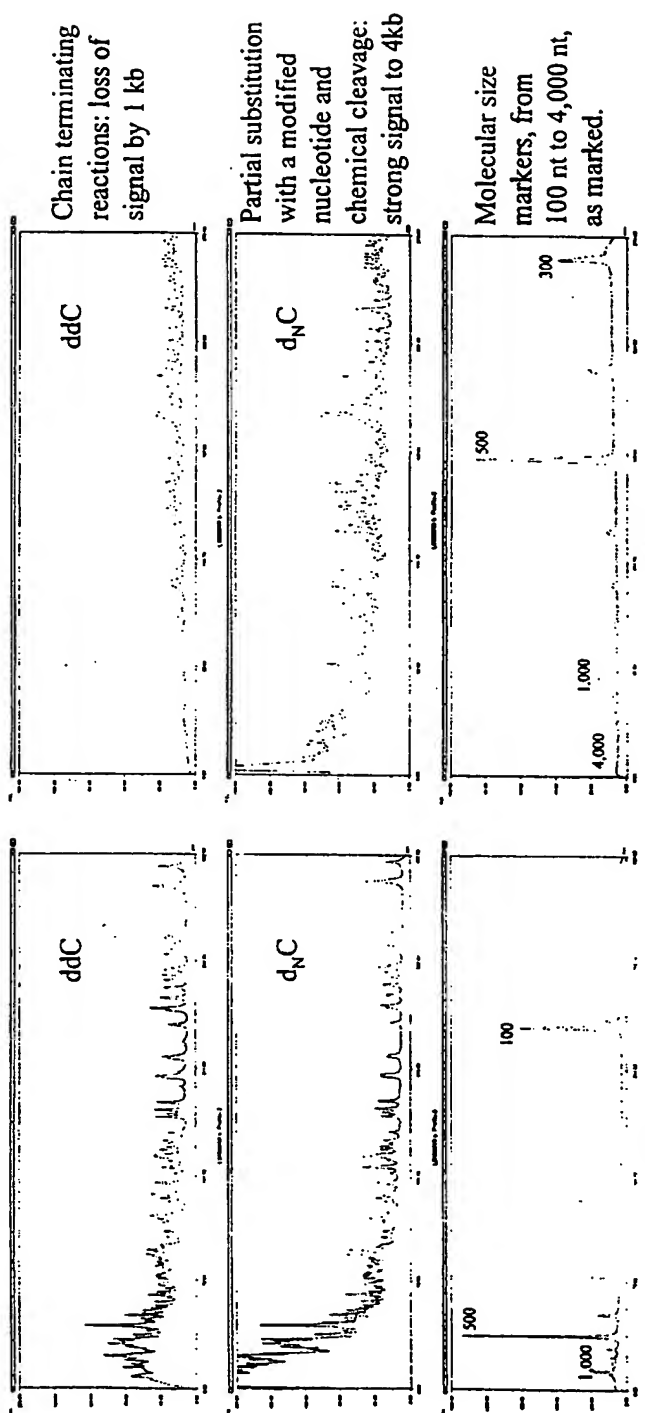


Figure 17. Long range sequencing using 5'-amino nucleoside triphosphates: a comparison with dideoxy sequencing reactions shows that label is homogeneously incorporated over <1 kb with dideoxy termination, and >4kb with 5' amino sequencing

6 % PAGE

4 % PAGE



The fragments are labeled at 5'-end.

Figure 18. Sequencing ladder generated by partial substitution and cleavage of 5'-amino nucleoside triphosphates: a comparison with dideoxy sequencing reactions shows that the two methods procedure ladders of similar quality

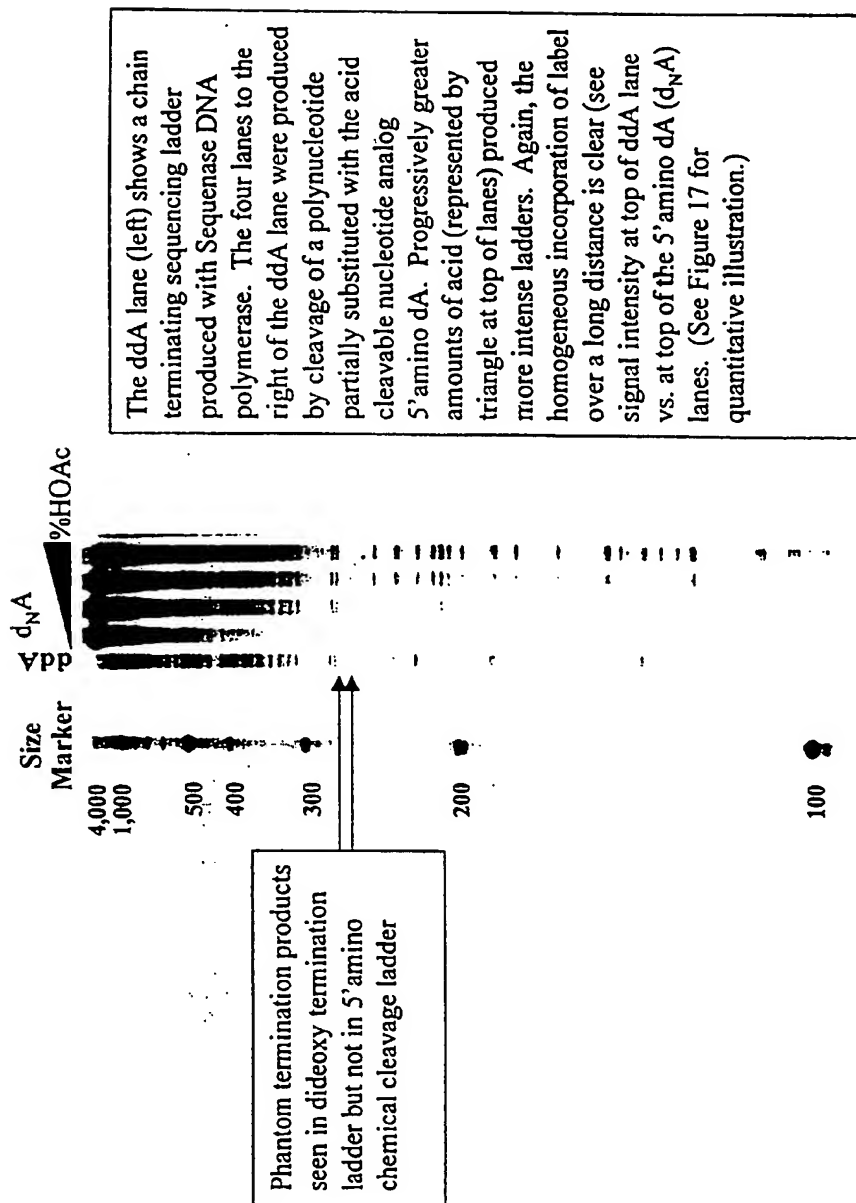


Figure 19. Chemistry enables cleavage of DNA at any selected dinucleotide: size distribution of dinucleotide cleavage products compared to restriction endonuclease digestion products

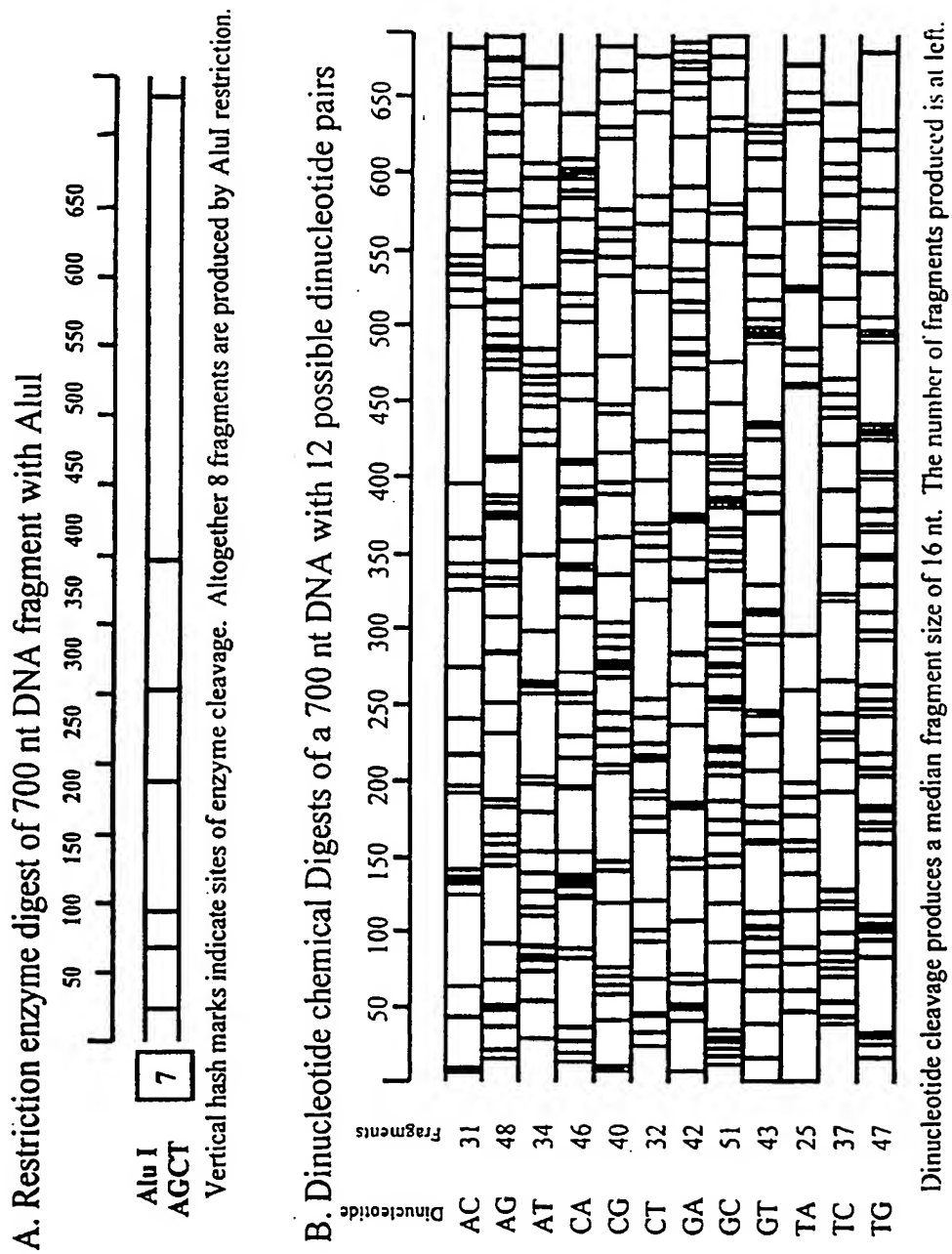


Figure 20. Molecular basis of dinucleotide cleavage: Example of dinucleotide cleavage involving ribonucleotide and 5' aminonucleotide in 5' to 3' orientation: nucleotides, polymerization product and cleavage product

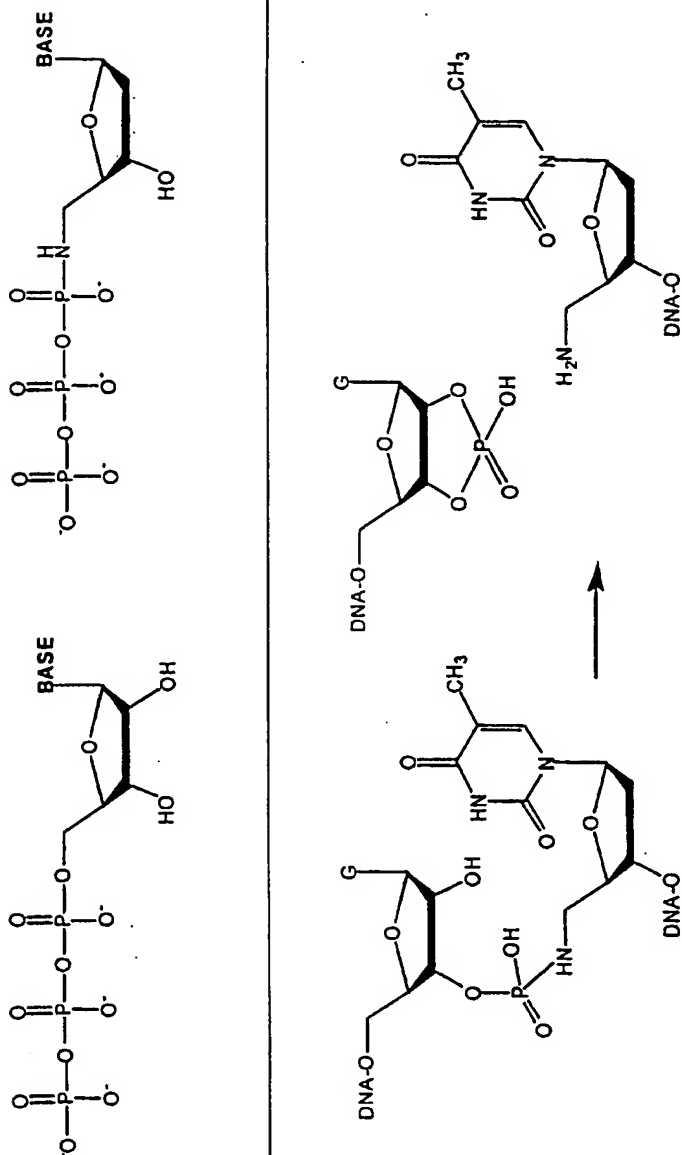
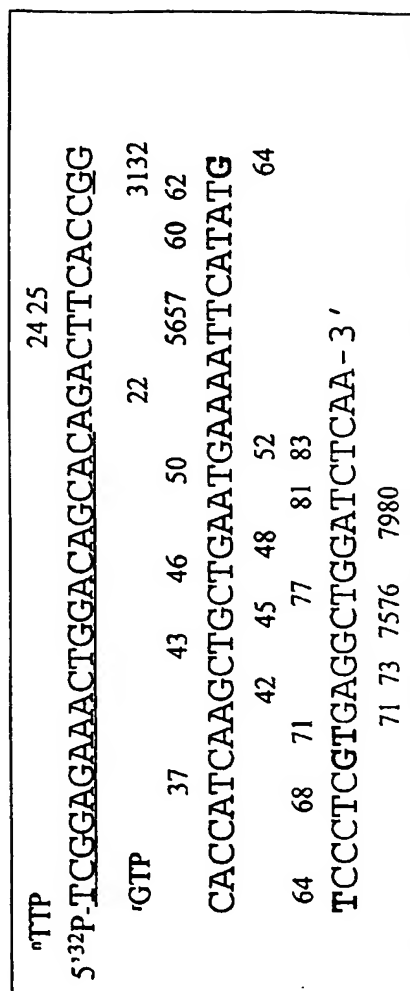
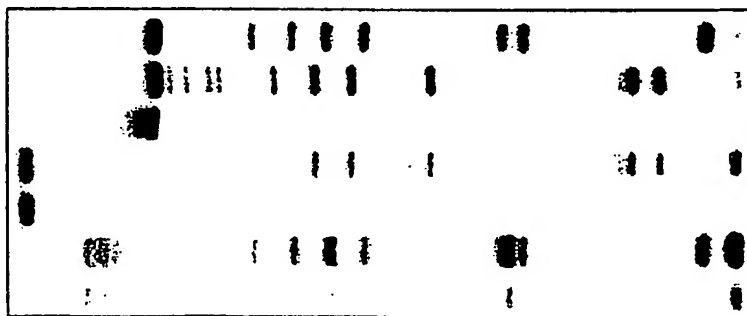


Figure 21. Incorporating two modified nucleotides into the same strand of a DNA and cleaving separately with acid or base to produce two different nucleotide ladders



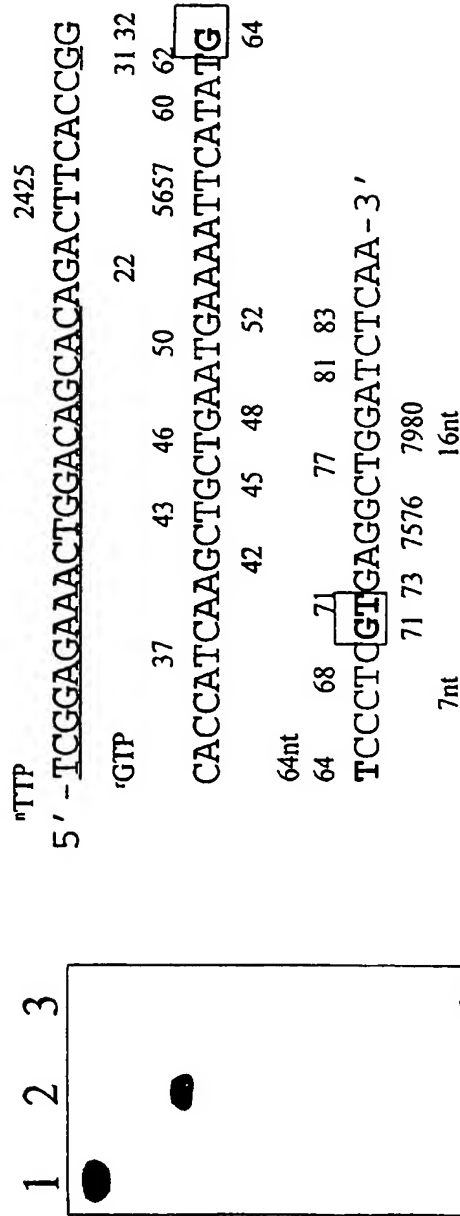
Sequence of primer is underlined. All T nucleosides in sequence are numbered above the nucleotide. All G nucleosides in sequence are numbered below the nucleotide

1 2 3 4 5 6 7



Lane 1: Extension with ribo-GTP
 Lane 2: Cleavage of lane 1 product with base
 Lane 3: Extension with 5' amino TTP
 Lane 4: Cleavage of lane 3 product with acid
 Lane 5: Extension with both ribo-GTP/5' amino TTP
 Lane 6: Cleavage of product of lane 5 with acid
 Lane 7: Cleavage of product of lane 5 with base

Figure 22. Demonstration of dinucleotide cleavage at GT: cleavage of one allele of the transferrin receptor gene



- Extension of underlined primer was carried out in the presence of rGTP, nTTP, dCTP, dGTP, and α -³²P-dCTP (for body labeling of DNA fragments).
- A 1:4 mixture of Klenow (exo-) and E710A Klenow (exo-) was used for extension.
- Reaction mixture was analyzed by PAGE after G25 column purification.
- Expected cleavage sites of GT dinucleotides are in bold face and boxed.

Lane 1: full length 87 nt fragment extended with natural dNTPs
 Lane 2: 87 nt fragment produced and cleaved at GT dinucleotide by primer extension in the presence of complete substitution with ribo G and 5' amino T
 Lane 3: Molecular weight markers 12nt to 32 nt.

12% acrylamide gel

Figure 23. Demonstration of dinucleotide cleavage at AT: Cleavage of one Allele of the Transferrin Receptor Gene (serine allele)

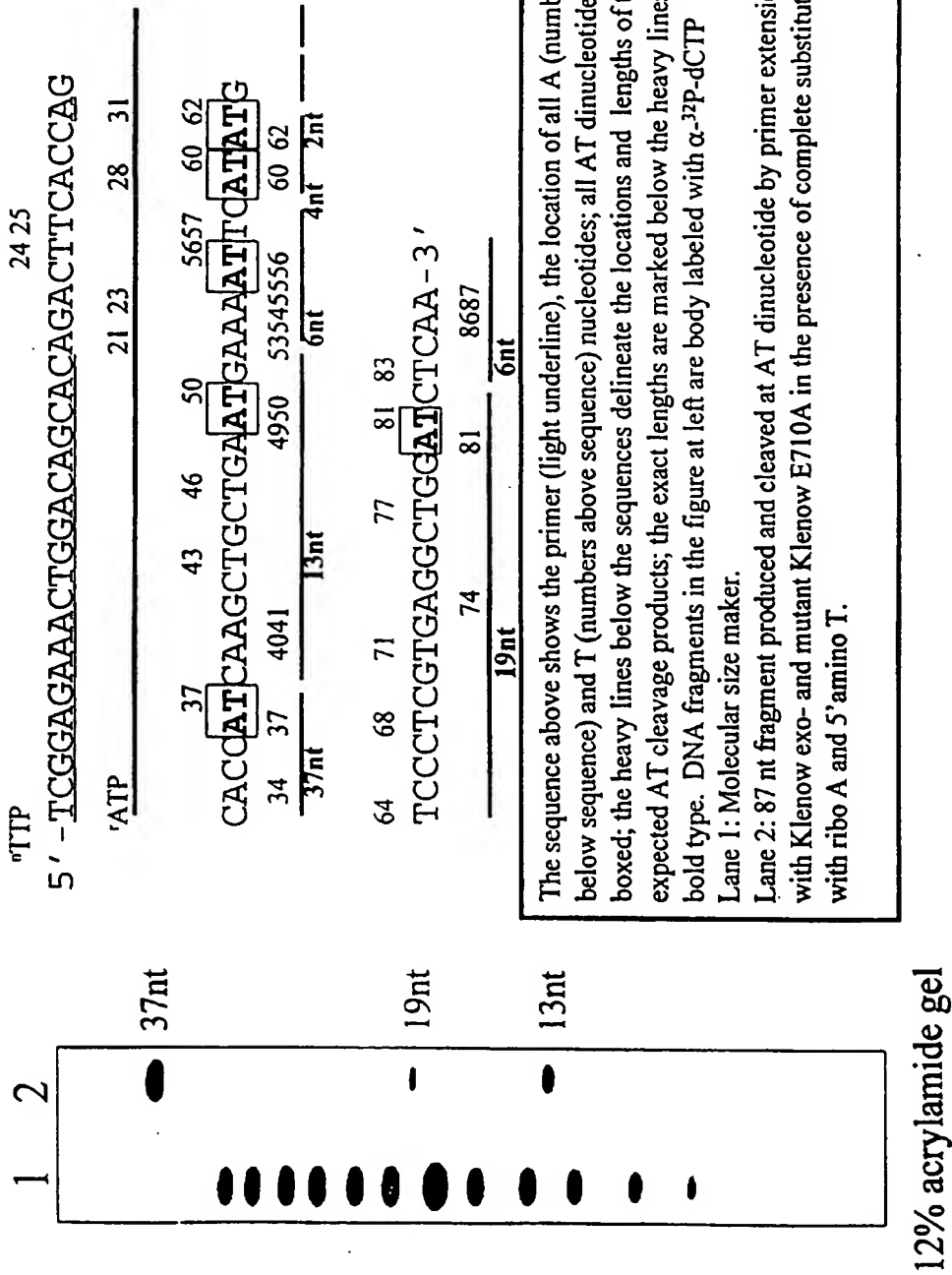


Figure 25. Primer extension of M13mp18 DNA followed by dinucleotide cleavage at AT dinucleotide sites

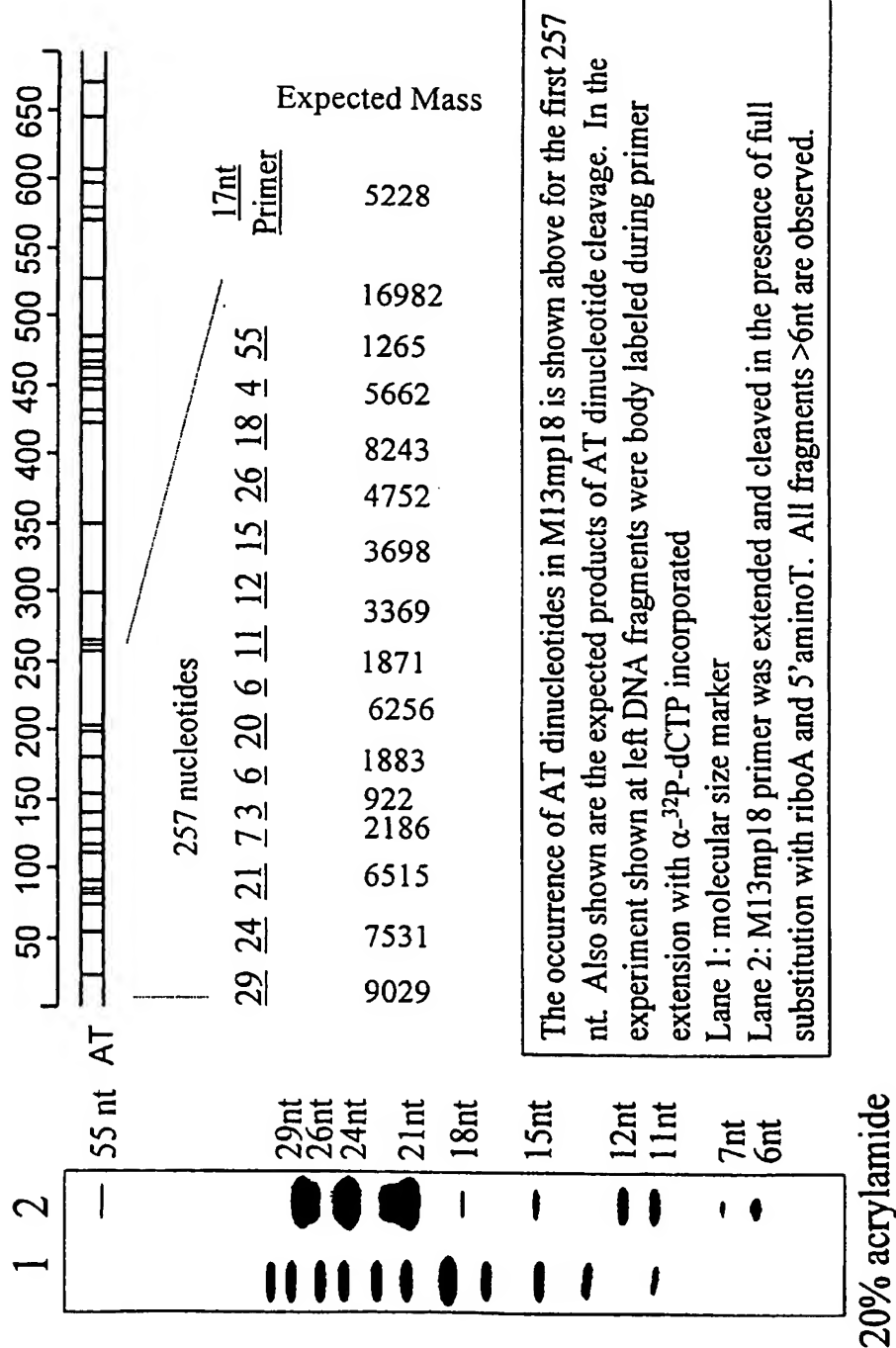


Figure 26. MALDI-TOF Mass Spectra of AT cleaved M13mp18 DNA: 257nt Fragment illustrated in Figure 25.

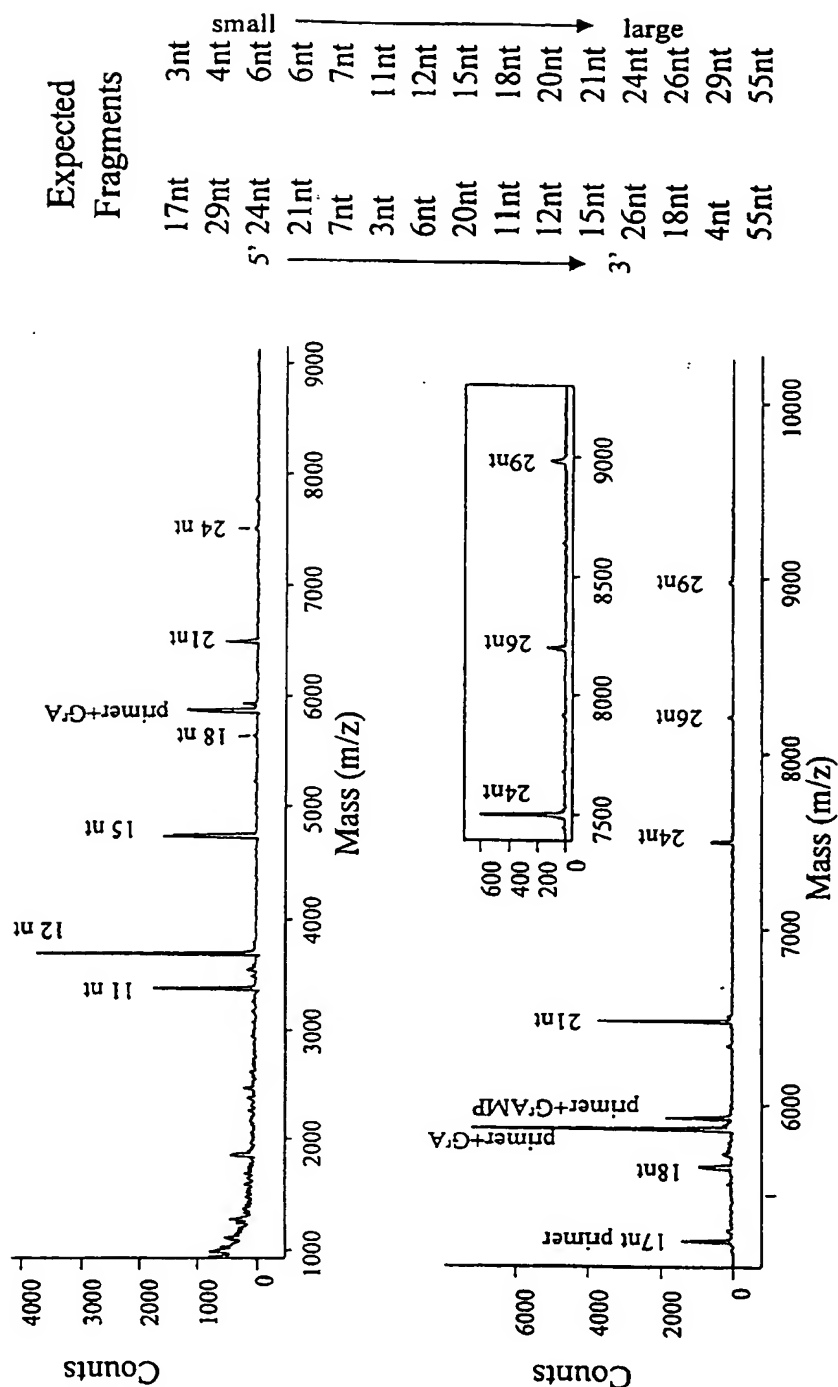


Figure 27. Genotyping by Chemical Restriction: Schematic Presentation

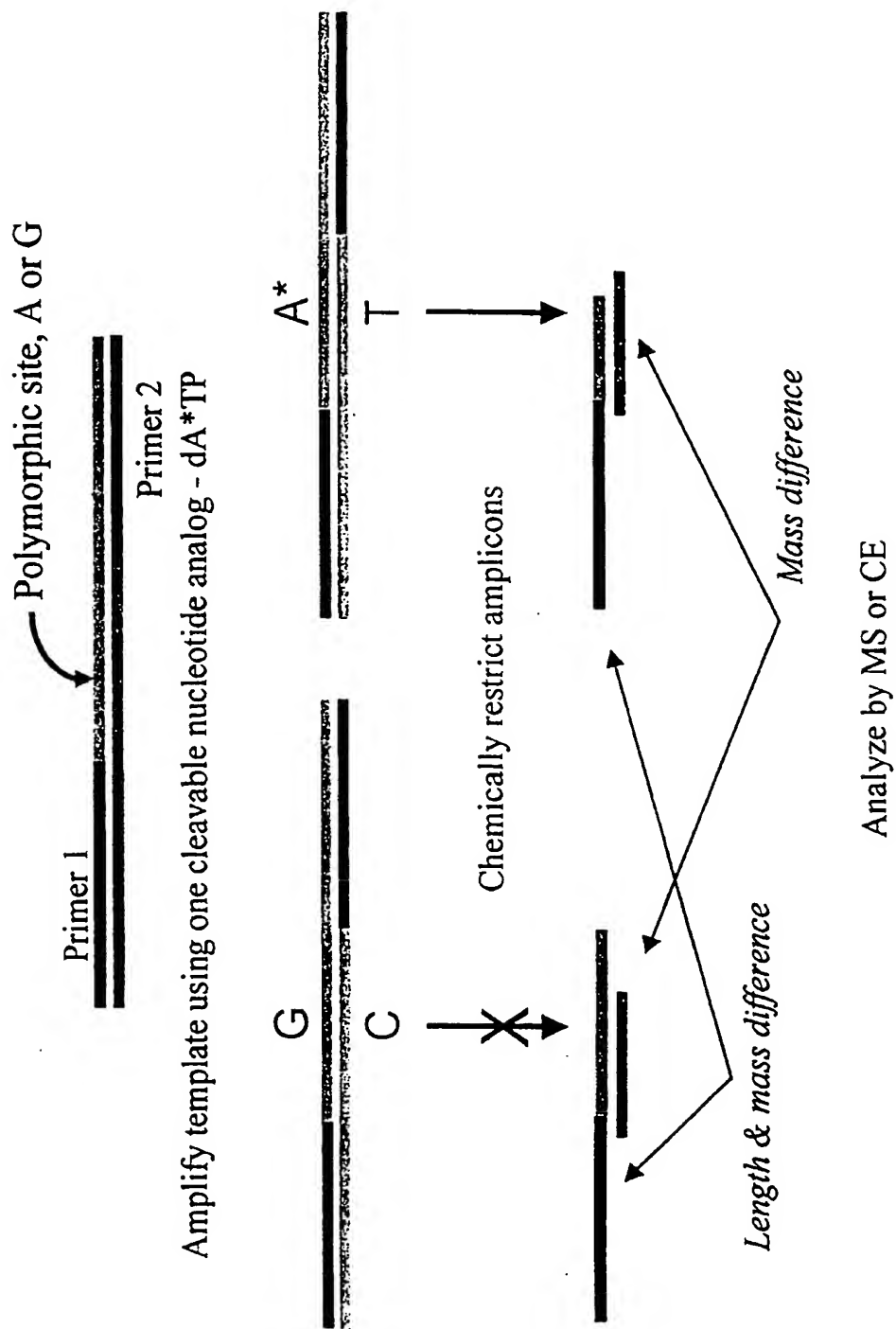


Figure 28. Genotyping by mass spectrometry: cleavable nucleotide differing in the base

In the example shown, the polymorphic base is positioned at 3 bases from the 3' end of one primer.

For A allele it is the first modified nucleotide to be incorporated. for G allele, the first cleavable base is 6 bases from the primer. This results in a length difference (25 vs. 28) in cleavage products which may be analyzed conveniently using various platforms.

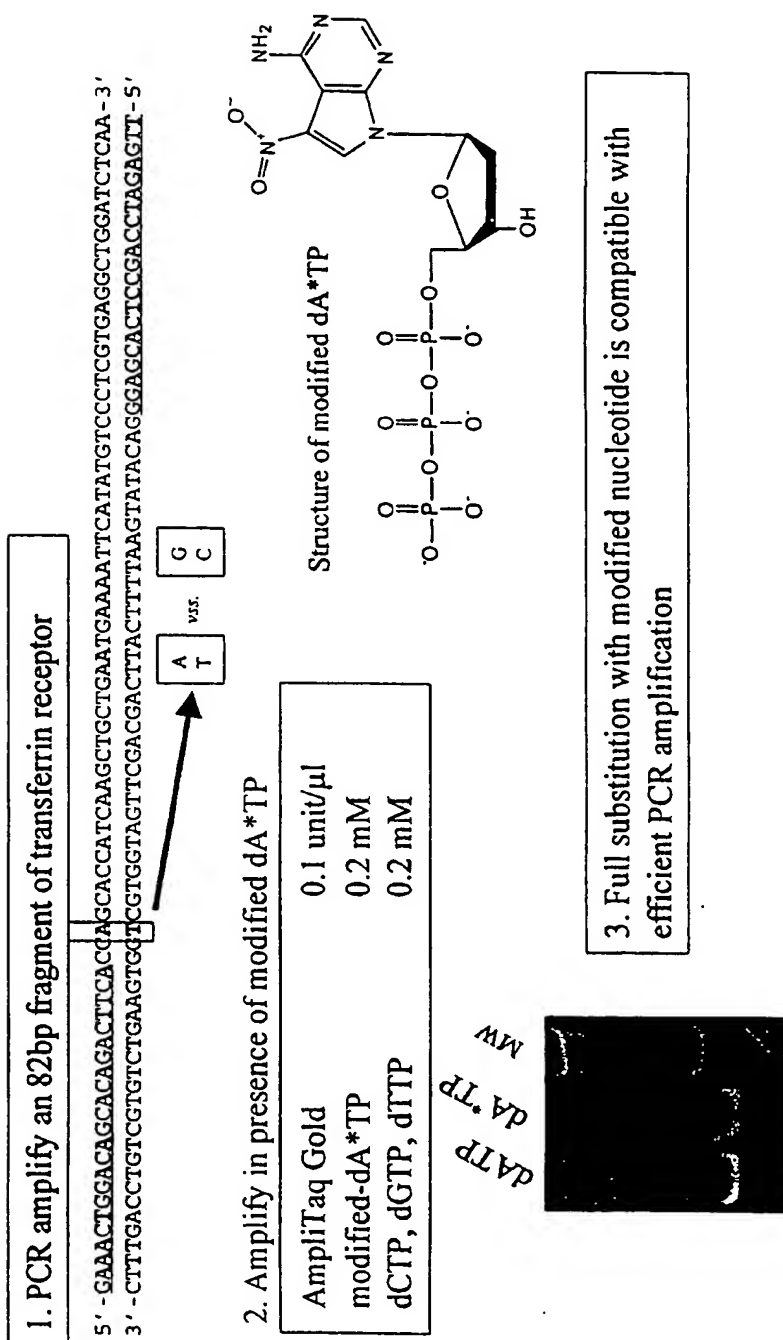


Figure 29. Genotyping by mass spectrometry: detection of mass differences

PCR amplify an 82bp fragment of transferrin receptor

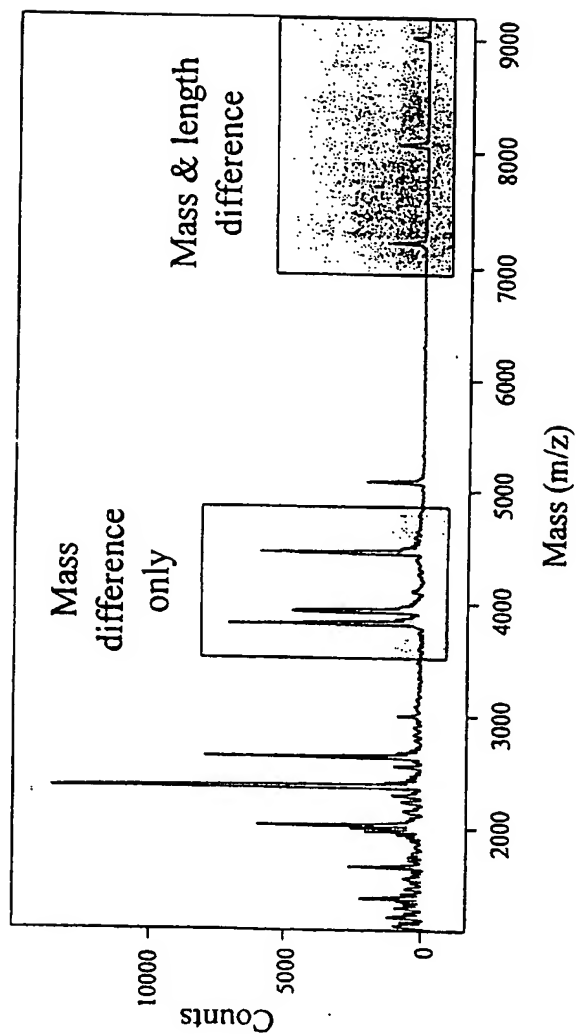
5' - GAAACTGGACAGCAGACTTCACCGACCATCAAGCTGCTGAATGAAAAATTCATATGTCCCTCGTGAGGCTGGATCTCAA - 3'
3' - CTTTGACCTGTCTGTCTGAAGTGGTGGTAGTTCGACGACTTACTTTTAAGTATACAGGGAGCACTCCGACCTAGAGTT - 5'

Expected cleavage fragments showing a difference between the two variant forms of TR

Only the selected fragments are shown which illustrate the length and mass difference among fragments of the same (invariant) and different (variant) alleles. The invariant fragments may be used as internal reference. The fragments are grouped in length and mass ranges.

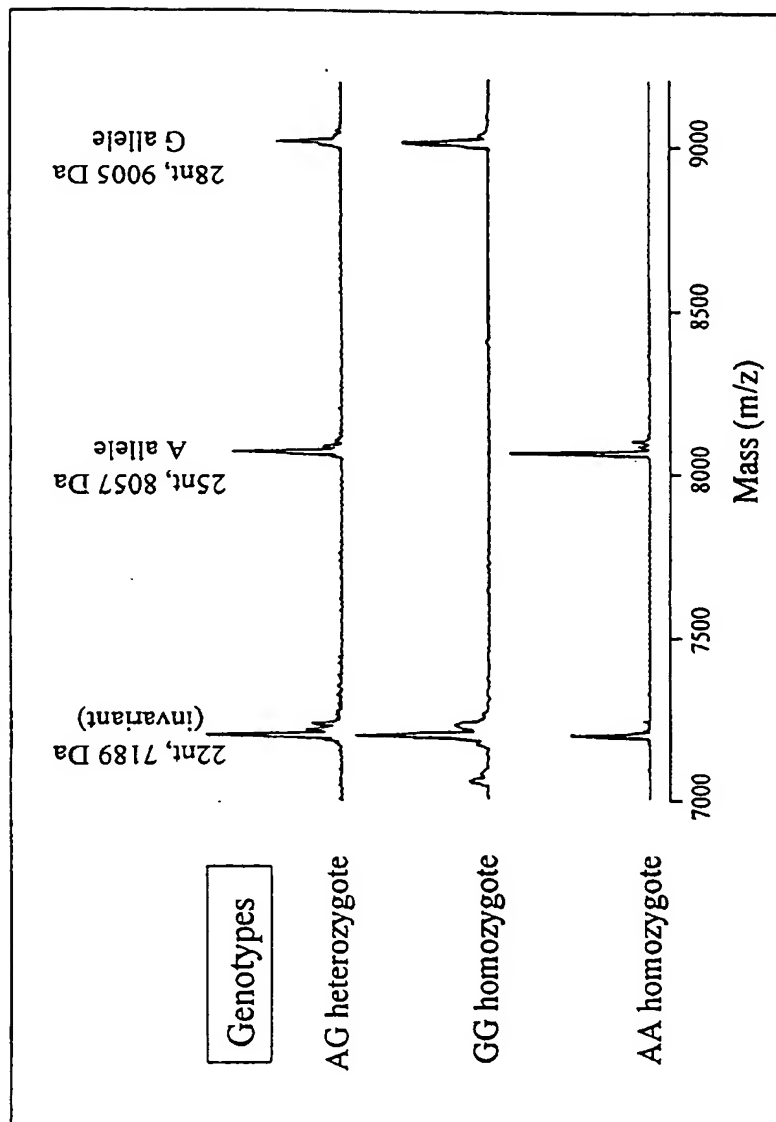
Sequence	Length	MW	Δ MW
{ 5'- GAAACIGGACAGCAGACTTCACC or 5'- GAAACIGGACAGCAGACTTCACCGGC	25nt	8057	Δ 948 Da
	28nt	9005	
GGGAGCACTCCGACCTAGAGTT- 5'	22nt	7189	
CGTGTCCTGCTG- 5'	13nt	4441	
{ GTGGTCGTGGT- 5' or GTGGCCGTGGT- 5'	11nt	3927	Δ 15 Da
	11nt	3912	
5'- TGTCCTCGTG	11nt	3807	

Figure 30 (a). Genotyping by mass spectrometry:
MALDI-TOF analysis of chemically restricted DNA



This figure shows a complete spectrum of MALDI-TOF analysis. The shaded areas are the regions that contain fragments with polymorphism.

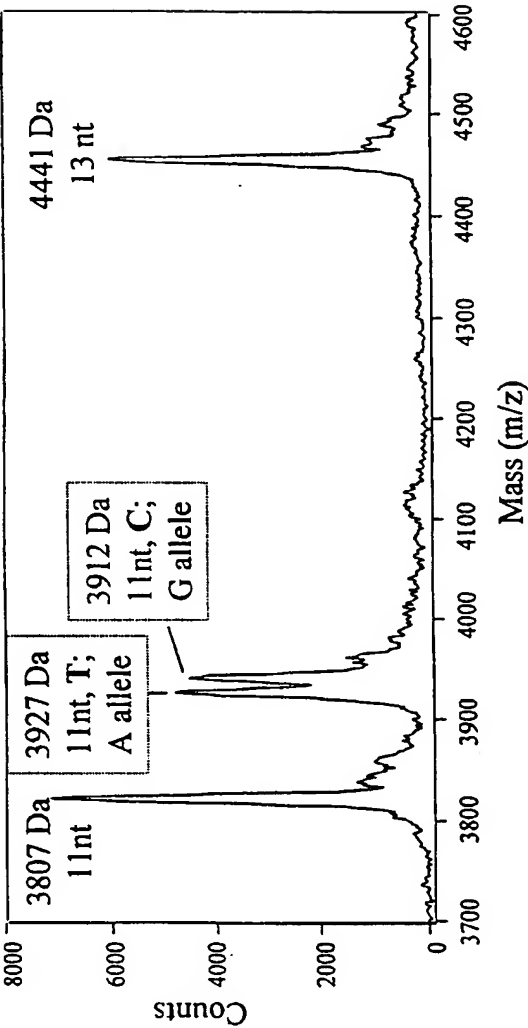
Figure 30 (b). Genotyping by mass spectrometry: detection of length differences
MALDI-TOF comparison of homozygote vs. heterozygote samples:
chemically restricted primer fragments



This figure shows mass spectra of three genotypes in the region of 7000 daltons to 9200 daltons

Figure 30 (c). Genotyping by mass spectrometry: detection of mass differences

MALDI-TOF analysis of heterozygote sample: chemically restricted internal fragments provide confirmation

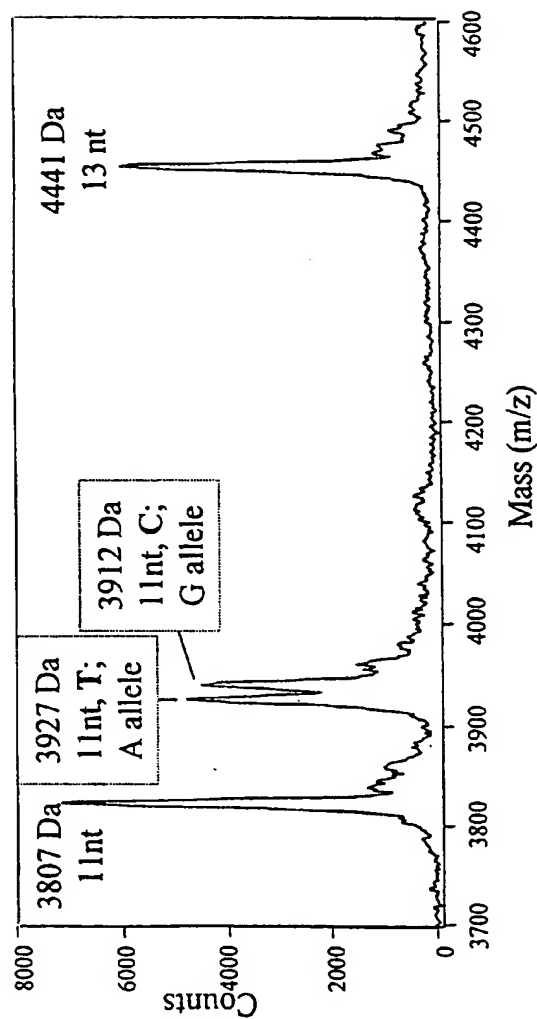


This is the mass spectrum of a heterozygote sample in the region of 3700 daltons to 4600 daltons

Figure 31. Genotyping by mass spectrometry: detection of mass differences

(a) MALDI-TOF analysis of heterozygote sample:
chemically restricted internal fragments provide confirmation

(b) Proposed structure
of the cleavage product



Mass spectrum of a heterozygote sample in the region
of 3700-4600 daltons

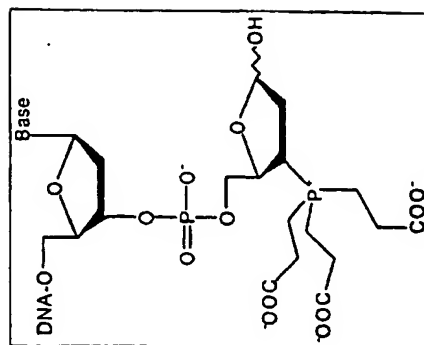
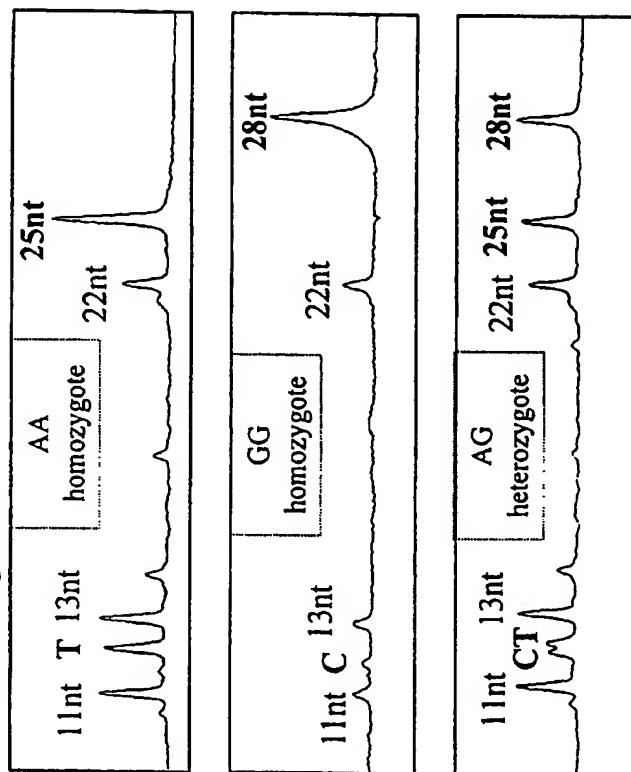


Figure 32. Genotyping by electrophoresis: Same chemical procedure, different platform

- The DNA fragments were obtained by chemical cleavage of PCR products containing cleavable analogue (see Figure 28).
- Capillary electrophoresis analysis was performed using denaturing linear polyacrylamide gel.
- A portion of each cleavage sample was labelled at 5'-end by 32 P and analyzed by PAGE.

(a) CE analysis of chemically restricted polymorphic DNA fragment



(b) Denaturing 20% PAGE analysis of chemically restricted amplicon

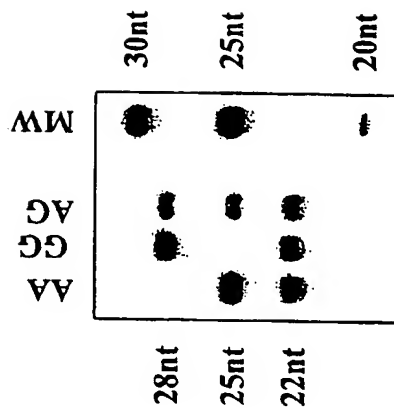
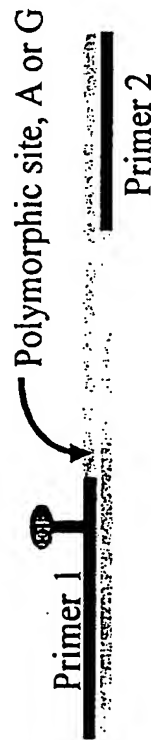


Figure 33. Genotyping by fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET): schematic

- (a) Amplify template using one cleavable nucleotide analog - dA*TP. Primer 1 is modified by attachment of a fluor (gray oval, F1).



- (b) After cleavage add a probe complementary to primer 1, with a second fluor attached (black oval, F2).



- (c) At elevated temperature the allele shortened by cleavage is not bound to probe while the uncleaved allele is bound.



- (d) For positive detection of the short fragment, the probe may be modified to contain a hairpin and another fluor F3. The hairpin will only open after binding with the longer, uncleaved fragment and resulting a fluorescent signal.



In this application, the primer 1 is designed to be very close to the polymorphic site. The cleavable analogue of one of the polymorphic base is used so that the two alleles will generate products of different lengths. The resulting difference in hybridization may be exploited to afford specific FRET effect. This hybridization difference is greater than what is the basis for TaqMan method (single nucleotide mismatch) and therefore should result in higher accuracy and sensitivity.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US99/22988**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**

IPC(7) : C12Q 1/68; C12P 19/34; C07H 19/00, 21/00, 21/02, 21/04

US CL : 435/6, 91.1, 91.2; 536/22.1, 23.1, 24.3, 24.33, 25.3

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 435/6, 91.1, 91.2; 536/22.1, 23.1, 24.3, 24.33, 25.3

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

STN

search terms: sequencing, oligonucleotides, modified, polymerases, pcr, triphosphates, synthesis

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US 5,332,666 A (PROBER et al) 26 July 1994, see entire document.	1-151
Y	US 5,187,085 A (LEE) 16 February 1993, see entire document.	1-151
Y	PROBER et al. A system for Rapid DNA Sequencing with Fluorescent Chain-Terminating Dideoxynucleotides. Science October 1987, Vol. 238, pages 336-341.	1-151
Y	SANGER et al. DNA Sequencing with Chain-Terminating Inhibitors. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., USA. December 1977, Vol. 74, No. 12, pages 5463-5467. See entire document.	1-151

☐ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

A document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

B earlier document published on or after the international filing date

L document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

O document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

P document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

T

later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

X

document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

Y

document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

Z

document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

14 JANUARY 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

08 FEB 2000

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Box PCT
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

JEZIA RILEY

Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet)(July 1992)*